

**EPSON®**

**FX SERIES PRINTER**

**User's Manual**

**VOLUME 1 TUTORIAL**

By  
**David A. Kater**  
**EduKater**

## FCC COMPLIANCE STATEMENT FOR AMERICAN USERS

This equipment generates and uses radio frequency energy and if not installed and used properly, that is, in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, may cause interference to radio and television reception. It has been type tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B computing device in accordance with the specifications in Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC rules, which are designed to provide reasonable protection against such interference in a residential installation. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient the receiving antenna
- Relocate the computer with respect to the receiver
- Move the computer into a different outlet so that computer and receiver are on different branch circuits.

If necessary, the user should consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for additional suggestions. The user may find the following booklet prepared by the Federal Communications Commission helpful:

"How to Identify and Resolve Radio-TV Interference Problems."

This booklet is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington DC 20402, Stock No. 004-000-00345-4.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Epson America, Inc. No patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, Epson America, Inc. and the author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

Baby printout on cover reprinted with permission of Apple Computer Inc., copyright 1984

Apple is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.

Centronics is a registered trademark of Data Computer Corporation.

Concept is a trademark of Corvus Systems, Inc.

DEC is a registered trademark of Digital Equipment Corporation.

FX-80, FX-100, RX-80, and RX-100 are trademarks of Epson America, Inc.

HX-20 Notebook Computer is a trademark of Epson America, Inc.

IBM-PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

Microsoft is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

NEC is the NEC Information Systems, Inc., a subsidiary of Nippon Electronic Company, Ltd.

QX-10 is a trademark of Epson America, Inc.

TRS-80 is a registered trademark of Radio Shack, a division of Tandy Corporation.

80 Micro is published by Wayne Green Publishers.

Copyright© 1984 by Epson America, Inc.  
Torrance, California 90505

P8294017

# Preface

The User's Manual for the FX Series printers consists of two volumes: Tutorial and Reference. This volume, the Tutorial, is arranged in the following logical groupings:

Introduction (for everyone)

Programmer's Easy Lesson (for experienced users)

Hardware description: Chapter 1

Software introduction: Chapter 2

Control of the way characters look: Chapters 3 to 6

Control of the way pages look: Chapters 7 to 9

Printer graphics: Chapters 10 to 14

User-defined characters: Chapters 15 and 16

Using everything together: Chapter 17

A complete table of contents for this volume is after this preface. For your convenience, there is an index at the end of each volume covering the complete two-volume set. You can therefore find all the references to any topic in either one.

## Conventions Used in This Manual

We provide sample BASIC programs that allow you to see how various commands control the printer's capabilities. Frequently we start with a few program lines and then make several changes and additions to end up with a substantial program. We suggest that you use your SAVE command after each change to prevent losing programs because of power fluctuations or other accidents. When you can RUN a program, we show the results you should expect.

In our sample programs, we use Microsoft™ BASIC, which is widely used in personal computers. Because there are several slightly different versions of Microsoft BASIC and because your computer

may use a version of BASIC other than Microsoft, you may need to modify some of the programs in this manual before they will run. Appendix F offers help, as do the next several paragraphs.

Methods for sending BASIC print and listing commands to the screen and to the printer vary widely. We have used PRINT and LIST as the commands for the screen display, and LPRINT and LLIST as commands for the printer. You may have to change those to the form used by your system.

If, for example, your system uses the PR#1 and PR#0 commands, you will need to change all instances of PRINT in our programs. Since we use PRINT to report progress to your screen and that command does not affect the printing, the easiest modification is to delete such PRINT statements. For example,

```
38 FOR D=1 TO 17: PRINT "ROW";D
```

would become:

```
39 FOR D=1 TO 17
```

because the only purpose of the PRINT statement is to display on the screen information that is not absolutely essential to the program.

Any BASIC system automatically provides a carriage return (and some BASICs add a line feed) after every program line that includes a PRINT or LPRINT command, whether that line prints text or not. To prevent the carriage return, we have you place a semicolon at the end of such program lines. You will see this technique throughout the manual.

A few versions of BASIC use semicolons between any two control codes that fall on one program line, as in:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27);CHR$(52)
```

If you use such a version of BASIC, you will need to add semicolons as appropriate.

After the ESCape code-CHR\$(27)-the FX always expects another code. The second code tells the printer which mode to turn on or off, and you may enter it in either of two formats. One format is like the ESCape code-you use a number in parentheses after CHR\$, such as CHR\$(l). The other format is shorter since it uses only an alphanumeric symbol within quotation marks, such as "E" or "@". We usually use the latter format.

This format allows you to shorten a program line by combining a command and its print string. In the case of Double-Strike, for instance, the quoted letter "G" turns the mode on and "H" turns it off. To see how combining the code with a print string works, compare:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27) "G"; "DOUBLE-STRIKE PRINT"
```

with:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27) "GDOUBLE-STRIKE PRINT"
```

The second program line may look peculiar, but it gives the same output that the first version does. The G is not printed on the paper; instead, it is interpreted by the printer as part of the ESCape sequence.

In long programs with DATA statements or subroutines, we use END after the line that is executed last, but older BASIC systems require the use of STOP at such points. If yours is one of these, you should change our ENDs to STOPS.

When the presence of one or more blank spaces in a program line is especially important, we use a special character (**b**, pronounced 'blank') to represent the spaces. This makes it easier for you to count the number you need. For example, the following:

```
"bbbbbbbbSAMPLE STRING"
```

means that you should type in one blank space for each **b**:

```
"           SAMPLE STRING"
```

The use of the **b** symbol makes it easy for you to count the eight spaces needed between the quotation mark and the beginning of the first word. The **b** also calls your attention to single blank spaces that are needed immediately before or after a quotation mark. For example, the following makes clear that you must type one space between the quotation mark and the word "and":

```
LPRINT "bAND EASY TO TURN OFF"
```

When we include a programming REMark in a program line, it is always preceded by an apostrophe ('), the short form of the BASIC command, REM. For example, we use:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"      ' Reset Code
```

and

```
99 ' Data lines for graphics
```

The computer ignores these remarks; they merely serve to help programmers understand at a glance the way a program is working. You may type them in or not, depending on whether you think you will want them in the future.

We use the caret symbol (^) to indicate exponents. For example:

$x = Y^2$

means let X equal Y raised to the second power. Some computer systems use an up-arrow (t), which prints as a left bracket (l) on FX printers.

At the end of each chapter, a Summary section provides a concise review of the chapter's subject matter and a list of the control codes (if any) that have been covered. For listings of the control codes in numerical order and in functional groupings, see Appendixes B and C.

When we refer to an FX mode by name, we capitalize it:

Compressed Mode

Italic Mode

Pica Mode

Script Modes

and, for clarity, we capitalize such names even when the word mode does not appear: Script characters and Italic print.

# FX Series Printer User's Manual

## Volume 1 Contents

<b>Preface</b> .....	iii
Conventions Used in This Manual .....	iii
<b>List of Figures</b> .....	xiii
<b>List of Tables</b> .....	xvii
<b>Introduction</b> .....	1
Inside the Printer .....	2
Inside This Manual .....	2
<b>Programmer's Easy Lesson</b> .....	7
First Steps .....	7
Ticket Program .....	8
Ticket Program Description .....	10
<b>1 The FX Printers</b> .....	13
Additional Supplies and Accessories .....	16
Printer Location .....	16
Printer Preparation .....	17
Paper separator .....	17
Covers .....	18
Manual-feed knob .....	19
DIP switches .....	20
Ribbon Installation .....	23
Paper Loading .....	24
FX-80: built-in tractor feed .....	24
FX-80 and FX-100: friction feed .....	28
FX-80 and FX-100: removable tractor unit (optional on the FX-80) .....	29
Top-of-form position .....	32
Paper-thickness lever .....	32
Starting Up .....	32
Control panel .....	35
The FX tests itself .....	35

<b>2</b>	<b>BASIC and the Printer</b>	37
	BASIC Communications	38
	Character strings	39
	BASIC print commands	39
	ASCII and BASIC basics	40
	Control codes	41
	Escape-CHR\$(27)-and other CHR\$ commands	42
	Change Commands	44
	Reset Code	45
	Mode cancelling codes	45
	DELete and CANcel	46
	Alternate Formats for ESCape Sequences	46
	Summary	47
<b>3</b>	<b>Print Pitches</b>	49
	Dot-Matrix Printing	49
	Main columns	50
	Intermediate positions	51
	Modes for Pitches	52
	Pica and Elite Modes	52
	Compressed Mode	53
	Mode priorities	55
	Pitch Mode Combinations	56
	Expanded Mode	56
	Multiple print pitches on one line	58
	Summary	59
<b>4</b>	<b>Print Quality</b>	61
	Bold Modes	61
	Double-StrikeMode	61
	Emphasized Mode	62
	Proportional Mode	64
	Mixing Modes	65
	Summary	66
<b>5</b>	<b>Dress-Up Modes and Master Select</b>	69
	Four Modes	69
	Underline Mode	69
	Script Modes: Super and Sub	71
	Italic Mode	72
	More Mode Combinations	73
	Master Select	73
	Master Select combinations	76
	Summary	78

<b>6</b>	<b>Special Printing Features .....</b>	81
	Backspace .....	81
	Overstrikes .....	81
	Offsets .....	82
	Unidirectional Mode .....	83
	International Characters .....	85
	Special Speeds .....	88
	Half-SpeedMode .....	89
	Immediate-Print Mode (FX-80 only) .....	89
	Summary .....	90
<b>7</b>	<b>Line Spacing and Line Feeds.....</b>	93
	Line Spacing .....	93
	Preset line spacing .....	93
	Variable line spacing .....	95
	Microscopic line spacing .....	98
	Line Feeds .....	98
	One-time, immediate line feed .....	99
	Reverse feed (FX-80 only) .....	99
	Summary .....	101
<b>8</b>	<b>Forms Control .....</b>	103
	Form Length Control .....	103
	Form feed distance .....	103
	Not-so-standard forms .....	105
	Paper Perforation Skip .....	107
	Skip command .....	107
	DIP switch skip .....	109
	Single-Sheet Adjustment .....	109
	Summary .....	110

<b>9</b>	<b>Margins and Tabs .....</b>	113
	Margins.. .....	113
	Left margin .....	113
	Margins and pitches .....	114
	Right margin .....	116
	Both margins .....	118
	Tabs.. .....	118
	Horizontal tab usage .....	119
	Variable horizontal tabs .....	121
	Vertical tab usage .....	122
	Ordinary vertical tabs .....	123
	Vertical tab channels .....	126
	Summary .....	128
<b>10</b>	<b>Introduction to Dot Graphics .....</b>	131
	Dots and Matrixes .....	131
	Print Head .....	132
	Graphics Mode .....	134
	Pin Labels .....	135
	First Graphics Programs .....	137
	Straight line .....	138
	Slash .....	139
	Large caret .....	139
	Wave pattern .....	140
	Diamond pattern .....	141
	Summary .....	142
<b>11</b>	<b>Varieties of Graphics Density .....</b>	143
	Graphics Programming Tips .....	143
	Graphics and the Reset Code .....	144
	Graphics and low ASCII codes .....	144
	Density Varieties .....	145
	High-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode .....	146
	Low-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode .....	148
	Quadruple-Density Graphics Mode .....	149
	Moredensities .....	149
	More Graphics Programming Tips .....	150
	Reassigning alternate graphics codes .....	150
	Nine-Pin Graphics Mode .....	152
	Pin Combination Patterns .....	154
	Repeated patterns .....	155
	Repeated DATA numbers .....	156
	Summary .....	157

<b>12</b>	<b>Design Your Own Graphics .....</b>	<b>159</b>
	Planning Process .....	159
	STRATA Program .....	160
	Three-Dimensional Program .....	163
	First version of 3D program .....	165
	Other versions .....	170
	Summary .....	171
<b>13</b>	<b>Plotter Graphics .....</b>	<b>173</b>
	Arrays .....	173
	DIMension and arrays .....	176
	Filling arrays .....	176
	Circle Plotting .....	177
	Ones become dots .....	178
	Pin firing sequences .....	179
	Code solutions .....	180
	Higher resolution .....	181
	Reflections .....	183
	Exploding galaxy .....	184
	Big bang .....	185
	Summary .....	187
<b>14</b>	<b>Symmetrical Graphics Patterns .....</b>	<b>189</b>
	Pin Pattern Calculation .....	192
	Graphics Width Settings .....	193
	Pattern Printout .....	193
	Variations .....	195
	Summary .....	197
<b>15</b>	<b>User-Defined Characters .....</b>	<b>199</b>
	Preparation .....	200
	Character Definition .....	200
	Design .....	201
	Dots into DATA .....	202
	Attribute byte .....	203
	Proportional print .....	203
	Printing User-Defined Characters .....	205
	Downloading Command .....	207
	Defining More Characters .....	207
	Redefining Control Codes .....	208
	Mode Strings .....	211
	STRATA .....	212
	Summary .....	212

16	<b>Combining User-Defined Characters</b>	215
	Large Letters: Double Wide	215
	Large Letters: Double High	217
	Giant Letters: Double High and Double Wide	217
	Core Sets	223
	Line Graphics	225
	Summary	226
17	<b>Business Application</b>	227
	Preparation	227
	Barchart	227
	Statement Form	231
	999 REM: The End	238
	<b>Index</b>	239

# List of Figures

Easy-1	FX ticket program .....	8
Easy-2	Ticket to success .....	10
1-1	The FX-80 and FX-100 printers .....	14
1-2	Printer parts .....	15
1-3	Paperpath .....	17
1-4	Paper separator .....	18
1-5	Protective lids .....	19
1-6	Tractor covers .....	19
1-7	Manual-feed knob .....	20
1-8	DIP switch vent .....	21
1-9	DIP switch location .....	22
1-10	DIP switch factory settings .....	22
1-11	Ribbon insertion .....	25
1-12	Printer readied for paper insertion .....	26
1-13	Pin feeder adjustment .....	27
1-14	Loading the FX-80 .....	27
1-15	Tractor unit release .....	28
1-16	Tractor unit installation .....	30
1-17	Hook and stud .....	30
1-18	Adjusting the pin feeders .....	31
1-19	Top of form .....	33
1-20	Paper thickness adjustment .....	34
1-21	Cable connection .....	35
1-22	Sample automatic test .....	36
2-1	Italic listing .....	43
3-1	Dot-matrix characters .....	49
3-2	The printhead .....	50
3-3	Main columns .....	51
3-4	Intermediate positions .....	51
3-5	Pica and Elite letters .....	53
3-6	Pitch comparison .....	53
3-7	Pica and Expanded letters .....	57
4-1	Single-Strike and Double-Strike letters .....	62
4-2	Single-Strike, Expanded and Emphasized letters .....	63
4-3	Mode priorities .....	66

5-1	Master Select Program .....	74
5-2	Master Select choices .....	75
5-3	Dress-up combinations .....	77
6-1	Bidirectional line .....	84
6-2	Unidirectional line .....	84
7-1	Default line spacing .....	94
7-2	Cascading STAIR STEPS .....	96
7-3	Staggering STAIR STEPS .....	100
8-1	Setting the top of form .....	104
8-2	Two-inch form feed .....	106
8-3	Two-line form feed .....	106
8-4	Standardskip .....	108
9-1	Left margin setting .....	114
9-2	Listing at new margin .....	115
9-3	Absolute left margin .....	115
9-4	Right margin set incorrectly .....	116
9-5	Right margin set correctly .....	117
9-6	Default horizontal tabs .....	119
9-7	Tabs with text and numbers .....	120
9-8	Variable horizontal tabs .....	121
9-9	Absolute horizontal tabs .....	122
9-10	Ordinary vertical tabs .....	124
9-11	Text at tab stop .....	125
9-12	Absolute vertical tabs .....	126
9-13	Printout of multipage channels .....	128
10-1	Pins numbered sequentially .....	133
10-2	Dot pattern in two line spacings .....	133
10-3	Pins labelled uniquely .....	136
10-4	Pin combinations .....	137
11-1	High-Speed Double-Density dots .....	147
11-2	No overlapping dots .....	147
11-3	Overlapping dots .....	148
11-4	Seven density modes .....	150
11-5	Nine-pin usage .....	153
11-6	Printout using bottom pin .....	154
11-7	Curling design .....	155

12-1	STRATA layout .....	161
12-2	STRATA logo .....	162
12-3	STRATA program .....	163
12-4	Corner of the FX-80 design .....	164
12-5	FX-80 figure .....	168
12-6	Program for FX-80 figure .....	168
12-7	FX-100 figure .....	169
12-8	Program for FX-100 figure .....	170
12-9	More distinct version .....	171
12-10	Most distinct version .....	172
12-11	Reversed version .....	172
13-1	Computer memory as sketch pad .....	174
13-2	Array in memory and on paper .....	174
13-3	Ones and zeros become dots and blanks .....	175
13-4	Labelled cell .....	175
13-5	Plotting a circle .....	177
13-6	Displaying an array .....	178
13-7	Divide and conquer .....	182
14-1	Printing the array contents .....	191
14-2	Pattern sets .....	191
14-3	Program for SYMMETRY .....	194
14-4	Symmetric pattern 1 .....	195
14-5	Symmetric pattern 2 .....	196
14-6	Symmetric pattern 3 .....	196
15-1	ROM and user-defined characters .....	199
15-2	User-defined E .....	201
15-3	Incorrectly designed E .....	202
15-4	Pins chosen by attribute byte .....	203
15-5	Attribute byte conversions .....	204
16-1	Side-by-side characters .....	216
16-2	Double high and wide character .....	218
16-3	Program for giant G .....	220
16-4	Giant G .....	221
16-5	Data for AMES .....	222
16-6	Games seem same .....	222
16-7	Messages in three pitches .....	223
16-8	Tracks .....	224
16-9	Interlace .....	225

17-1	Barchart .....	228
17-2	Program for BARCHART .....	230
17-3	Statement form .....	232
17-4	Program for STATEMENT .....	234

# List of Tables

1-1	DIP switch functions .....	23
2-1	Several computers' print LIST commands .....	38
2-2	Several computers' printer activating commands .....	40
2-3	ASCII codes on the FX .....	42
3-1	Summary of print pitches .....	60
4-1	Summary of modes .....	67
5-1	Master Select Quick Reference Chart .....	76
5-2	Print types .....	78
6-1	Some special characters .....	85
6-2	International characters in Roman typeface .....	87
6-3	International characters in Italic typeface .....	87
6-4	International DIP switch settings .....	88
7-1	Line-spacing commands .....	102
11-1	Graphics Modes .....	151
14-1	Variables for SYMMETRY .....	190
15-1	International character locations .....	210
16-1	ASCII pattern .....	219

# **Introduction**

## **FX Features**

Epson's MX series of printers attracted enough attention to become the most popular line of printers in the industry. Our FX printers follow in the same grand tradition. The FX printers' power-packed assortment of features includes:

- Upward compatibility with most MX III features
- Several different print modes that can be combined to produce a variety of print styles. These include:

Roman and Italic print fonts

Six different print pitches

Two kinds of bold printing

- Master Select feature for instant use of any one of 16 popular print combinations
- Proportionally spaced characters for professional looking documents
- Easy-to-use Underline and Super/Subscript Modes
- Detailed forms handling capability, including the setting of horizontal and vertical tabs, margins, form length, a skip-over-perforation feature, and variable line feeds
- Up to 233 characters per line with the FX-100™ for spreadsheet users
- User-definable character sets. With this powerful feature you can create your own alphabets and special symbols
- High-resolution graphics capability with six densities to let you create your own charts, diagrams, figures, and illustrations
- International character sets
- Typewriter simulation mode with the FX-80™

- Program debugging mode (hexadecimal dump of codes received from the computer)
- Fast print speed-160 characters per second-for rapid processing of documents
- 2K print buffer for smooth operation
- Adjustable tractor unit for narrow forms
- Both friction- and tractor-feed capability
- Replaceable print head
- Easy-to-reach DIP switches to customize printer features.
- Epson reliability, quality, and support

In short, the FX is loaded with features **that** will challenge your ability to put them to work. This manual can help you use one or all of them.

## Inside the Printer

The FX printers contain two kinds of internal memory: ROM (Read Only Memory) and RAM (Random Access Memory). There are 12K bytes (approximately 12,000 characters) of ROM. This unchangeable memory contains all the logic required for the various print features as well as the patterns for all the built-in character sets.

The FX also contains a RAM memory buffer that stores up to 2K bytes of text and printer commands as they are received from the computer. This frees your computer so that you can continue working while the FX is printing. You can also use RAM another way; you can define your own set of characters and then store them in RAM so that you can print them at will.

It is always tempting (though not always wise) to start playing with a new printer the instant it is out of the box. Because the FX is a sophisticated piece of equipment, it is important that you understand what the printer will do and how to operate it before you start printing.

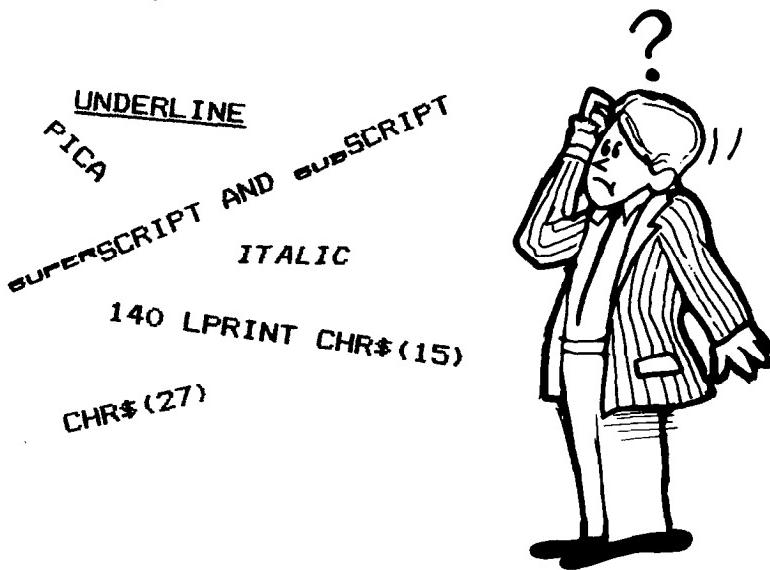
## Inside This Manual

This manual will guide you on a carefully planned tour of the various features of the FX printers. In these pages, you **can** learn how to use your computer to control the printer for a large variety of applications.

You can use this manual as a reference, a tutorial study guide, or some combination of the two.

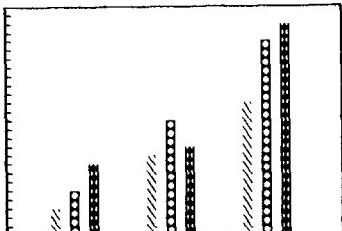
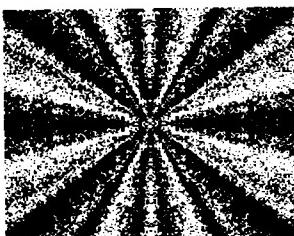
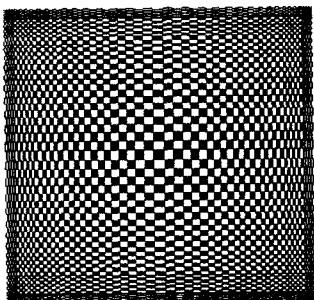
- For those of you who want to use the printer for one simple application (like listing BASIC programs or using a word processing package), a description of the hardware and an overview of the software may be all that's necessary. In this case, you need only Chapter 1, the Quick Reference Card at the back of Volume 2, and a knowledge of the program you are using. You can always learn about the FX's advanced features at a later time. (You might, for instance, someday want to modify a word processing software package so that its printer driver uses special FX features.) The lessons will be waiting for you.
- For those who prefer to roll up their sleeves and see how the printer works, we've included sample programs to demonstrate each of the printer's features.
- For those who want only a quick and easy reference, the comprehensive Table of Contents, the Appendixes, and the Index provide ready access to information.
- For computer professionals and other experienced users who simply can't wait to find out what the printer will do, regardless of the consequences, we have a special section entitled "Programmer's Easy Lesson." It gets you up and running fast, then turns you loose on a program that demonstrates several of the printer's features. This program, the Appendixes, and the Quick Reference Card will bring you quickly up to speed.
- For those who are already familiar with the MX or RX series of printers, Appendix E provides a summary of the differences between the FX, the RX, and the MX.

Think of the manual as your personal guide in your exploration of the FX's many features.



For a preview of what your programs can produce, take a look at the following potpourri of print modes and graphics.

## HAPPY PRINTING! EPSON AMERICA INC



## PICA

SINGLE-STRIKE 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJKLMN / DOUBLE-STRIKE 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJKLMN  
SINGLE-STRIKE EMPHASIZED 1234567890ABC / DOUBLE-STRIKE EMPHASIZED 1234567890ABC  
SINGLE-STRIKE EMPHASIZED PROPORTIONAL 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdeghi  
SS EXPANDED 1234567 / DS EXPANDED 1234567  
SS EXP EMPHASIZED 1 / DS EXP EMPHASIZED 1  
UNDERLINE 1234567 / <sub>SUBSCRIPT</sub> 1234567 / <sup>SUPERSCRIPT</sup> 1234567 / *ITALICS* 1234567

## ELITE

SINGLE-STRIKE 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ / DOUBLE-STRIKE 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ  
SS EXPANDED 1234567890A / DS EXPANDED 1234567890A  
UNDERLINE 1234567890A / <sub>SUBSCRIPT</sub> 1234567890A / <sup>SUPERSCRIPT</sup> 1234567890A / *ITALICS* 1234567890A

## COMPRESSED

SINGLE-STRIKE 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdeghijklmnop / DOUBLE-STRIKE 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZabcdeghijklmnop  
SS EXPANDED 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJK / DS EXPANDED 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJK  
UNDERLINE 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJK / <sub>SUBSCRIPT</sub> 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJK / <sup>SUPERSCRIPT</sup> 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJK / *ITALICS* 1234567890ABCDEFGHIJK



# **Programmer's Easy Lesson**

Before you start, note that we haven't claimed that one easy lesson will make you an FX maestro. It takes more than one lesson to learn the full value of the feature-packed FX printer. In fact, the more time you spend with this manual, the more your printer will cooperate with your every command. But some of you want to see something from a new printer right now-no matter what. The next few pages are especially for you.

If you get stuck, the proper set-up procedures are covered in full in Chapter 1.

## **First Steps**

1. Make all connections with the power OFF! Connect your FX to your computer via the printer cable that you purchased separately. (Some computers require special printer interface boards, also purchased separately).
2. To use continuous-feed printer paper with pin-feed holes, set the friction-control lever and the paper bail toward the front of the printer. If you are using the FX-80, pull the paper under the plastic separator and through the paper path. If you are using the FX-100, you may need to first install the tractor unit, then pull the paper under it. In case the paper starts to jam on either model, refer to Chapter 1 for tips on inserting paper. As you straighten the paper, you will probably need to adjust the pin feeders.

To use either a single sheet of paper or roll paper without pin-feed holes on the FX-80, first move the pin feeders out of the way. If a tractor unit is installed on your FX-100, you will need to remove it. Then, for either model, push the friction-control lever toward the rear of the printer, pull the paper bail forward, and insert the paper under the plastic separator. Use the manual-feed knob to

feed the paper through. If you use single sheets of paper, the paper-out sensor will cause a beep and stop the printing whenever the bottom edge passes the sensor. You can shut off the sensor by changing DIP switches as shown in Chapter 1.

3. Turn the printer and computer on and load a short BASIC program. Then send a listing to the printer (using LLIST, LIST "I", or whatever your computer's listing command is). You should get a single-spaced listing. If the printout is double-spaced or printed without line spacing, you'll have to change a DIP switch.

Since there are many implementations of the BASIC programming language, it is impossible to write one set of programs that will work on every computer system. This means you may need to modify our programs to suit your system. In Appendix F we discuss such compatibility problems and suggest solutions for several popular computers.

## Ticket Program

Here is an example program, written in BASIC, that shows off a lot of the FX printer's features. The program can give you a good survey of print control. If you don't understand one or more features, you can check the index to find what part of this manual covers it.

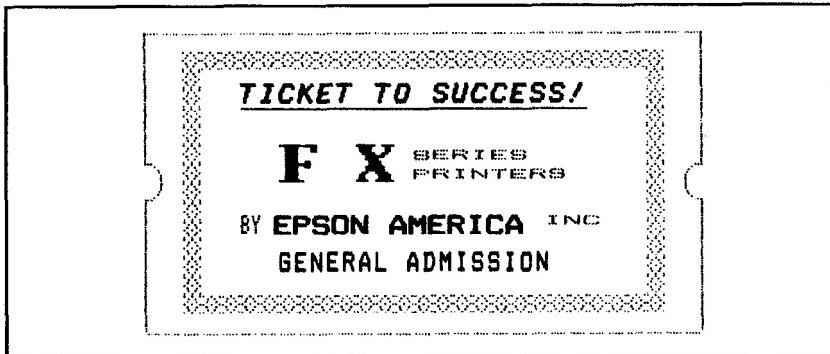
```
10 N=29: E$=CHR$(27): H$=CHR$(137)
20 LPRINT E$"1";E$"D"CHR$(26)CHR$(1);
30 LPRINT E$":CHR$(0)CHR$(0)CHR$(0);
40 LPRINT E%"CHR$(1)CHR$(0);
50 LPRINT E$"&"CHR$(0)"0:";
60 FOR Y=1 TO 11: LPRINT CHR$(11);
70 FOR X=1 TO 11: READ D: LPRINT CHR$(D):: NEXT X
80 NEXT Y: LPRINT E$"U1";
90 FOR X=1 TO N: LPRINT CHR$(95):: NEXT X:
    LPRINT E$"A"CHR$(6)
100 LPRINT "7"H$"\p\9";E$"1"
110 LPRINT "\p\1";: FOR X=1 TO 25: LPRINT ":";;
    NEXT X: LPRINT H$"\p\9"
120 LPRINT "7 :H$": 9"
```

**Figure Easy-1. FX ticket program**

```

130 LPRINT "7 ":";E$"!X";E$"4";"þþ";E$"-1";
140 LPRINT "TICKET TO SUCCESS!";E$"!@";E$"5";
E$"‐0";
150 LPRINT H$": 9": FOR X=1 TO 2: LPRINT "7 :"H$"
":9": NEXT X
160 LPRINT "7 ":";: LPRINT CHR$(14);E$;"E";
"þþ 2";
170 LPRINT CHR$(20);E$"F";E$"S1";"þSERIES";
E$"T";H$;": 9"
180 LPRINT "4 ":"; LPRINT CHR$(14);E$;"E";
"þþ1 3";
190 LPRINT CHR$(20);E$"F";E$"S1";"þPRINTERS";
E$"T";H$;": 5"
200 LPRINT "6 ":"H$;": 8": LPRINT "7 :"H$;": 9"
210 LPRINT "7 :þþ"CHR$(15)"BYþ"E$"!X";
"EPSON AMERICA";
220 LPRINT E$"S0";E$"!@";"þINC"E$"T";H$;": 9"
230 LPRINT "7 ":"H$;": 9": LPRINT "7 :þþþþ"E$"!Q";
240 LPRINT "GENERAL ADMISSION";E$"!@";H$;": 9":
LPRINT "7 :"H$;": 9"
250 LPRINT "7þ";: FOR X=1 TO 25: LPRINT ":";:
NEXT X: LPRINT H$"þ9"
260 LPRINT "7þ";H$;"þþ9";E$"A"CHR$(1)
270 FOR X=1 TO N: LPRINT CHR$(95);: NEXT X: LPRINT
280 LPRINT E$"@":END
290 '*** FX ***
300 DATA 64,0,127,0,127,0,64,0,65,0,112 :'0 F
310 DATA 1,0,127,0,127,0,65,0,96,0,0 :'1 F
320 DATA 64,48,72,54,73,6,1,4,72,48,64 :'2 X
330 DATA 1,6,11,48,64,48,73,54,11,6,1 :'3 X
340 '*** TICKET BORDERS ***
350 DATA 64,0,64,0,64,0,32,0,16,8,7 :'4
360 DATA 7,8,16,0,32,0,64,0,64,0,64 :'5
370 DATA 1,0,1,0,1,0,2,0,4,8,112 :'6
380 DATA 127,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0 :'7
390 DATA 112,8,4,0,2,0,1,0,1,0,1 :'8
400 DATA 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,127 :'9
410 DATA 73,0,20,34,0,73,0,34,20,0,73 :':
```

*Figure Easy-1. FX ticket program (concluded)*



*Figure Easy-2. Ticket to success*

## Ticket Program Description

This is not a complete explanation of the program. That's what the rest of the manual is for. But this brief, line-by-line description should help those of you who wish to analyze the program.

- 10 Stores values in variables for easy access. E\$ holds the ESCape code, CHR\$(27).
- 20 Uses ESCape "1" to set the line spacing to 7/2X-inch and the ESCape "D" sequence to set a horizontal tab stop at column 26.
- 30 Uses the ESCape ":" sequence to copy the entire ROM character set into RAM.
- 40 Designates RAM as the source for the active character set.
- 50 Prepares the printer to redefine characters "0" through ":".
- 60 Sets a counter for the 11 letters being defined, and selects the attribute byte of each new character.
- 70 Reads the data that defines the letters (11 sets of ll). (See Chapter 15 for additional information on lines 30 through 70.)
- 80 Turns on the Unidirectional Print Mode.
- 90 Prints the top of the ticket and sets the line spacing to 6/72-inch.
- 100 Prints the newly defined symbol "7" (left ticket border), tabs to the next stop, prints the other border (9) and sets the line spacing back to 7/72-inch.

- 110 Prints the outside border, then the top of the inside border (which was defined as the ":" character).
- 120 Prints another line of borders.
- 130 Prints more borders, then uses the Master Select to turn on Emphasized Double-Strike Pica. Also turns on Italic and Underline Modes.
- 140 Prints TICKET TO SUCCESS, then resets the FX to its defaults, including Pica, but does not affect the redefined characters.
- 150 Produces two more border lines.
- 160 Prints the upper half of the FX letters in Expanded Emphasized printing. The user-defined character 0 produces the top of the F and 2 produces the top of the X.
- 170 Turns off Expanded and Emphasized Modes and prints SERIES in Superscript Mode and then prints the right side of the border.
- 180 Prints the bottom half of the FX letters.
- 190 Turns OFF the codes, prints PRINTERS in Subscript, then prints a border.
- 200 Prints borders.
- 210 Prints borders, then switches to Compressed and prints BY. Sets, with ESCape "IX", Emphasized Double-Strike Pica, and prints EPSON. This new mode automatically turns off Compressed.
- 220 Sets Superscript Mode (Escape "SO"), returns to normal print (Escape"!@"), prints INC in Superscript, then cancels Script Mode, then prints borders.
- 230 Prints another line of borders, then sets Master Select with ESCape "!Q", giving Double-Strike Elite.
- 240 Prints GENERAL ADMISSION, resets the FX to its defaults, and prints right borders.
- 250 Prints the outside borders and the bottom of the inside border.
- 260 Prints the outside borders and sets line spacing to 1/72-inch.
- 270 Prints the bottom of the outside border.

280 Returns the printer to its defaults.

300-330 Provides data for the FX letters as user-defined characters  
0-3.

350-410 Provides data for the ticket borders.

# **Chapter 1**

## **The FX Printers**

Once you've unpacked your new printer, the first thing you should do is make sure you have all of the parts. With the FX-80 or FX-100 printer, you should receive the items shown in Figure 1-1:

1. The printer itself
2. A manual-feed knob
3. A paper separator
4. Two protective lids
5. One ribbon cartridge (in a box)
6. This FX Series Printer User's Manual

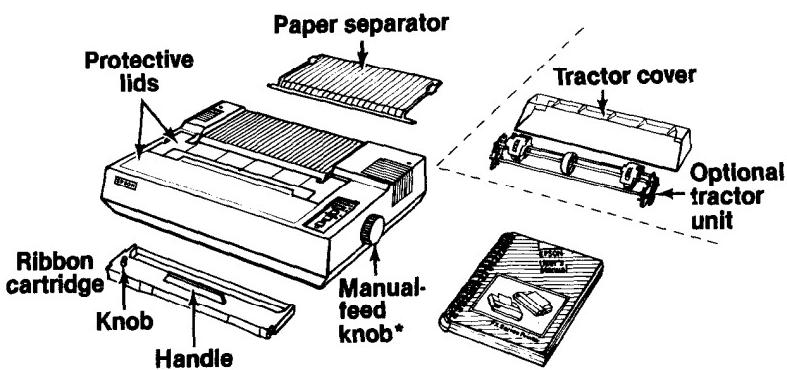
The FX-80 has a tractor built into its platen for handling continuous-feed paper between 9 1/2 and 10 inches in width. To handle narrower continuous-feed paper, you must purchase the optional FX-80 tractor unit.

On an FX-100 you will find these items installed:

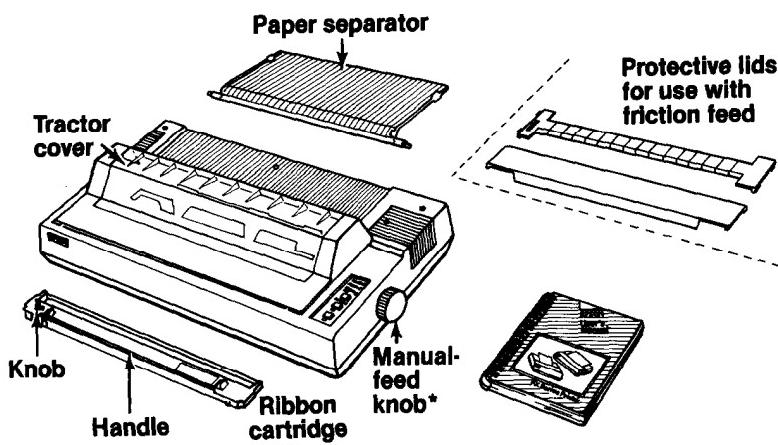
7. A tractor unit
8. A dust cover for the tractor unit

As you unpack your printer, you may want to save all protective plastic, paper, and cardboard to use in the future for repacking. Figure 1-2 displays with labels the parts of each model that we discuss in this chapter.

## FX-80



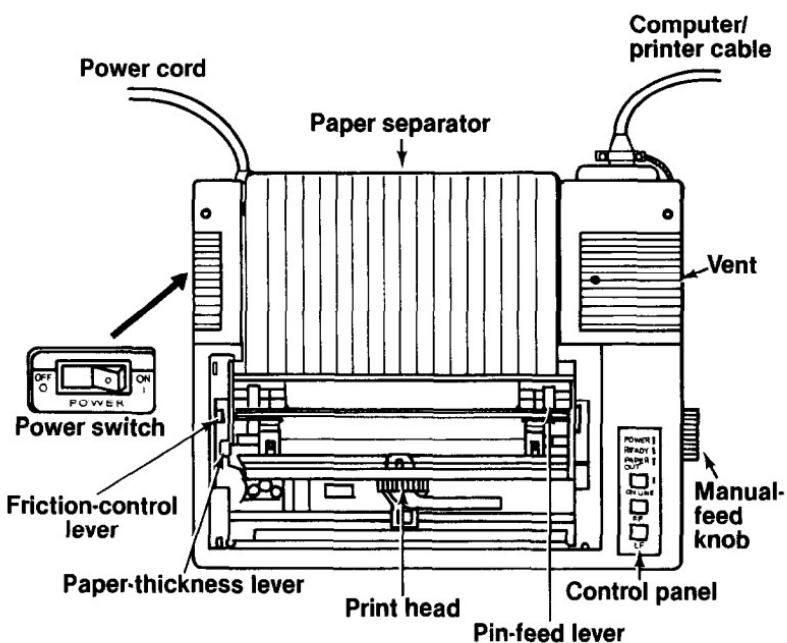
## FX-100



\*The manual-feed knob is not attached to the printer when it is shipped.

Figure 1-1. The FX-80 and FX-100 printers

## FX-80



## FX-100

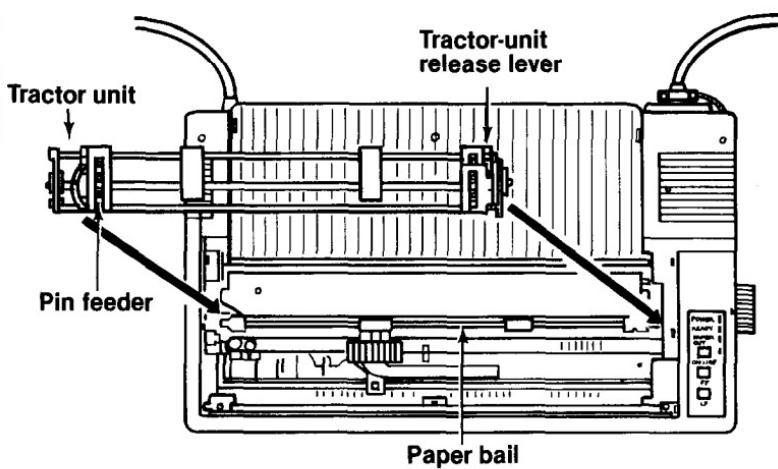


Figure 1-2. Printer parts

## **Additional Supplies and Accessories**

The following items may be purchased separately from your Epson dealer:

**Printer cable or interface kit.** Each computer system has its own way of connecting to a printer. Some computers need a cable only, others require both a cable and board. The FX printers use the Centronics standard parallel interface scheme described in Appendix K. If your computer expects to communicate through a serial rather than through a parallel interface, you must purchase a serial board for your FX. Your Epson dealer stocks a variety of FX interface boards as well as cables.

**Printer paper.** FX printers are designed to accommodate several types and sizes of paper. Both printers include tractors so that you can use continuous-feed paper with pin-feed holes and friction mechanisms so that you can use paper without these holes.

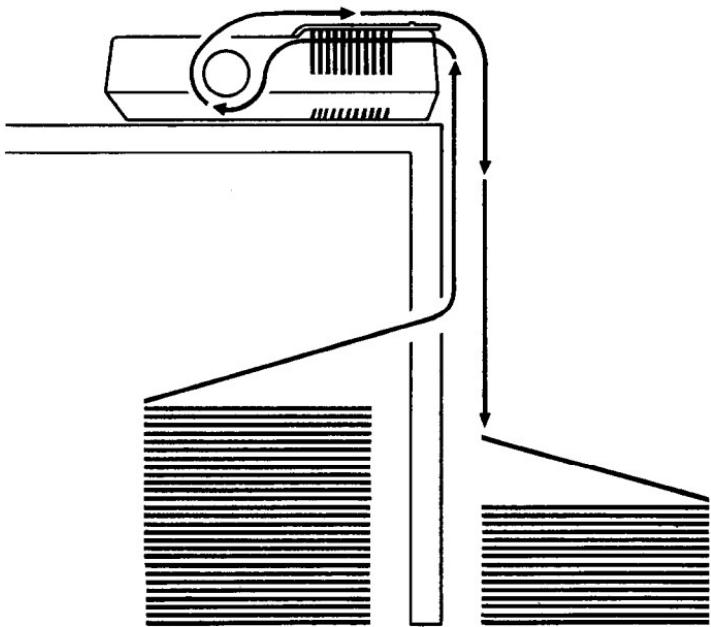
**Ribbon cartridge replacement.** The expected life of a cartridge is three million characters (roughly 1,000 pages of text).

**Print head replacement.** The expected life of a print head is one hundred million characters (over 30,000 pages of text).

**Roll paper holder.** For the FX-80, you may purchase an optional roll-paper holder.

## **Printer Location**

Naturally, your printer must sit somewhere near the computer (the length of the cable is the limiting factor), but there are other considerations in finding a choice location for your computer/printer setup. For instance, you may want to find an electrical outlet that is not controlled by a switch—since a switch may be accidentally shut off while you have valuable information stored in memory. Be sure the outlet is grounded (do not use an adapter plug). To minimize power fluctuations, avoid using an outlet on the same circuit breaker with large electrical machines or appliances. Finally, for continuous-feed operations you must allow enough room for the paper to flow freely, as in Figure 1-3.



**Figure 1-3. Paper path**

## Printer Preparation

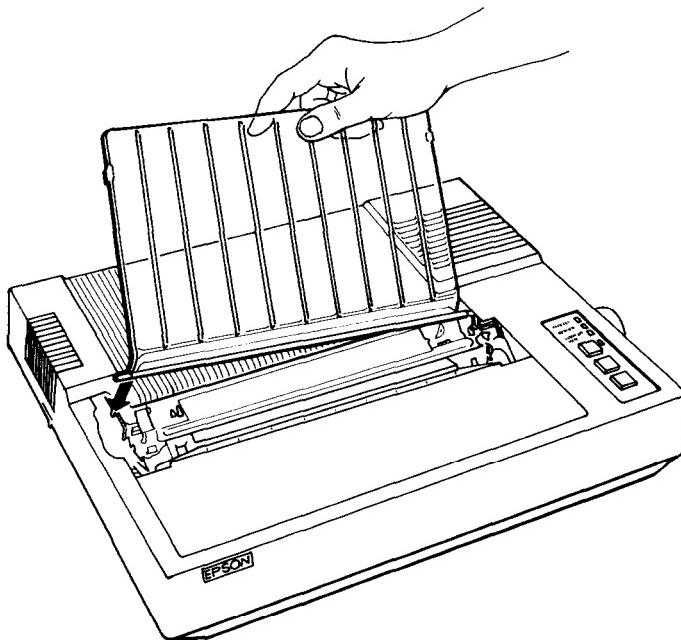
Once you've found a good home for FX, you'll need to do some preparing before you can print. This section describes the first steps, which include installing a few parts, checking the setting of some internal switches, and then inserting the ribbon cartridge.

Note: The printer should be turned OFF during all set-up operations.

## Paper separator

To install the paper separator, hold it vertically so that it rests on the two slots at the back of the metal frame as shown in Figure 1-4. Press down gently but firmly until the separator snaps into place.

To remove the separator, pull up on the left side first, letting the right side slide out of its slot.



**Figure 1-4. Paper separator**

## Covers

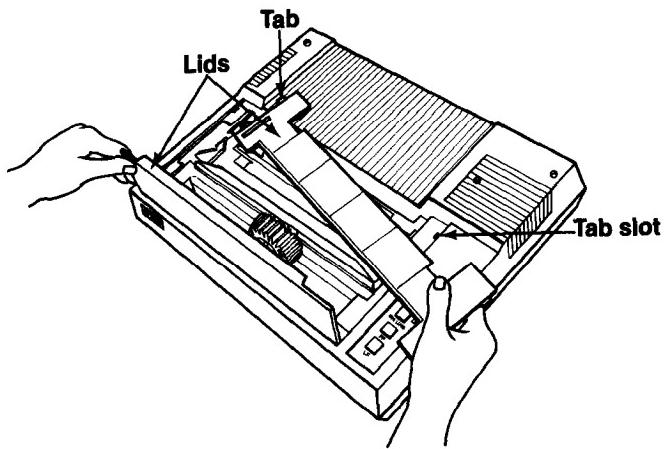
For protection from dust and foreign objects and for quiet operation, FX printers use two types of covers. When you use the friction feed on either the FX-80 or the FX-100 or the built-in tractor on the FX-80, use the pair of flat protective lids (Figure 1-5). When you use the removable tractor unit, use the tractor cover (Figure 1-6).

Install the center protective lid by inserting tabs into slots (one tab per side on the FX-80, two on the FX-100). Fit the left side of the lid over the friction-control lever (you may need to slightly bow the middle of the lid before you can snap the tabs into their slots). When you need to change the setting of the pin feeder on the FX-80 or install a tractor unit on either model, remove this lid by giving it a slight upward tug.

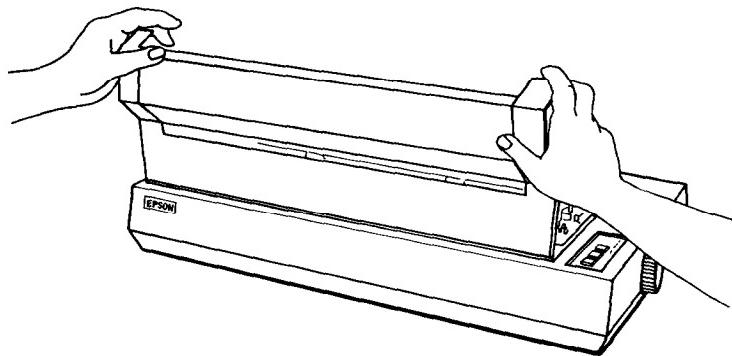
Install and remove either the front protective lid or the tractor cover by using the hinge posts at the front of the printer opening. This arrangement allows you to easily raise and lower the cover to load paper or ribbon. To install the cover, hold it at its full vertical position, slide the right hinge fitting over the right hinge post, and set the left

fitting over its post. Lower the cover. To remove the cover, move it to its full vertical position and then lift it up and a little to the left.

---



**Figure 1-5. Protective lids**



**Figure 1-6. Tractor cover**

### **Manual-feed knob**

The manual-feed knob (Figure 1-7) can aid you in loading and adjusting paper. To install the manual-feed knob, hold it in position on

the right side and twist until the flat sides of rod and fitting match. Push the knob straight in with a steady pressure. To remove, pull straight out.

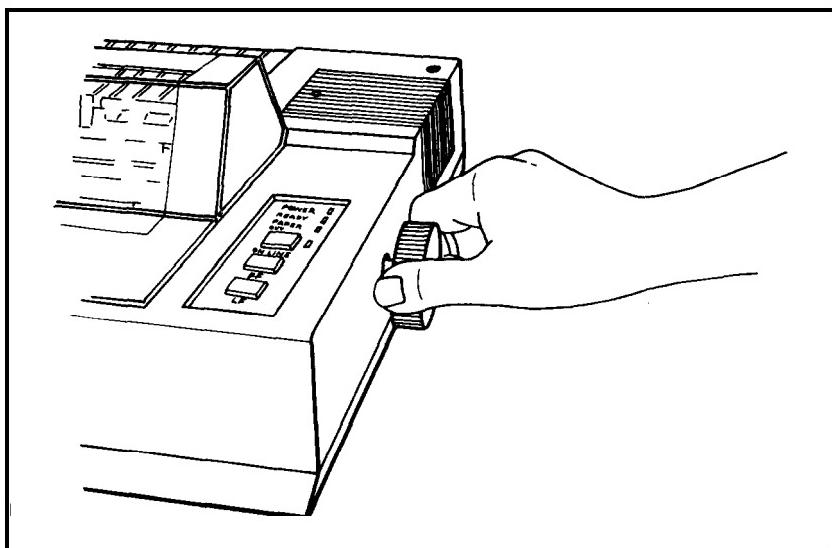


Figure 1-7. Manual-feed knob

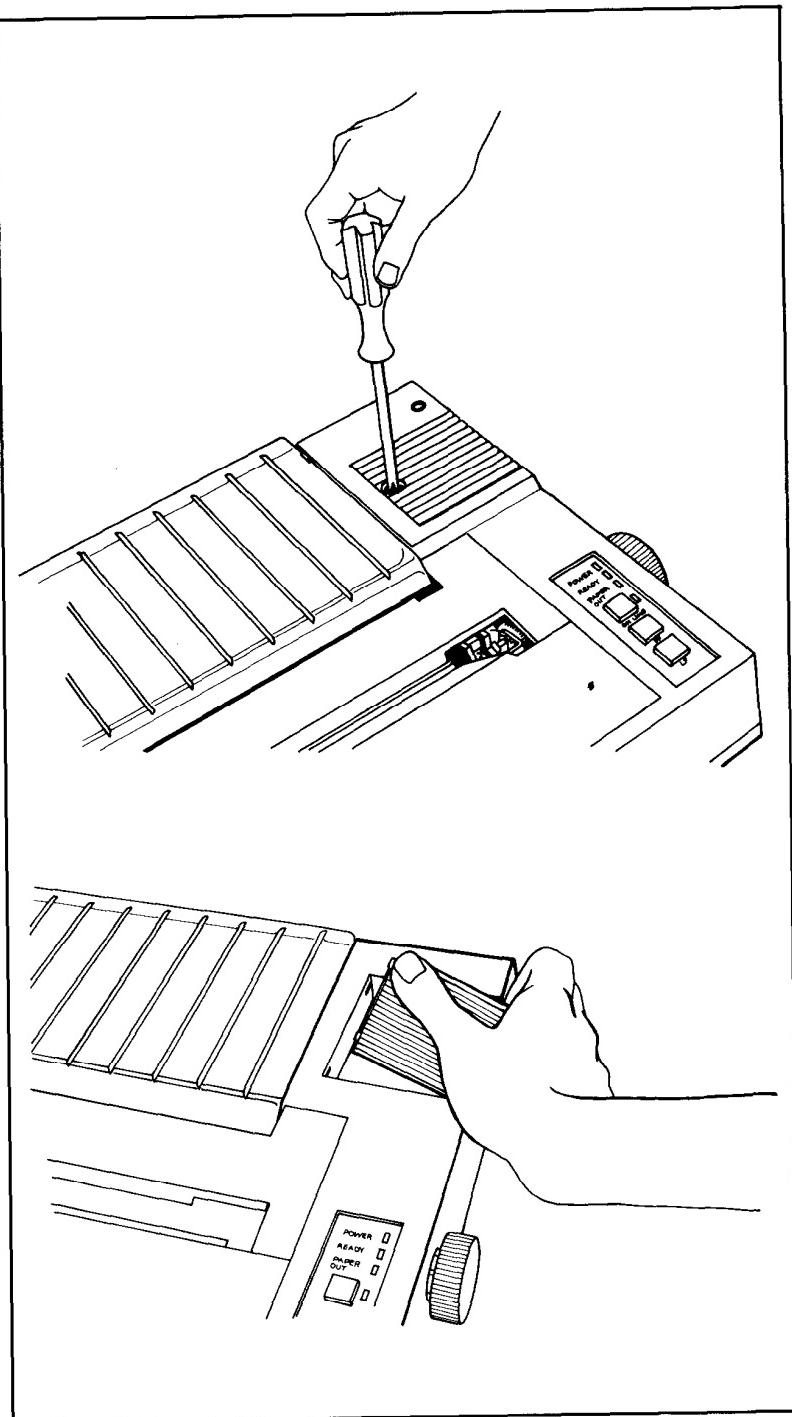
## DIP switches

Several tiny switches, called DIP (for Dual In-line Package) switches, are located inside the FX. They control a number of important printer functions, such as line-feed adjustment, the paper-out sensor, the beeper, and the default print modes. You can check these switches now, or you can skip to the ribbon section and check the switches later.

The design of the FX printer allows easy access to the internal switches. They are located under the upper-right vent. To remove the vent, you need a Phillip's-head screwdriver. Once the top screw is removed, take the vent off by pressing down and sideways with the palm of your hand (Figure 1-8).

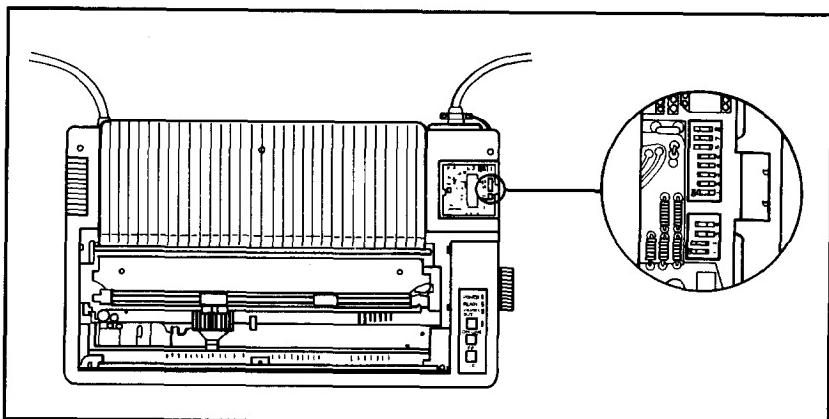
Do not replace the screw because in the course of this manual, we will sometimes suggest that you reset switches. Keep the screw in a safe spot so that you can replace it later.

Locate the two DIP switch assemblies as shown in Figure 1-7 and check that they are set as shown in Figure 1-10.

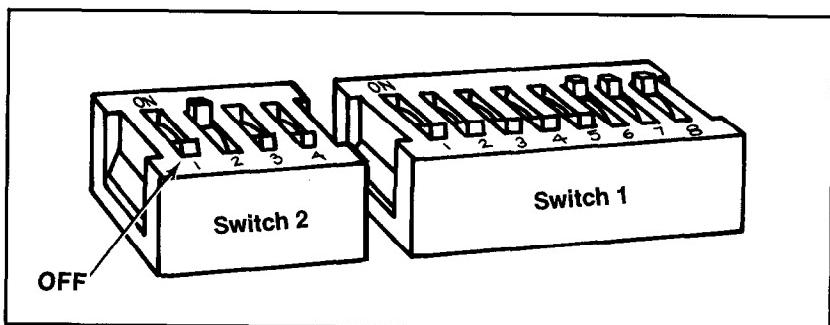


**Figure 1-8. DIP switch vent**

These switches are set at the factory, and most of them you will never need to touch. You may, however, want to take the time now to match up the switches with their functions, as shown in Table 1-1. For a further discussion of the DIP switches, see Appendix E.



**Figure 1-9. DIP switch location**



**Figure 1-10. DIP switch factory settings**

Always turn the power off (with the switch on the left side of the printer) before touching any internal switch. The printer checks most switch settings only at power-up. If you make changes when the power is on, they may be ignored until you turn the printer off, then back on. So set all switches with the power off. Use a non-metallic object, such as the back of a pen, to change the DIP switches.

One switch deserves your immediate attention; it is the switch labelled 4 on switch assembly 2. This switch (let's call it 2-4) adjusts the automatic line feed (the movement of the paper up one line) at the end of each print line to match your computer system's needs.

**Table 1-1. DIP switch functions**

**Switch 1**

No.	ON	Function	OFF
1-8	ON	International character	OFF
1-7	ON	International character	OFF
1-6	ON	International character	OFF
1-5	Emphasized	Print weight	Single-strike
1-4	2K buffer	RAM memory	User-defined characters
1-3	Inactive	Paper-out sensor	Active
1-2	0 (slashed)	Zero character	0
1-1	Compressed	Print pitch	Pica

**Switch 2**

No.	ON	Function	OFF
2-4	CR + LF	Automatic line feed	CR only
2-3	ON	Skip-over-perforation feature	OFF
2-2	Sounds	Beeper	Mute
2-1	Active	Printer select	Inactive

**Note:** The shaded boxes show the factory settings.

Some computer interfaces automatically send a line-feed code to the printer at the end of each print line. Other interfaces send only a carriage return (which returns the print head to its left-most position), and rely on the printer to perform the automatic line feed. Switch 2-4 enables the FX to match either requirement. With switch 2-4 on, the printer automatically adds a line feed to every carriage return it receives from the computer; with the switch off, it expects the computer to provide the line feed. If you are not sure what your system requires, leave the switch the way you find it, but remember that you can adjust this if your first printing occurs either all on one line or with the lines spaces twice as far apart as you requested.

We recommend two changes now. Turning switch 1-2 on adds a slash to the zero character, which makes program listings easier to read. If you are not going to create your own characters, turn switch 1-4 on to take advantage of the internal 2K buffer.

**Ribbon installation**

First, be sure the printer is turned off and move the print head to the middle of the platen.

Remove the ribbon cartridge from its packing materials. Holding the cartridge by the plastic fin on the top, guide the pair of tabs at each

end of the cartridge into the corresponding slots in the printer frame (Figure 1-11). The cartridge should snap neatly into place.

With the paper bail resting on the platen, you can tuck the ribbon between the metal ribbon guide and the black print head.

As Figure 1-11 suggests, you can ease the ribbon into place with the deft application of a dull pencil. To remove any slack in the ribbon, turn the ribbon knob in the direction of the arrow.

Note: When you replace a ribbon, remember that the print head may be hot from usage; be careful.

## Paper Loading

How you load your paper depends on which model of FX you have and which type of paper and feeder you are using. This section covers each type of paper loading and then illustrates the top-of-form position on both models.

Both the FX-80 and the FX-100 include tractors so that you can use continuous-feed paper with pin-feed holes and friction mechanisms so that you can use paper without these holes.

Continuous-feed paper usually comes fanfolded into a box and has pin-feed holes arranged on half-inch tear-off strips at each side. This allows the printer's pin feeders to engage the paper and pull it evenly through the printer. After printing you can remove the tear-off strips and separate the pages.

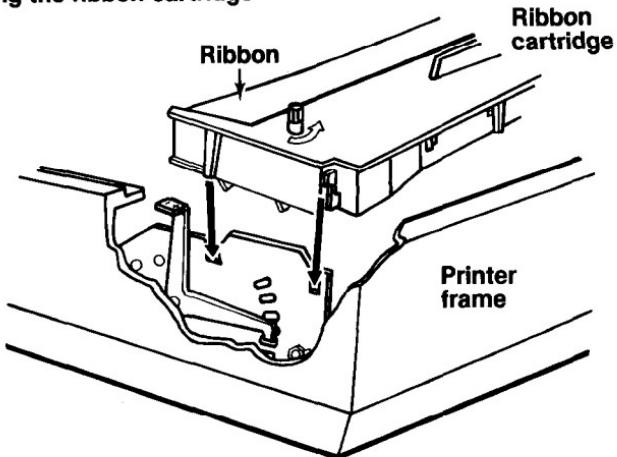
The FX-80's built-in tractor handles continuous-feed paper that is 9½ inches wide, which is the standard 8½-inch width with the tear-off strips removed. The FX printers' removable tractor units (optional on the FX-80, standard on the FX-100) handle continuous paper in widths from 4 inches to the width of the platen - 10 inches on the FX-80, 16 inches on the FX-100. The friction feeder on each FX handles all papers narrower than the width of the platen.

To refresh your memory about names of the parts, refer back to Figure 1-2.

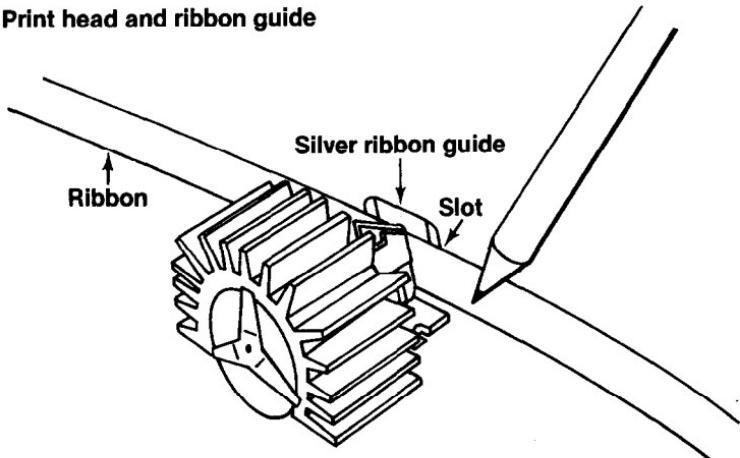
### **FX-80: built-in tractor feed**

The FX-80's built-in tractor will accommodate 9½- to 10-inch wide continuous-feed paper with pin-feed holes. You should have few problems loading it if you follow these instructions carefully.

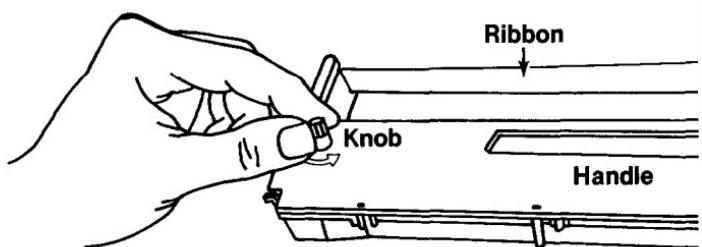
**Inserting the ribbon cartridge**



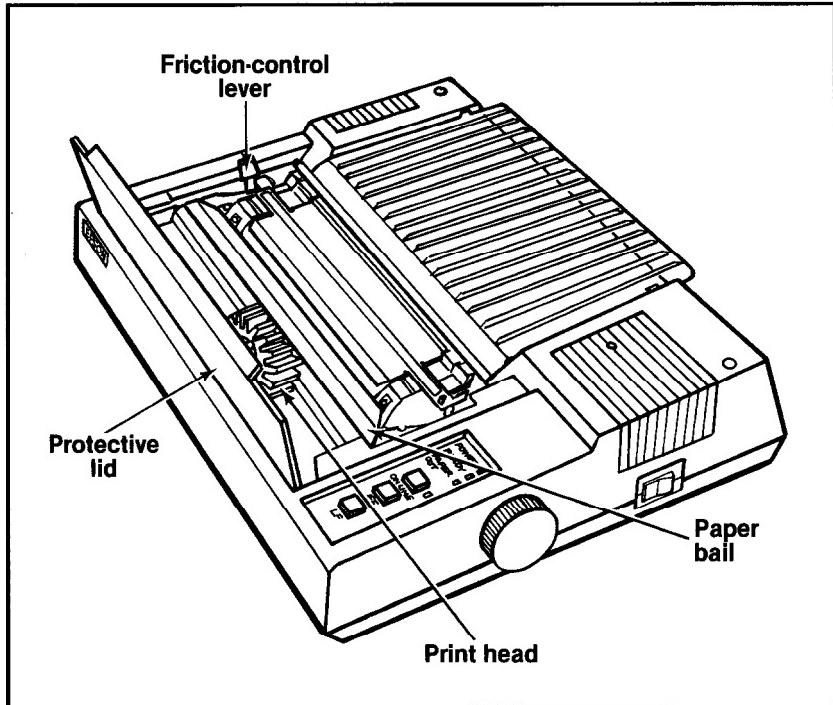
**Print head and ribbon guide**



**Adjusting the ribbon**



**Figure 1-11. Ribbon insertion**

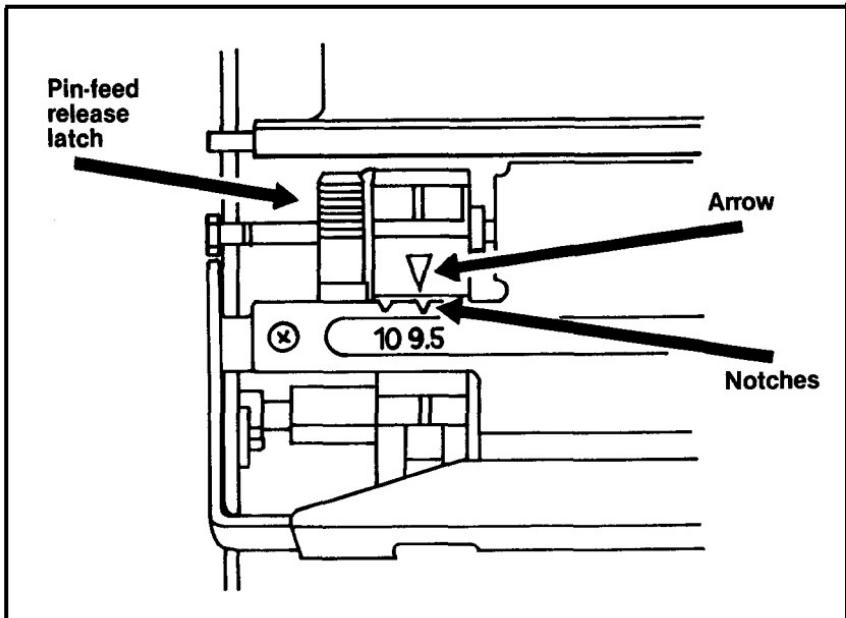


**Figure 1-12. Printer readied for paper insertion**

- Be sure the printer is turned off. Lift the front protective lid and move the print head to the middle of the platen.
- Remove the center protective lid.
- Pull the paper bail and the friction-control lever toward the front of the printer. Your printer should now look like Figure 1-12.
- Adjust the pin-feed levers to approximate the width of paper you are using. Pull the levers forward to release the pin feeders, move them so their arrows line up with the correct position on the scale (e.g., for 9.5 for 9½ -inch paper), and push the levers backward to lock them into position (Figure 1- 13).

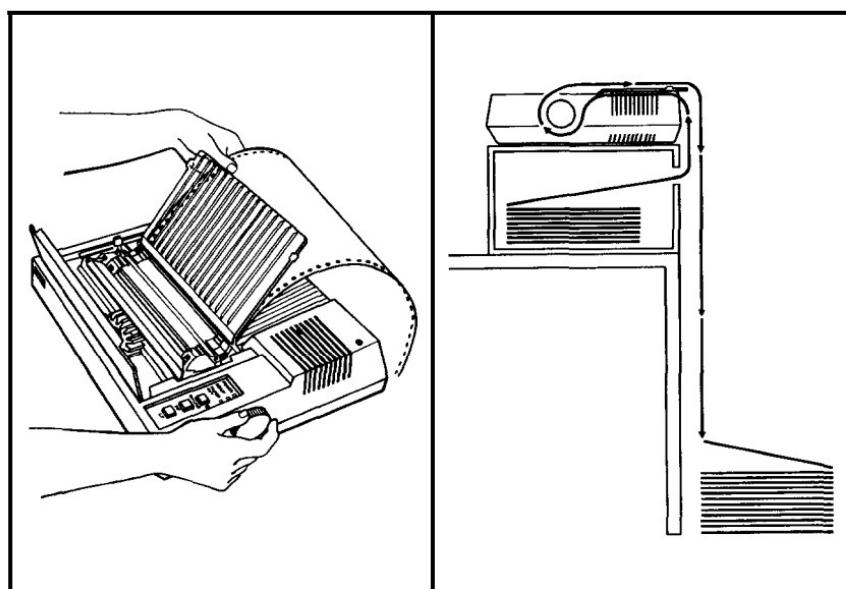
If you are using fanfold paper, start by positioning your paper directly beneath or behind the printer, as in Figure 1-14, so that the paper won't kink or pull to one side.

- Insert the paper under the plastic separator, guiding it with your left hand while you slowly roll the manual-feed knob clockwise. It is



**Figure 1-13. Pin feeder adjustment**

very important to keep the paper straight so that the pins on both sides engage at the same time. If the paper does not move smoothly, remove it by reversing the manual-feed knob and start again with an unwrinkled sheet.



**Figure 1-14. Loading the FX-80**

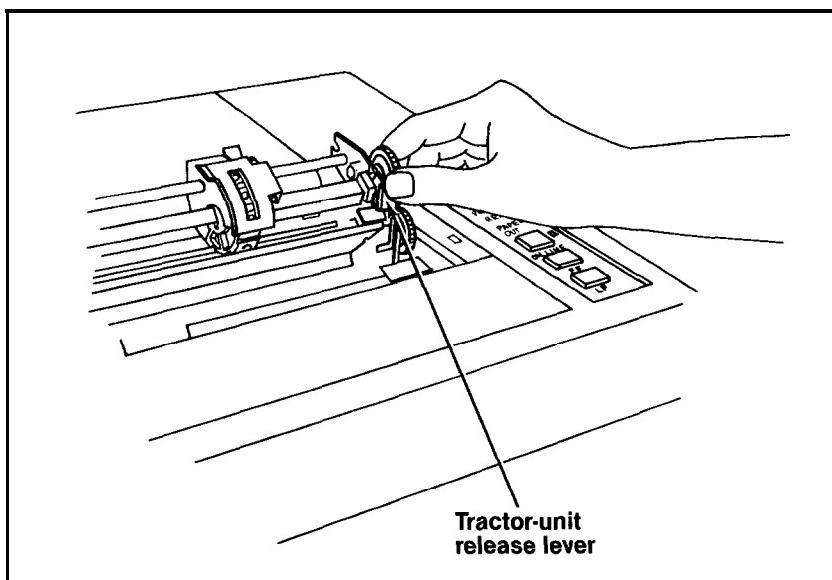
- As the paper comes up the front of the platen, watch to be sure that it is feeding under the black edges of the pin feeders. If your paper is wrinkling as it comes through, you may need to readjust the pin feeders.
- Reinstall the center protective lid underneath the paper. Push the paper bail back against the paper and close the front protective lid. You are now ready to set the top of form, as shown at the end of this section.
- The friction-control should remain toward the front of the printer as long as the tractor is used.

## **FX-80 and FX-100: friction feed**

The friction feed is for paper without pin-feed holes.

Before using the friction feed on the FX-80, disengage the pin feeders by pulling the levers forward, then move the feeders as far toward the edges as possible. Remove the center protective lid if it is on.

If a tractor unit is installed on the top, remove it. Push both tractor-unit release levers back (one is shown close up in Figure 1-15). Rock the unit up and back, pulling it gently toward the rear of the printer. The tractor will come off easily—you should not have to tug on the unit to remove it.



**Figure 1-15. Tractor unit release**

Now follow these steps to load your paper into the friction feeder:

- Be sure the printer is turned off. Lift the front protective lid and move the print head to the middle of the platen (refer back to Figure 1-12). Pull the paper bail up.
- Engage the friction-control mechanism by pushing the friction-control lever to the back.
- Guide the paper under the paper separator and the platen with your left hand, while turning the manual-feed knob with your right hand.

If you hear a crinkling noise, stop. This can result from the paper getting slightly wrinkled; it is best to remove the paper and start over with an unwrinkled sheet.

- Do not pull on the paper as it comes up from the platen; leave the friction feeder in charge. Push the paper bail back against the paper, close the front protective lid and reinstall the center protective lid. You are now ready to set the top of form, as shown at the end of this section.

There is one more point to consider if you are printing on single sheets of paper. DIP switch 1-3 is set to active at the factory, and this means that the paper-out feature will sound the FX's beeper and halt printing whenever it senses the bottom of your sheet of paper. In practice, this means that without deactivating the sensor, you won't be able to print on the bottom of a single sheet of paper. You can, usually, deactivate the paper-out sensor easily by changing switch 1-3. Some computer systems, however, ignore the setting of DIP switch 1-3 (See Appendix F.)

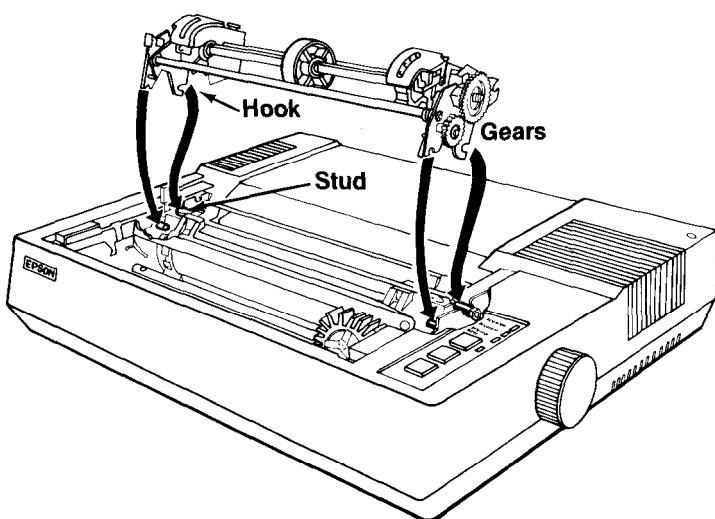
## **FX-80 and FX-100: removable tractor unit (optional on the FX-80)**

The removable tractor will accommodate pin-feed paper in any width from four inches to the width of the platen.

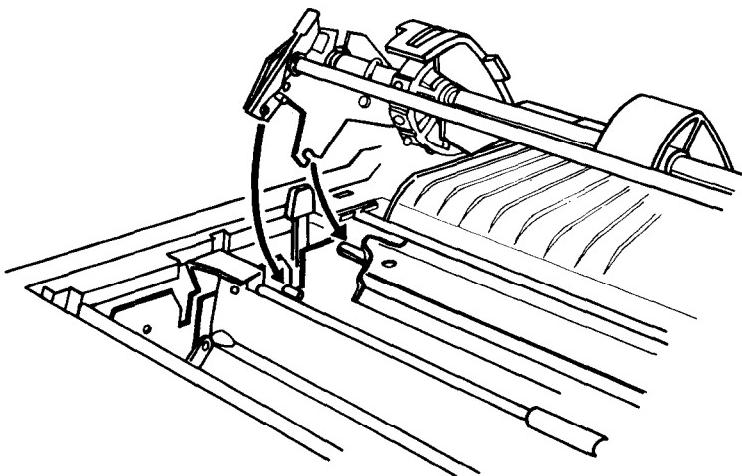
To install the optional tractor unit on the FX-80, begin by removing the center protective lid if it is on. Move the built-in pin feeders as far as possible to the right.

To add the tractor unit to either the FX-80 or the FX-100, hold the tractor unit over the printer with the gears to your right as shown in Figure 1-16. Lower the rear hooks over the rear studs as shown in Figure 1-17, pushing the unit back against the studs to ensure that both

sides of the tractor assembly are firmly in place. Rock the front of the unit downward, pressing firmly until it locks into place.



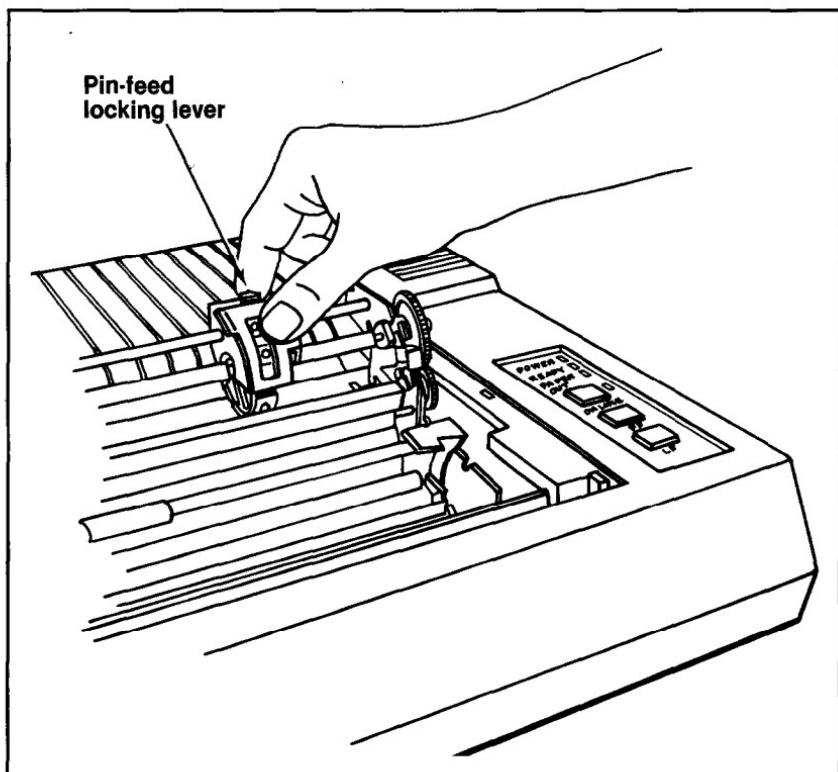
**Figure 1-16. Tractor unit installation**



**Figure 1-17. Hook and stud**

To load the paper into the unit, use this procedure:

- Be sure the printer is turned off; then open the front protective lid to move the print head to the middle of the platen.
- Pull the paper bail and the friction-control lever toward the front of the printer (refer back to Figure 1-12).
- Insert the paper under the paper separator and the platen and push the paper through to the front.
- Position the pin feeders, using the pin-feed locking levers to make the adjustment. One is shown in Figure 1-18.
- Raise the black covers of both pin feeders and ease the paper over the pins. Adjust the paper or pin feeders as necessary so that there are no wrinkles or dips in the paper. Now you are ready to set the top of form.



**Figure 1-18 . Adjusting the pin feeders**

## **Top-of-form position**

After you have loaded the paper, you should set it to the top of form, which is the position of the print head when you turn the printer on. (Since the computer term form corresponds to the word page, it may be easier for you to think of this as the top of the page.) To make this setting, advance the paper until a perforation lies slightly below the top of the ribbon.

The relationship between the perforation and the printhead is the same on both models of the printer, as you can see in Figure 1-19. You need to leave some paper above the ribbon so that the paper moves up smoothly.

When you have the position set, lower the bail and replace or reposition the lids or cover.

Although you **have** arranged **the** paper correctly, you are not done. The printer will not recognize the top of form until the next time you turn it on. The FX considers a form to be 66 lines long unless you change this length as discussed in Chapter 8.

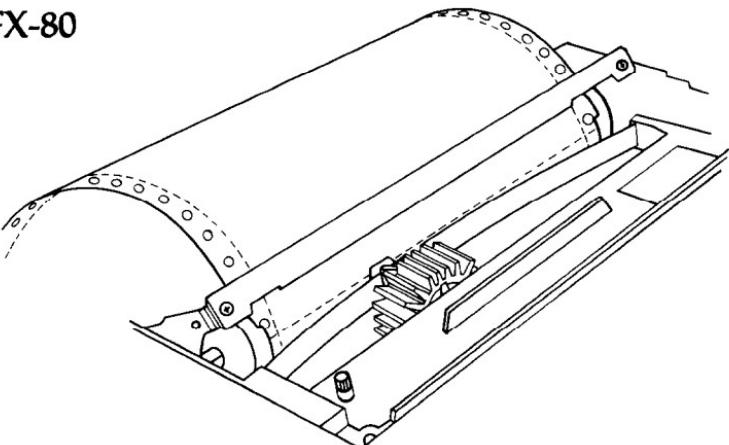
## **Paper-thickness lever**

The paper-thickness lever shown in Figure 1-20 moves the print head to accommodate various paper thicknesses. The factory sets it for ordinary paper (which is  $1/500$ th of an inch thick), but you can adjust it for printing one original and up to two copies. For thick paper or multiple copies, move it toward the front. Do not use the extreme rear setting, however. This position is used for head alignment and will shorten the life of the print head if used in normal operation.

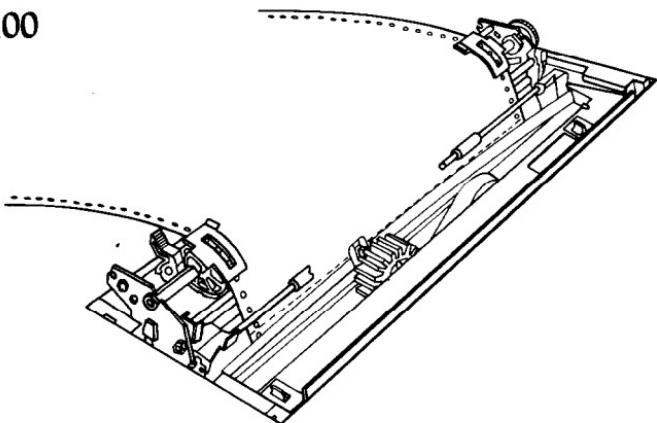
## **starting up**

It is finally time to connect the printer to the computer; remember that some computers need interface kits and all need cables. First make sure the power switch is off. Connect the printer end of the printer cable to the connector at the right rear of the FX (as shown in Figure

**FX-80**



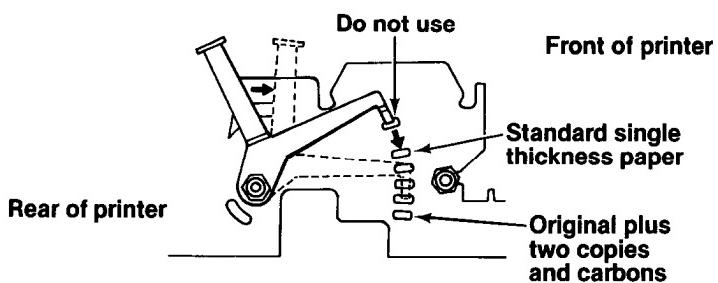
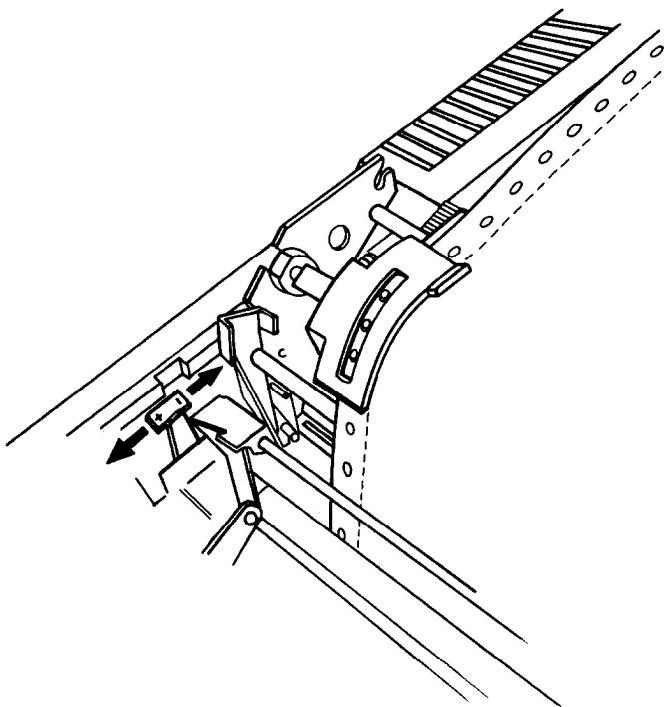
**FX-100**



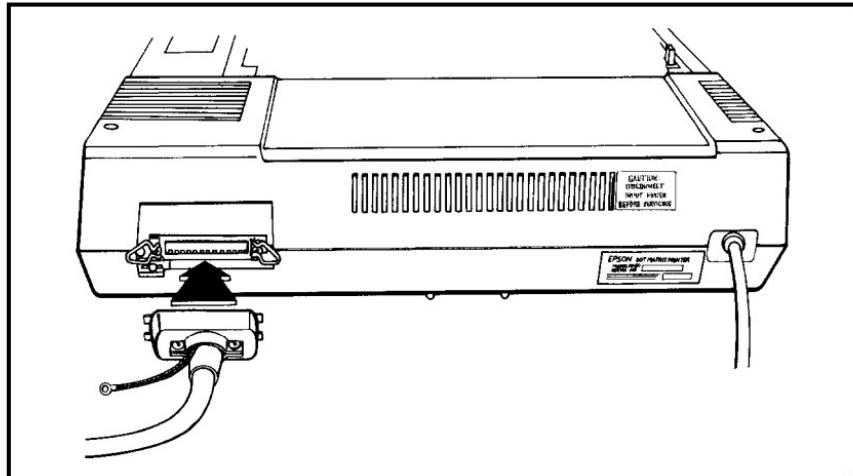
**Figure 1-19. Top of form**

**1-21).** The other end of the cable plugs into your computer. If your cable includes grounding wires, be sure to fasten the wires to the grounding screws at each end.

With the paper loaded, turn the printer on with the toggle switch at the left-rear corner of the FX. You get a little dance from the print head and three lights go on: the POWER light, the READY light, and the ON LINE light. If the ON LINE and READY lights are not on, push the button marked ON LINE. If the PAPER OUT light is on, the paper is not loaded correctly.



*Figure 1-20. Paper thickness adjustment*



**Figure 1-21. Cable connection**

## Control panel

When the control panel's ON LINE light is on, the printer and computer are in direct communication and the FF (form feed) and LF (line feed) buttons have no effect. Go ahead, try pushing one.

To use the FF and LF button; press the ON LINE button to turn it off. Now you can see what the other buttons do.

Press the LF button briefly, then release it. That produces one line feed. Now hold the LF button down for a moment to produce several line feeds.

The FF button advances the paper one complete page(form). If you hold the button down, it advances several forms. Ideally, you'll set the top-of-form position before you turn on the printer. That way, your printing can start on the first line of the paper. If you turn the printer on while the print head is sitting in the middle of a form, that is precisely where the next form will start when you press the FF button or your program sends the FX a form feed.

Remember that the ON LINE light has to be off for the FF and LF buttons to work.

## The FX tests itself

Now it's time to see how your new FX operates. If you're using an FX-100, be sure you have full-width (15-inch printing area) paper

loaded because the printer's test uses all **136** columns. Turn the printer completely off (with the switch on the left side of the printer), press down the LF button, and turn the printer back on again while still holding down the LF button.

```
! "#$%& ' ()**+, -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJ  
"#$%& ' ()**+, -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJK  
#$%& ' ()**+, -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLM  
$%& ' ()**+, -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMN  
%& ' ()**+, -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO  
' ()**+, -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOP  
( )**+, -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQ  
)**+, -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQR  
**+, -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRS  
+, -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRST  
, -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTU  
. -./0123456789: ; <=>?@ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUV
```

**Figure 1-22. Sample automatic test**

Figure 1-22 shows the FX's automatic test, which prints the standard characters that are stored in the printer. The test pattern continues until you turn the printer off. If you let it run long enough, you'll see two sets (Roman and Italic) of upper- and lower-case letters, plus many other characters.

If you plan to use your FX printer primarily for word processing or with some other commercial software, you are now ready to follow the printer set-up instructions in your software menu or manual. Because most software packages include set-up routines for dot matrix printers, this set up may be merely a matter of specifying which printer you are using.

In case your software asks for specifications that you do not understand, check the appendixes or consult your computer dealer.

Some programs allow you to insert codes to activate such FX features as Emphasized and Compressed printing. Your software manual will tell you how to use this feature, and the Quick Reference Card in Volume 2 will give you the necessary ESCape and control codes.

## **Chapter 2**

# **BASIC and the Printer**

While you read this manual, you'll be testing your FX with programs in the BASIC language. You can, of course, use another language with your printer; see Appendixes A through D for the ASCII and ESCape codes that your software manual will explain how to use. Here we use BASIC because it is the most popular language for personal computers.

One of the simplest things you can do with any FX printer is print listings of your BASIC programs. You merely load a BASIC program into the computer and send the LISTing output to the printer instead of to the screen.

Unfortunately, different computer systems access the printer in different ways. For example, most computers that use Microsoft BASIC send PRINT or LIST commands to the printer by adding a leading L to a screen command: LPRINT, LLIST, etc. Some other computer systems use PRINT# in place of LPRINT. Another group uses PR#1 to route information to the printer and PR#0 to restore the flow of information to the screen. If you aren't familiar with your system's command conventions, consult its manual.

We will use the LPRINT and LLIST commands for our examples in this manual because the widespread acceptance of Microsoft BASIC makes these commands as close to a standard as exists in this industry. But remember that you may need to modify such commands to match the unique aspects of your system. The Preface and Appendix F can help.

Once you have discovered how your computer communicates with the printer, load a BASIC program into memory. Now list it onto the printer, using your computer's version of the LLIST command. Some examples are shown in Table 2-1.

**Table 2-1. Several computers' print LIST commands**

Command	Computer
LLIST	Epson QX-10™, IBM-PC®, and Radio Shack TRS-80®
LIST"COMØ:"	Epson HX-20 Notebook Computer™
PR#1 LIST PR#Ø	Apple® II

If your listing is more than a page long (or if you didn't start the listing at the top of a page), your printer may have printed right over the perforation. Set DIP switch 2-3 to the on position, and the printer will automatically skip over the perforation. We discuss this further in Chapter 8.

Meanwhile, printing a program LISTing is a fundamental function of the printer. Be sure you manage this before continuing (if you have trouble, consult your computer's manual for help).

## BASIC Communications

Part of the difficulty in controlling communications between computer and printer is the lack of a completely standard coding scheme. When your computer sends out a numeric code for the letter A, you naturally want your printer to interpret that code as an A. Most manufacturers of computers, printers, and software use the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII, pronounced **ask-ee**) to code such frequently used characters as the letters of the alphabet, numerals, and keyboard symbols. Of the 256 ASCII numbers, most are codes for specific characters; some are codes for such computer or printer functions as sounding a beep or performing a carriage return.

The ASCII standard does not yet allow for the advanced features in today's computers and printers. Individual manufacturers therefore adjust the codes to suit their own needs, which means that we are often faced with compatibility problems between printers and computers. (To compare your computer's version of the ASCII table with the FX's version, see your computer manual and this manual's Appendix A.) You can usually overcome the code inconsistencies by sending control codes for advanced printer functions in care of a special ASCII code that is called an ESCape code. The next five subsections discuss these matters in more detail.

## **Character strings**

The character-string (or CHR\$) function converts any decimal number from zero through 255 to a character or action. Its format is CHR\$ followed by a number in parentheses, for example, CHR\$(84). The character-string command follows a PRINT or LPRINT command and causes your computer system to send an ASCII code to the computer's screen or to the printer. What gets printed or performed is determined by the particular modified ASCII table that is used by your system. Where the printing or action happens-on your screen or your printer-depends on the print command that precedes the character-string command.

For a fast check on what your computer does with this function, try printing a few characters on your computer's screen. The usual format for this is PRINT CHR\$(n). The n represents one of the numbers from zero to 255, each one of which accesses a unique character or action. Try typing this:

```
10 PRINT CHR$(65)
```

and RUNning it. Since most computers use the numbers from 32 to 127 to mean the ASCII set of characters, you should see a capital A on the screen.

It's the numbers less than 32 and greater than 127 that produce different results on nearly every brand of computer. Try entering:

```
10 PRINT CHR$(193)
```

and RUNning it. If you don't see anything on the screen, don't worry. Remember that this was just a quick check. We are mainly interested in sending that 193 to the printer, and what it prints on the screen is not as important right now.

## **BASIC print commands**

Well then, what happens when you send such a non-standard code as 193 to the printer? To test this out, you need to know what program commands your computer uses to activate the printer. Some typical command sequences are shown in Table 2-2.

**Table 2-2. Several computers' printer activating commands**

Activating commands	Computer
10 LPRINT CHR\$(193)	Epson QX-10, IBM-PC, and Radio Shack TRS-80
5 OPEN "0",#1,"COM0" 10 PRINT#1, CHR\$(193) 99 CLOSE#1	Epson HX-20 Notebook Computer
5 PR#1 10 PRINT CHR\$(193) 99 PR#0	Apple II

Check your computer's reference manual and type in the commands appropriate to your computer. Then type RUN.

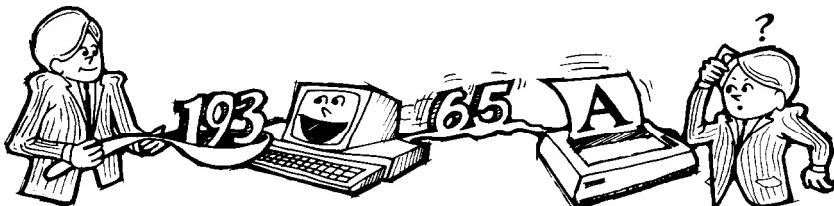
With any luck, you will get an Italic capital A on the printer: 4



If nothing prints, it's time to double-check your computer manual and cable connections. Make sure the printer is ON LINE and the READY light is lit.

## ASCII and BASIC basics

If you end up with a Roman A: A



instead of an Italic A, pay close attention to the next three paragraphs.

The original ASCII code was designed to use the decimal numbers zero through 127. Computer systems designers soon decided to extend this range (to 0 through 255) in order to make room for more features. Unfortunately, some designers did not anticipate that printers would make use of this extended range. So they designed BASIC printer drivers that intercept any number in the upper half of the range (128 - 255) and automatically convert it to the lower half of the range by subtracting 128.

In these systems such a code as CHR\$(193) never makes it to the printer. The printer driver subtracts 128, which means that the code for Italic A gets to the printer as a CHR\$(65). The printer then produces a Roman A.

For many applications, you won't need the upper half of the ASCII codes. For others, the inability to generate codes greater than 127 will be an obstacle. Whenever we can, we suggest ways to get around this obstacle. In Chapter 5, for instance, we discuss Italic Mode, which is the FX designers' method of making Italic characters easily accessible to all users.

If you're patting yourself on the back because your printer printed an Italic A, postpone your celebration for a bit. Nearly all computers' BASIC programs intercept codes on their way to the printer and alter some of them. For example, some popular systems intercept a CHR\$(10)-line feed-and send out a CHR\$(13)-carriage return-instead. Typical problem codes involve the numbers 0 and 9 to 13. Your computer manual may alert you to these problems. Or experience may have to be your guide.

In order to help computer systems that can't send a zero in a CHR\$ command, several printers' instruction sequences allow such options as using "0" (quote-zero-quote) in place of CHR\$(0). Besides mentioning some of these solutions within the text of this User's Manual, we have written a troubleshooting appendix, Appendix F.

## Control codes

Enough talking about problems. Here's a program line to try:

10 LPRINT CHR\$(7)

Be sure to use the appropriate printer access commands for your system.

Now RUN it. You should hear a short beep. (If you don't hear it, check DIP switch 2-2, using the procedure we gave in Chapter 1.) That's the printer's beeper, which most often sounds to inform you that you've run out of paper (Appendix F lists other causes of beeping). When you produce the beep, you've proved that on your computer certain codes do indeed perform printer functions. Table 2-3 shows the ranges that the FX uses when it interprets ASCII codes for characters and functions.

**Table 2-3. ASCII codes on the FX**

ASCII code group	FX interpretation
0 to 31, 127	Printer control codes
32 to 126	Standard (Roman) character set
128 to 159,255	Additional control codes (Function same as 0-31 , 127)
160 to 254	Italic character set

See either Appendix A or the Quick Reference Card for a chart of the FX interpretation of each ASCII code number.

This would be a good time to try printing a few of these codes on your own. And you may want to take a break before you start the next section.

### **Escape-CHR\$(27)-and other CHR\$ commands**

As more features are added to the printer, even the extended range of codes (0 - 255) is inadequate if only single-code CHR\$ instructions can be used. Because of this, Epson has designed the FX printer's logic to understand special sequences of control codes, the ESCape code sequences. You use these code sequences to select one or more printing features, or modes.

Such modes as Italic Mode and Expanded Mode affect the way the characters look. Other modes affect spacing and therefore the formatting of your pages. Appendix C, which is reprinted on the Quick Reference Card, collects the modes into categories for quick reference.

Each ESCape code sequence consists of the ESCape code, which is CHR\$(27), plus one or more of the FX's other CHR\$ control codes.

Here are two examples of ESCape code sequences:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)CHR$(71)
LPRINT CHR$(27)CHR$(38)CHR$(@)CHR$(1)CHR$(3)
```

To see how such sequences work, start a new program now by entering:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)CHR$(52)
20 LPRINT "ITALIC CHARACTER SET"
```

and RUNning it. When you can RUN a program, we show you the results that you should expect:

### *ITALIC CHARACTER SET*

Note: If you haven't yet read the Preface, which includes "Conventions Used in This Manual," this is the time to do it. Especially important now are the passages on semicolons and on saving programs.

The FX interprets the CHR\$(27)CHR\$(52) sequence in line 10 above as a command to switch from Roman to Italic characters. The LPRINT in line 20 sends a string of characters to the printer to verify that the printer is in Italic Mode.

Now type:

```
LLIST (or your system's version of the print LIST
command)
```

to check the printer's status as in Figure 2-1:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)CHR$(52)
20 LPRINT "ITALIC CHARACTER SET"
```

**Figure 2-1. Italic listing**

Since all the text is still printed in Italic characters, you can see that this mode stays on until it is turned off. This is typical of the modes on FX printers: nearly all modes stay on until turned off. We will alert you to the few exceptions.

If your printer is printing one line on top of another or if it is double spacing, you need to change the setting of the FX's DIP switch 2-4.

## Change Commands

After you have sent commands to the printer, you will often want to change them, either to turn off one or more modes, or to erase text. To understand what happens when you use one of the several FX methods of making changes, you need to know about two special aspects of the printer, defaults and the printer buffer.

We often talk in these pages about resetting the printer to its defaults. By defaults, we mean the settings that are in effect whenever you turn the printer on. The printer has default settings for such features as the size of a line, the size of a page, and the print mode or mode combination that is in effect (see Appendix G or the Quick Reference Card for a list). Although all of these defaults are originally set at the factory, you can reset some of them by hardware, by changing the appropriate DIP switches. You can also change most features that have defaults by software. But whenever you turn your printer off and back on, you will have reset its default settings.

For example, you can use the software control codes to make your pages be four inches long, but the next time you reset your printer, the page length will return to 11 inches.

Every control code that you send to the printer is stored in the printer's RAM buffer right along with the text. All material goes through this buffer to get to the printed page. This buffer is like a holding tank in which each print line is collected.

The buffer can hold a full line of text characters (on the FX-80, 80 characters for normal-width print, more characters for narrower widths; on the FX-100, 136 for normal and more for narrower widths) as well as control codes. All information resides in the buffer until the buffer is filled or a control code that empties it is received. (One such control code issues a carriage return; another type selects graphics, as discussed in Chapter 11.) Then the FX processes the line, one character at a time. As the printer encounters characters and codes, it prints text characters on the page and activates the print modes according to the control codes.

If you understand the concepts of defaults and buffering, you will rarely be surprised by what happens when you send a change code. The next three sections concern change codes: the first two cover changes you make to commands you have sent to the printer; the last concerns making changes to text.

## **Reset Code**

You could turn off the Italic Mode by turning the printer off, then back on. Although turning the printer off resets the printer to its defaults, which include Roman Mode, cycling the printer off and on may disrupt computer/printer communications. FX printers have a Reset Code to avoid that: ESCape CHR\$(64).

To see the Reset Code work, add these lines to your budding program:

```
30 LPRINT CHR$(27)CHR$(64)  
40 LPRINT "BACK TO ROMAN WITH THE RESET CODE"
```

and RUN it.

### *ITALIC CHARACTER SET*

### **RACK TO ROMAN WITH THE RESET CODE**

The Reset Code of line 30 turns off all special print modes and resets the printer to its default settings, which include Roman typeface. The top of form is also reset; now it's at the position of the print head when your program issued the Reset Code. You can test this by using the FF button to advance the paper one page.

Notice that there is a blank line between the two lines of text in the printout. This happens because BASIC provides a line feed after every line of print commands unless you put a semicolon at the end of the line. As you will see, we often end lines with semicolons to prevent unwanted line feeds.

The Reset Code is useful when you want to turn off all printer modes. It resets everything to its start-up condition. If you have several different modes active in the printer at one time, they are all shut off by the ESCape CHR\$(64).

## **Mode cancelling codes**

The FX printer also provides specific codes to turn off each mode separately. For example, an ESCape CHR\$(53) turns off the Italic character set and leaves everything else untouched. To see how the specific cancelling code for Italic Mode works, change the Reset Code in line 30 above to an ESCape CHR\$(53):

```
30 LPRINT CHR$(27)CHR$(53);  
40 LPRINT "BACK TO ROMAN WITH ITALIC OFF"
```

*ITALIC CHARACTER SET*  
**BACK 'TO ROMAN WITH ITALIC OFF**

Notice that CHR\$(53) turned Italic off and the semicolon at the end of line 30 eliminated the blank line between the two lines of text.

### **DELete and CANcel**

But suppose you don't want that much power. Suppose you only want to erase text in the print buffer without affecting any print modes. Two codes do this: DELete and CANcel. DELete, which is CHR\$(127), removes the latest text character from the buffer without affecting control codes. CANcel, which is CHR\$(24), is a slightly more powerful code. It removes all the text currently in the buffer, but it also does not affect the control codes.

These codes are seldom used, but they can be helpful if your system sends unwanted characters at **the** beginning of a program listing or a program run. You can then use one or more DELete or CANcel codes at the start of your program to clear out these characters.

## **Alternate Formats for ESCape Sequences**

Activating each of the many FX features with a sequence that consists of the ESCape code plus another character-string command can be cumbersome to use and difficult to remember. Fortunately, there are techniques for shortening the format.

The simplest method is to shorten the character-string command that follows the ESCape code. Instead of using CHR\$ and a number in parentheses, you can use-inside quotation marks-the ASCII character that corresponds to the number. For example, you have already seen that you can send the Reset Code with CHR\$(27)CHR\$(64). Because the @ symbol is the ASCII equivalent of 64, this command can also be typed in as CHR\$(27) " @ " .

We use this shorter format whenever possible. To see it in your current program, change lines 10 and 30. The ASCII symbol for the 52

of line 10 is the number 4, and the symbol for the 53 of line 30 is the number 5, so enter the following:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27) "4"  
30 LPRINT CHR$(27) "5";
```

Now use RUN to make sure that both ESCape sequences work as before.

You can also shorten your programs by storing the ESCape code in a character string. If you enter A\$=CHR\$(27) in an early line of a program, you can simply enter A\$ each time you want the ESCape code. For example, the following lines produce **the same** results as the previous ones:

```
5 A$=CHR$(27)  
10 LPRINT A$"4"  
30 LPRINT A$"5";
```

This technique can help if you use the ESCape code frequently.

If you use a certain ESCape sequence often in a program, you can store it in a character string as shown in this example:

```
5 B$=CHR$(27)+"&"  
10 LPRINT B$
```

Note that in this case you must use a plus sign between the elements of the ESCape sequence.

## Summary

You use CHR\$ to send numeric codes from BASIC, and you use CHR\$(27), the ESCape code, to earmark the printing or action to occur on **the** FX printer. You turn on **an** FX mode by using **the** ESCape code and adding to it either the character-string command and an appropriate FX control code or else the ASCII equivalent of the **control** code enclosed by quotation marks.

Nearly all printer modes stay active until they are turned off (we cover the exceptions later). You can turn off one printer mode or set of modes by shutting the printer off or by sending the Reset Code, either of which resets the FX to its default modes. In addition, each mode **has** its own cancelling code that turns off only that particular mode.

You can delete all the text characters in the FX's buffer by using the CANCEL code or the latest text character by using the DELETE code. Neither affects the control codes.

See the Preface for a list of the conventions used in this manual, Appendix A for a table of the ASCII codes, and Appendixes B and C for tables of the control codes. Appendix F offers programming solutions to interfacing problems, while Appendix E lists the defaults and shows the DIP switch settings. See also the Quick Reference Card.

Here are the DIP switches that we mentioned in this chapter:

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| Switch 2-2 | Controls the beeper  |
| Switch 2-4 | Controls the number of vertical lines that the printer spaces at the end of a print line |

Here are the codes that we have covered in this chapter, listed in the order of their appearance:

- |                |  |
|----------------|--|
| CHR\$(7)       | Causes a beep  |
| CHR\$(27)      | Prepares the printer to accept other control codes (Escape code) |
| CHR\$(27)“4”   | Turns Italic Mode ON   |
| CHR\$(27) “@ ” | Resets the printer to its defaults (Reset Code)                  |
| CHR\$(27)“5”   | Turns Italic Mode OFF  |
| CHR\$(127)     | DEletes the latest text character in the print buffer            |
| CHR\$(24)      | CANcels all text in the print buffer                             |

# Chapter 3

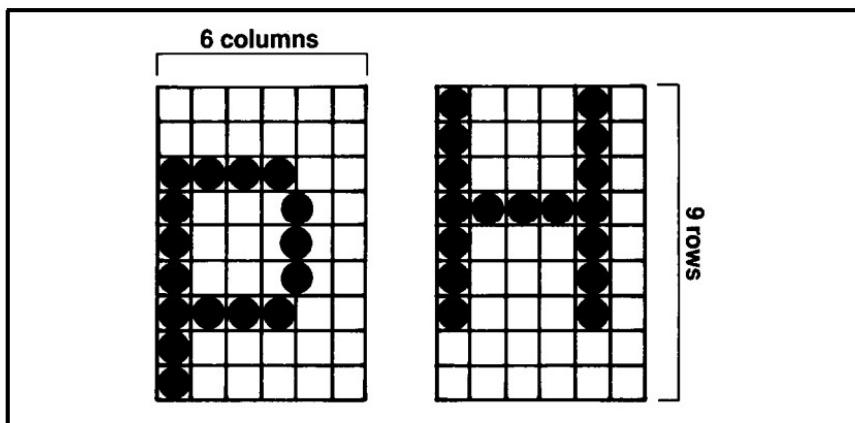
## Print Pitches

One of the big advantages an FX printer has over a daisy-wheel printer or a typewriter is the ability it gives you to choose from a variety of widths, or pitches, for your characters. To use this feature well, it's important to understand just how an FX prints. The technique used by an FX printer is called dot-matrix printing.

### Dot-Matrix Printing

A dot matrix is a grid or graph that someone who designs a character set for a dot matrix printer uses. The dot-matrix designs for the characters, which may be letters of the alphabet, numbers, or symbols, are stored in the printer's read-only memory (ROM).

The FX's dot matrix is nine rows of dots high and six columns of dots wide. Look at any letter **on** your printout—it's made up of a series of dots. And, as you can see in Appendix A, every letter fits inside this six by nine grid.

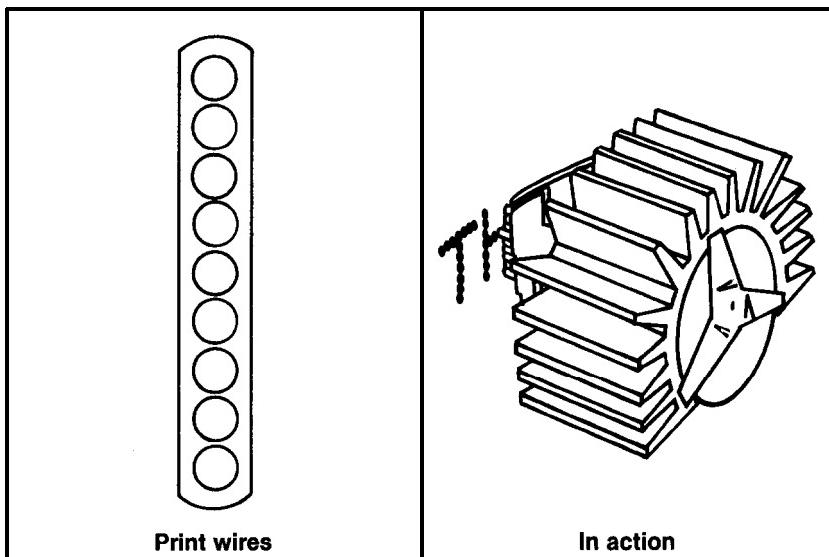


*Figure 3-1. Dot-matrix characters*

Figure 3-1 shows one each of lower- and uppercase letters. The p gives an example of the way a few lowercase letters use the bottom two rows of the matrix. All numbers, uppercase letters, and most symbols are formed within the top seven rows of the matrix.

## Main columns

The construction of the print head restricts the maximum height of any character to nine dots. As shown in Figure 3-2, the print head uses a vertical column of nine pins (actually, wires). Because there is only one column of pins, the head must move sideways sequentially to each of the different column positions of the matrix, then fire the appropriate pins. Electrical impulses cause the FX to fire pins at the paper. As a pin is fired, it presses against the ribbon to produce one dot of the matrix. At each position, the printer fires only the pins that are necessary to print the current column of the character.

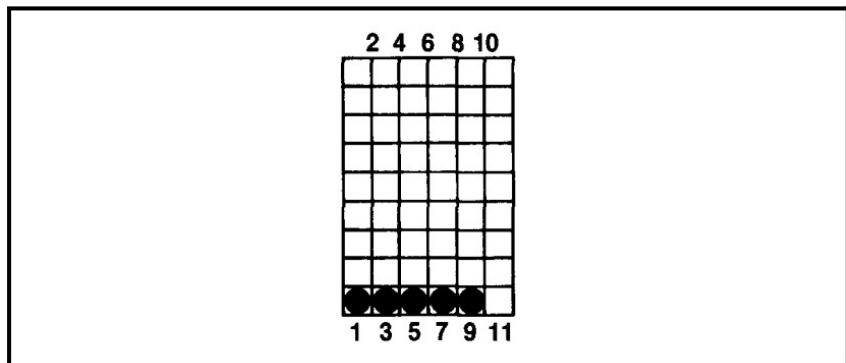


*Figure 3-2. The print head*

To print a capital H as in Figure 3-2, the print head fires pins 1 through 7 in column 1; pin 4 in columns 2, 3, and 4; and pins 1 through 7 again in column 5.

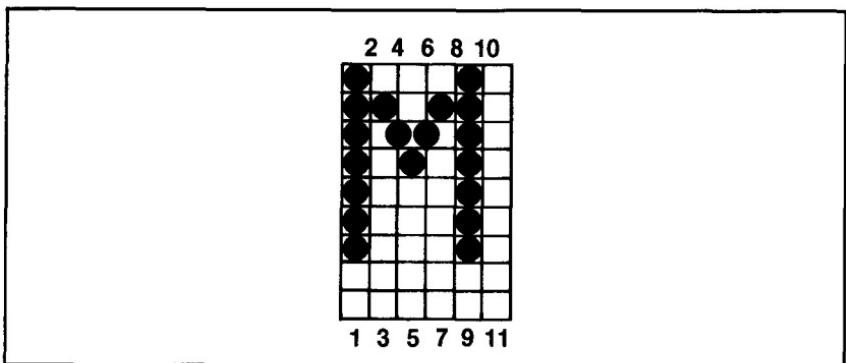
## Intermediate positions

FX characters are designed to be five or fewer columns wide. Leaving the sixth column blank allows for space between letters. Figure 3-3 shows the 6 main columns, numbered 1, 3, 5, etc.



*Figure 3-3. Main columns*

Because the use of 5 dots does not give quite enough detail for the highest quality characters, an FX prints some dots half way between the main columns in the 6-dot-wide matrix. This enhancement results in a matrix grid that is actually 11 dots wide-6 main columns with 5 intermediate columns. You can count the 11 positions on the grid shown as Figure 3-4.



*Figure 34. Intermediate positions*

The dots printed in intermediate column positions would overlap with those in the main columns if they were printed in the same row.

If you look through Appendix A, you'll notice that none of the FX's characters use dots in consecutive main and intermediate columns in the same row. There is a reason for this: the printer's speed. The FX recalls a character's dot-matrix pattern from ROM and prints it in 1/160th of a second. At that speed, the print head is simply moving too fast to pull the pins back and forth in time to print an overlapping dot. This fact is critical when you design characters, as you will see in Chapter 15.

## Modes for Pitches

Several of the FX printer's modes produce characters in different widths, or pitches. You may recognize two of these pitches as standard character widths used on typewriters; a third produces a narrower character. Each of these three is covered in one of the subsections below, followed by a discussion of how the FX assigns priorities to its print modes. We discuss other pitch modes later.

## Pica and Elite Modes

At start-up the FX prints 10 characters per inch (cpi). This is the same pitch as that of a typewriter's Pica character set. The FX can also print characters in an Elite pitch (12 cpi). When you print in Pica on the FX-80, you can get up to 80 characters on a line; changing to Elite Mode gives you 96. When you print in Pica on the FX-100, you get up to 136 characters per line; Elite Mode gives you 163.

Changing the print pitch between Pica and Elite does not change the number of **columns** in each character, nor does it change the **pattern** used to create each character. It simply moves the columns closer together or farther apart to change the width of each character. To see how this works, compare the Pica and Elite letters shown in Figure 3-5. Since the columns used to print Elite characters are packed more closely than those for Pica, more of them fit on one line of print. Notice that Elite pitch compresses spaces as well as characters.

Elite Mode (which produces Elite pitch) is set with an ESCape "M". Try it in this program:

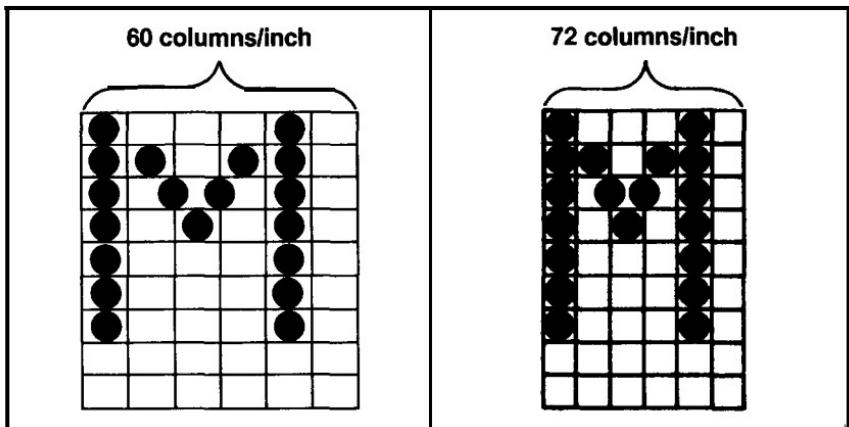


Figure 3-5. Pica and Elite letters

```

30 LPRINT CHR$(27)"P";
40 LPRINT "P P P P P P P P P P" PICA PITCH THE NORMAL PRINT
      WIDTH"

```

When you RUN it, you should get:

COMPARE ELITE PITCH WITH THE PICA BELOW  
 PICA PITCH IS THE NORMAL PRINT WIDTH

**Figure 3-6. Pitch comparison**

The 10 blank spaces in line 20 above print as 10 Elite spaces; the 10 corresponding spaces in line 40 print as Pica spaces. This means, as you can see in Figure 3-6, that the different width modes affect spaces as well as characters. The modes also affect tabs, which we will discuss in Chapter 9.

The ESCape "P" in line 30 turns Elite Mode off and returns the printer to Pica pitch. Notice that, because Pica is the factory-set default, it comes on whenever you turn the printer on (unless you've changed the pitch default by changing a DIP switch).

### Compressed Mode

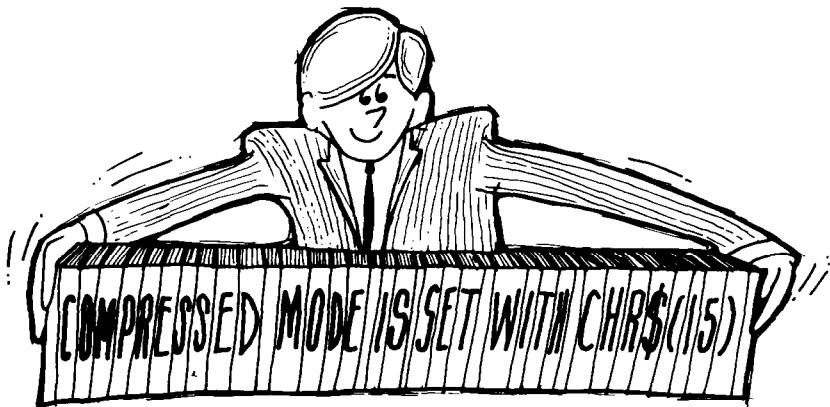
To see a third handy print pitch that is available on FX printers, replace your current program with this one:

NEW

```
20 LPRINT CHR$(15)"COMPRESSED MODE IS SET WITH  
CHR$(15)"  
30 LPRINT "IT WILL STAY ON UNTIL YOU CANCEL IT"  
40 LPRINT CHR$(18)"PICA AGAIN"
```

COMPRESSED MODE IS SET WITH CHR\$(15)  
IT WILL STAY ON UNTIL YOU CANCEL IT  
PICA AGAIN

Notice that we had you use only CHR\$(15) to turn Compressed Mode on—that is, we didn't have you type in an ESCape code first. If you prefer consistency to brevity, you may add one and use ESCape CHR\$(15) to get the same effect.



As do most other print modes on FX printers, Compressed stays on until you turn it off. And there is a specific code that turns Compressed Mode off—CHR\$(18). The Reset Code would work just as well, but remember that it also resets all other current printer modes to the defaults. The FX gives you a choice of resetting codes one at a time or all at once.

At 17.16 characters per inch, Compressed Mode is the narrowest character pitch available on FX printers. FX-80 users can fit 132 Compressed characters into each line (up to 137 by changing the right margin setting; see Chapter 9). FX-100 users can get 233 Compressed characters per print line. Compressed Mode is especially useful for printing spreadsheets or reports that require several columns of information.

If you find yourself using this pitch more often than not, you can change the default pitch from Pica to Compressed Mode by setting

DIP switch 1-1 on. This adjustment will make the printer reset to Compressed Mode, after which you can switch to other modes as needed. You could get Pica Mode with control codes, for instance, by using the Compressed shut-off code: CHR\$(18). Then you could return to Compressed with either of the usual commands-CHR\$(15) or ESCape" @ "-or by turning the printer off and back on.

## Mode priorities

These first three pitches-Pica (10 cpi), Elite (12 cpi), and Compressed (17.16 cpi)-are mutually exclusive. That is, only one can be in use at a given time. When a program activates conflicting modes, one of them will take precedence. In the case of Elite, Compressed, and Pica Modes, for example, Elite has the highest priority. To check this, try RUNning this line in your current program. In this example and many others throughout the manual we use the format that combines the command with the print string. The printer will interpret the letter M as part of the command and will not print it. This format is further explained in the preface.

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"MELITE PITCH"
```

```
ELITE PITCH  
COMPRESSED MODE IS SET WITH CHR$(15)  
IT WILL STAY ON UNTIL YOU CANCEL IT  
PICA AGAIN
```

This time the printer doesn't make it to Compressed Mode. Your entire printout is in Elite pitch even though Compressed Mode is turned on in line 20. Does that mean the printer ignores the CHR\$(15) when it is in Elite Mode? Let's find out. Change line 30 to read:

```
30 LPRINT CHR$(27)"PCANCEL ELITE TO SEE COMPRESSED"
```

```
ELITE PITCH  
COMPRESSED MODE IS SET WITH CHR$(15)  
CANCEL ELITE TO SEE COMPRESSED  
PICA AGAIN
```

ESCAPE "P" did cancel Elite Mode, which caused line 30's text to print in Compressed. So the printer did recognize the command for Compressed Mode-CHR\$(15)--in line 20, but its program masked that command as long as Elite was in effect.

Don't take this lesson lightly-it is a good example of how print modes interact on FX printers.

## Pitch Mode Combinations

The previous three modes can't be mixed, but the next mode can be used in combination with any one of them. And you can add it to a printout for either of two durations, for one print line or for a longer passage.

### ExpandedMode

Expanded Mode doubles the width of the current pitch mode. Since it can be combined with all previous pitches, Expanded Mode doubles the number of available print pitches to six.



You can turn on the Expanded print feature for either of two durations. If you activate it with CHR\$(14), it turns off after each print line. If you want Expanded Mode to stay on line after line (continuously), you activate it with ESCape "W" followed by CHR\$(l).

Also notice that ESCape "W"CHR\$(l) is turned off with ESCape "W"CHR(0). CHR\$(14), on the other hand, can be turned off either with CHR\$(20) or with ESCape "W"CHR\$(O).

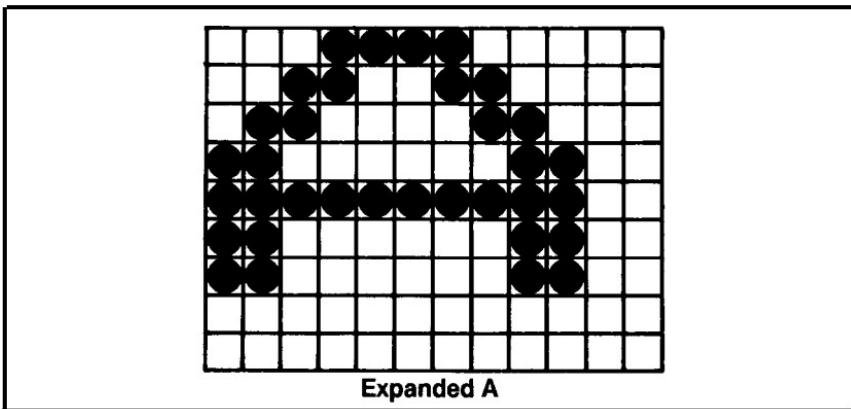
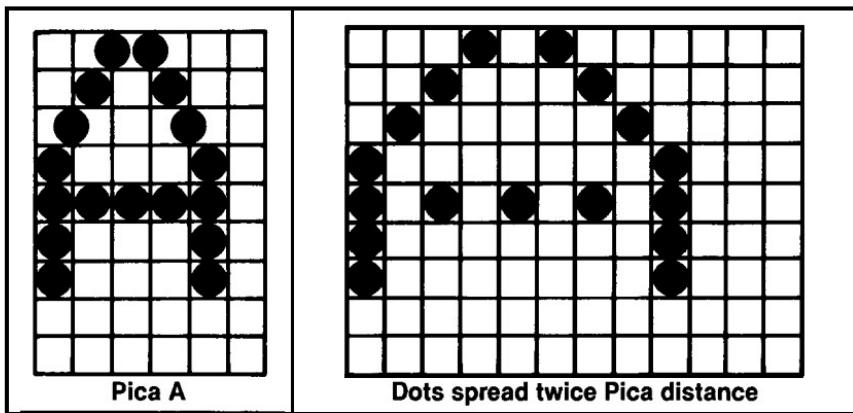
To see Expanded characters, type in:

```
NEW
10 LPRINT CHR$(14)"EXPANDED PRINT"
20 LPRINT "TURNS OFF AFTER EACH LINE WITH CHR$(14)"
30 LPRINT CHR$(27)"W"CHR$(1)"EXPANDED PRINT STAYS
ON"
```

```
40 LPRINT "CONTINUOUSLY WITH ESCAPE W"
50 LPRINT CHR$(27)"W"CHR$(0)
```

**EXPANDED PRINT**  
TURNS OFF AFTER EACH LINE WITH CHR\$(14)  
**EXPANDED PRINT STAYS ON**  
**CONTINUOUSLY WITH ESCAPE W**

The printer extends the dot matrix by spreading the dots horizontally to twice their normal distances apart, and then it adds a duplicate of each dot to the next main dot column (see Figure 3-7).



**Figure 3-7. Pica and Expanded letters**

Those of you who like compact program lines and those of you whose computer systems have difficulty sending a CHR\$(0) or

CHR\$(1) can use an alternative form for this pair. For continuous Expanded, and for the other modes which use CHR\$(1) and CHR\$(0) as a toggle switch, you can use an abbreviation. Here, for example, you can use:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)"W"CHR$(1)
```

or you can use:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)"W1"
```

for the same result.

Expanded Mode works equally well with any of the three basic pitches. Type and RUN this program:

```
NEW  
10 LPRINT "YOU CAN PRINT EXPANDED:  
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"W1PICA"  
30 LPRINT CHR$(15)"COMPRESSED"  
40 LPRINT CHR$(27)"MAND ELITE"  
50 LPRINT CHR$(27)"@CHARACTERS"
```

```
Y O U C A N P R I N T E X P A N D E D :  
P I C A  
C O M P R E S S E D  
A N D E L I T E  
C H A R A C T E R S
```

Most of the FX modes stay on continuously, and so your program must turn off each mode when you are finished with it. We tell you about the few exceptions to this rule-such as the CHR\$(14) version of Expanded-as they come up.

## Multiple print pitches on one line

Suppose that you want to emphasize just one word within a line by printing it in a different pitch. The following program shows how it can be done:

```
10 LPRINT "YOU CAN MIX: ¶"  
20 LPRINT "PICA¶"  
30 LPRINT CHR$(14)"EXPANDED,"  
40 LPRINT CHR$(20)CHR$(15)" ¶ COMPRESSED":  
50 LPRINT CHR$(14)" ¶ EXPANDED,";  
60 LPRINT CHR$(27)"M AND ELITE ¶";  
70 LPRINT CHR$(14)"EXPANDED"  
80 LPRINT CHR$(27)"@CHARACTERS ON THE SAME LINE"
```

Y O U C A N M I X : P I C A E X P A N D E D ,  
C O M P R E S S E D E X P A N D E D , A N D E L I T E E X P A N D E D  
C H A R A C T E R S O N T H E S A M E L I N E .

By deleting the semicolon at the end of line 10 and adding a semicolon to the end of line 30, you can mix all six print pitches on a single print line.

In program lines 30 to 70, CHR\$(14) and CHR\$(20) move the printer in and out of Expanded Mode.

This program turns Compressed Mode on in line 40, and Compressed stays on until the Reset Code turns it off in line 80. It gets replaced (masked) in line 60 when the program turns on Elite Mode, which has a higher priority.

Since doubling the width of the three standard pitches adds more dots to the matrix of each character, doubling gives you a darker print. There are other ways you can get darker print, plus many other ways you can change the looks of the type, and we discuss these techniques in the next three chapters.

## Summary

The FX uses a dot matrix to plot the characters it prints. Vertically, the matrix consists of 6 main and 5 intermediate columns. Horizontally, the matrix consists of 9 rows. Appendix A shows how each of the FX's characters fits into this matrix.

Using these potential positions, the print head is capable of printing in a large variety of modes. In this chapter we introduced three sets of commands that add five pitches (widths) to the factory-set default, Pica. You can change the default to Compressed by changing DIP switch 1-1.

Table 3-1 shows six pitch modes, their densities in characters per inch, and the commands you use to turn them on. In this table, we assume that you are using Pica as the default. If you have changed to Compressed, you activate Pica with CHR\$(18).

**Table 3-1. Summary of print pitches**

<b>Print sample</b>	<b>CPI</b>	<b>Entry code</b>
<b>← 1 inch →</b>		
PICA PRINT	10.00	Default mode (Roman Pica)
ELITE PRINT	12.00	CHR\$(27)"M"
COMPRESSED PRINT	17.16	CHR\$(15)
<b>EXPANDED PICA PRINT</b>	5.00	CHR\$(27)"W1" or CHR\$(14)
<b>EXPANDED ELITE PRINT</b>	6.00	CHR\$(27)"W1" CHR\$(27)"M"
<b>EXPANDED COMPRESSED PRINT</b>	8.58	CHR\$(27)"W1"CHR\$(15)
<b>← 1 inch →</b>		

Here is the DIP switch that we mentioned in this chapter:

Switch 1-1                      Allows you to change the pitch default from Pica to Compressed

Here is a list of the commands that we introduced in this chapter, listed in the order of their appearance:

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| CHRS(27) "M" | Turns Elite Mode ON  |
| CHRS(27) "P" | Turns Elite OFF  |
| CHR\$(15)    | Turns Compressed Mode ON   |
| CHR\$18)     | Turns Compressed (set either by software or by hardware) OFF     |
| CHR\$(14)    | Turns Expanded Mode (1-line) ON                                  |
| CHR\$(20)    | Turns Expanded (1-line) OFF                                      |
| CHRS(27)"W1" | Turns Expanded Mode (continuous version) ON                      |
| CHRS(27)"W0" | Turns Expanded (either the 1-line or the continuous version) OFF |

# **Chapter 4**

## **Print Quality**

In the last chapter you learned how to change the width of the printed characters to achieve six different print ***pitches***. The FX printer also offers several modes that improve print ***quality*** without affecting pitch. The three new modes that we discuss in this chapter are Double-Strike, Emphasized, and Proportional. After we cover these modes separately, we discuss combining them with pitch modes.

### **Bold Modes**

Each of the modes we discuss here produces darker characters than do the Single-Strike modes we discussed in Chapter 3, and each gets its bold effect by printing overlapping dots. Because Proportional Mode includes Emphasized, it also produces bold characters. The difference between Double-Strike and Emphasized Modes lies in the direction the print head moves before it prints the overlapping dots.

### **Double-Strike Mode**

The Double-Strike Mode prints each line twice. You turn Double-Strike on with ESCape "G". It stays on until you turn it off with ESCape "H". To see its effect, try this:

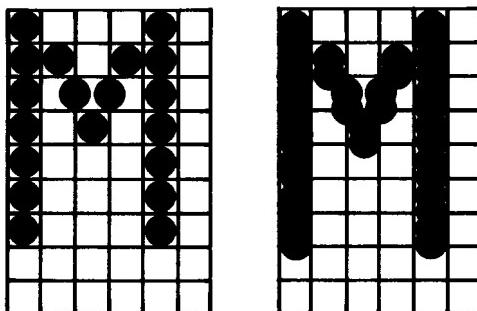
```
NEW  
18 LPRINT CHR$(27)"GDOUBLE-STRIKE PRINT IS DARKER";  
29 LPRINT CHR$(27)"H THAN SINGLE-STRIKE"
```

and RUN it:

```
DOUBLE-STRIKE PRINT IS DARKER THAN SINGLE-STRIKE
```

In this mode the individual dots are less noticeable, and the characters are more fully formed than in Single-Strike.

The way Double-Strike gets this result is rather clever: the FX prints each character in the regular fashion until it reaches either the end of the line or the point at which you have Double-Strike turn off. Then the FX shifts the paper up slightly and prints the Double-Strike passage again. This means that every dot in each row of the character gets a shadow (see Figure 4-1). Double-Strike Mode fills in some of the more visible gaps between the dots of a character. The end result is better looking print.



**Figure 4-1. Single-Strike and Double-Strike letters**

Differences between Double-Strike and Single-Strike printing don't stop with the quality of print. Since each passage prints twice, the throughput of the Double-Strike Mode is less than that of Single-Strike. It's the old trade-off between speed and print quality. With a normal print speed of 160 characters per second (cps), the FX still moves along pretty quickly in the Double-Strike Mode.

### **Emphasized Mode**

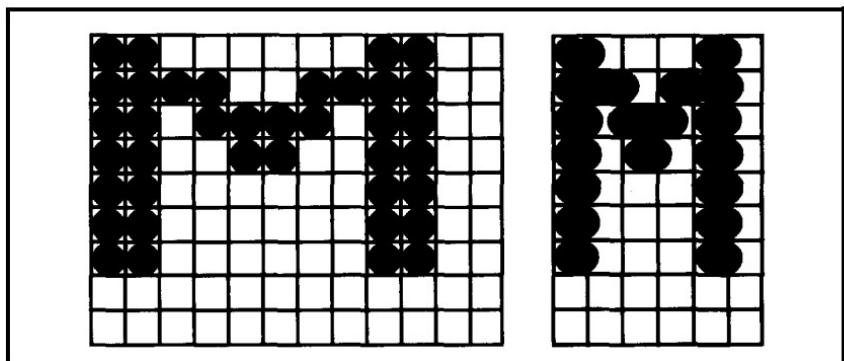
There is yet another way you can increase the boldness of your printed characters. ESCape "E" produces what we call Emphasized print. As in Double-Strike, each character gets two sets of dots. In Emphasized, however, the print head does not make two passes and does not move down the page. Instead, it slows down so that it can print overlapping dots, and prints each dot twice, the second time slightly to the right of the first, as illustrated in Figure 4-2.

To see Emphasized, add these lines to your program:

```
30 LPRINT CHR$(27) "EEMPHASIZED ADDS A TOUCH OF  
CLASS"  
60 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
```

**DOUBLE-STRIKE PRINT IS DARKER THAN SINGLE-STRIKE  
EMPHASIZED ADDS A TOUCH OF CLASS**

That's right, Emphasized is very similar to Expanded print, except that Expanded Mode prints a duplicate set of dots a full (rather than a half) column to the right of the initial set. Figure 4-2 shows Expanded and Emphasized characters.



*Figure 4-2. Expanded and Emphasized letters*

Although the print head slows to half normal speed (i.e., 80 cps) in Emphasized Mode, the increase in print quality is well worth it. If you like Emphasized so well that you want to use it for most of your printouts, you can set it as a default with DIP switch 1-5. This adjustment will make the printer automatically reset to Emphasized Mode, after which you can switch to other modes as needed.

Whether you turn Emphasized on with ESCape "E" or by DIP switch, you can turn it off with ESCape "F".

Emphasized Mode is always a variation of Pica; it can never be combined with either the Elite or the Compressed Mode. It can, however, be added to Double-Strike. See this by adding:

**40 LPRINT CHR\$(27)"GCOMBINED THEY CAN'T BE BEAT"**

to your program.

**DOUBLE-STRIKE PRINT IS DARKER THAN SINGLE-STRIKE  
EMPHASIZED ADDS A TOUCH OF CLASS  
COMBINED THEY CAN'T BE BEAT**

Emphasized Mode (line 30) stays on until you shut it off. Double-Strike comes on (line 40) before Emphasized is turned off. You see the result above.

## Proportional Mode

Have you ever wondered why most computer printouts don't look as good as typeset books, even when you use bold characters? It's because most dot-matrix printers use a uniform width for each character (monospacing) whereas typesetting machines set the width for each character proportional to its size. That is, narrow characters like i and ! are printed without the excess space that would be used if they were printed in the same width as m and w.

Now the FX offers you a Proportional Mode on a dot-matrix printer. In this mode characters are printed with a uniform amount of blank space between them. ESCape "p1" turns on the Proportional Mode. If your computer system doesn't allow you to use lowercase letters, you may use a longer form instead: ESCape CHR\$(112) "1"

Here's an example of the difference between Monospaced and Proportional Modes. Enter:

```
NEW
18 LPRINT "!!!!!!!!!!!!!!";
20 LPRINT CHR$(27) "p1"
40 LPRINT "!!!!!!!!!!!!!!PROPORTIONAL ON"
60 LPRINT CHR$(27) "p0";
70 LPRINT "!!!!!!PROPORTIONAL OFF"
80 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
```

```
!!!!!!!
!!!!!!PROPORTIONAL ON
!!!!!!PROPORTIONAL OFF
```

Lines 10 and 40 print the same number of exclamation marks, but the characters from line 40 are packed more closely. Proportional Mode prints the characters in Emphasized and strips off all unused space between characters.

The shut-off command for Proportional print is either ESCape "p0" or ESCape CHR\$(112) "0". Either puts the printer back into the mode that it was in before it entered Proportional Mode. As an example, if the printer enters Proportional Mode from Compressed Mode, ESCape "p0" returns the printer to that mode.

Since all Proportional characters are Emphasized, it makes sense that Proportional characters, like Emphasized, can only be printed in Pica pitch, not Elite nor Compressed. In addition, Proportional Mode cannot be mixed with Double-Strike.

The cost of all this high-powered printing is the slower speed of printing and the wear and tear on the ribbon. Understandably, these dense modes shorten the life of a ribbon compared to Single-Strike printing. Used sparingly, however, they can give you increased capability for little increased cost.

## Mixing Modes

Much of the fun of owning an FX is trying out all the different mode combinations. In the process you'll find that some modes make magic together, while others cannot be mixed at all. Most important, you'll gain an insight into the way the print modes work, and you'll attain a higher level of control over your printer.

With the many modes available on the FX, there are enough mode combinations to suit just about any palate. It's impossible, however, for each print mode to get along with all others as well as Emphasized does with Double-Strike. For example, you cannot mix either Emphasized or its variation, Proportional, with Elite or Compressed pitches for a very good reason.

Emphasized characters already violate the rule that two overlapping dots cannot be printed in the same row. Since the FX prints Emphasized in Pica Mode at half normal speed, it can make an exception. But the dots in Elite and Compressed characters are already so closely packed that printing them in Emphasized print as well is not possible, even at the slower speed. The print head simply cannot fire and retract the pins fast enough.

So what does the printer do when it receives a request for two conflicting modes? Ignore one of them, take a vacation, or beep loudly? The answer is: none of the above. It turns both modes on internally, but-based on a factory-set priority list-selects only one of them for printing text.

As you found out in Chapter 3 when you cancelled Elite to see Compressed print, the FX remembers that a mode is on even though that doesn't affect the current print line. Just to produce a little more printout evidence, change your program to turn on Double-Strike at the same time as Proportional. Then, when you turn Proportional off,

the printer will prove that Double-Strike has been turned on all the time.

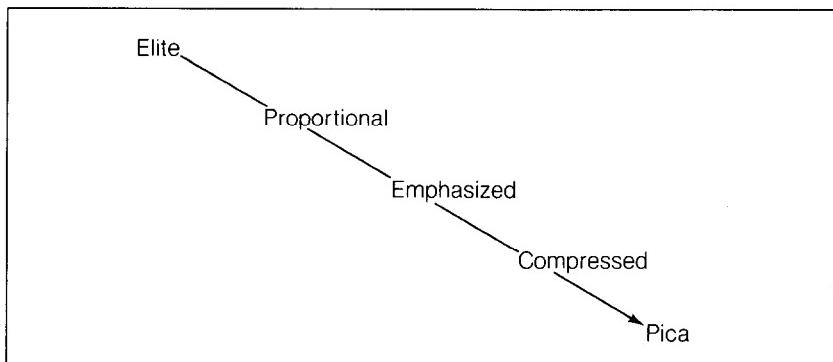
Add lines 30 and 50, and make some changes to line 70:

```
30 LPRINT CHR$(27)"G";  
50 LPRINT "WHEN PROPORTIONAL GOES"  
70 LPRINT "!!!!!!OFF, DOUBLE-STRIKE CAN COME  
ON"
```

```
!!!!!!  
!!!!!!PROPORTIONAL ON  
WHEN PROPORTIONAL GOES  
!!!!!!OFF, DOUBLE-STRIKE CAN COME
```

Even though Proportional Mode will not permit Double-Strike to affect lines 40 and **50** (since Proportional Mode has priority), Double-Strike does take hold as soon as Proportional is shut off.

Figure 4-3 shows the priorities for the modes we've covered so far.



Note: Each mode takes precedence over the modes beneath it.

**Figure 4-3. Mode priorities**

Not all mode combinations create conflicts. You've already seen how well Emphasized and Double-Strike combine. In the next chapter we show you more modes to mix with these.

## Summary

Double-Strike, Emphasized, and Proportional Modes can be used to produce bold characters. Proportional, which prints in Empha-

sized, strips excess space from between characters. Double-Strike can be combined with all other modes except Proportional, whereas Emphasized, and thus Proportional, cannot be combined with either Elite or Compressed.

Mode combinations are governed by the FX's priority list. This list determines which mode gets printed when two or more conflicting modes are active at the same time.

Table 4-1 shows the modes we have covered so far.

**Table 4-1. Summary of modes**

Type of mode	Mode name
Typeface	Roman (default) Italic
Pitch	Pica (default) Elite Compressed Expanded
Weight	Single-Strike (default) Double-Strike Emphasized
Spacing	Monospaced (default) Proportional

Note: Pitch and weight together make up print density. The defaults are those set at the factory. By changing DIP switches, you can change the pitch default from Pica to Compressed and the weight default from Single-Strike to Emphasized.

Here is the DIP switch that we mentioned in this chapter:

Switch 1-5                         Allows you to change the weight default from Single-Strike to Emphasized

Here are the commands that we introduced in this chapter:

CHR\$(27) "G"                         Turns Double-Strike Mode ON. Double-Strike prints in Half-Speed

CHR\$(27) "H"                             Turns Double-Strike OFF

CHR\$(27) "E"                             Turns Emphasized Mode ON. Emphasized prints in Half-Speed

CHR\$(27) "F"                             Turns Emphasized OFF

CHR\$(27) "p1" or CHR\$(27) CHR\$(112)"l"  
   Turns Proportional Mode ON. Proportional prints in Emphasized and thus Half-Speed.

CHR\$(27) "p0" or CHR\$(27) CHR\$(112)"O"  
   Turns Proportional OFF



# **Chapter 5**

## **Dress-Up Modes and Master Select**

In the first three subsections of this chapter, we cover four more print modes: Underline; two Script Modes-Superscript and Subscript; and Italic. Each of these modes allows you to add a particular finishing touch to your printouts. After we show how you can quickly select 16 combinations of pitch and weight by using the Master Select feature, we demonstrate combining the combinations.

### **Four Modes**

These four modes give you capabilities that are unusual for dot-matrix printing: an underline of any character or blank space, true Super- and Subscript characters, and an Italic Mode that any computer system can select without software adjustments.

#### **Underline Mode**

In the old days, dot-matrix printers could not underline words. Even in the not-so-old days, printer users like you had to use all kinds of tricks to underline words. The technique usually involved using either the hyphen (-) or underscore (\_), along with either a change of line spacing or the use of backspace. When it worked, the right words did get underlined, but those methods were tedious and time consuming.

Those days are now gone, thanks to the FX. It has a built-in Underline Mode that makes underlining very easy. You can toggle the control code for Underline, ESCape “-“, on and off just as you toggle the code for Expanded Mode. To turn Underline on, you use:

`CHR$(27)" - "CHR$(1) or      CHR$(27)" -1"`

You can turn Underline Mode off with:

```
CHR$(27)" - "CHR$(0) or     CHR$(27)" - 0"
```

Enter and RUN this program to see what FX underlining looks like:

```
NEW
```

```
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)" - 1UNDERLINING IS SIMPLE";  
40 LPRINT CHR$(27)" - 0 TO TURN ON/OFF"
```

```
UNDERLINING IS SIMPLE TO TURN ON/OFF
```

You can underline virtually anything you want—even a series of blank spaces. Try adding this line, typing in the spaces where we have used **b** characters:

```
30 LPRINT "b b b b b b";
```

```
UNDERLINING IS SIMPLE TO TURN ON/OFF
```

Being able to underline a blank space really helps when you want to make a form that has lines to be filled in later with signatures or data. The FX Underline Mode can even underline leading spaces with BASIC TABS—although it doesn't work with the FX's internal tabs that are set with ESCape "D" (see Chapter 9).

Underline Mode does not use the FX's underline character. Since the underline character is itself only five dots wide, it would not print in the spaces that separate the text characters. See this by printing a row of underline characters above the text in the current program:

```
10 FOR X=1 TO 42: LPRINT CHR$(95);: NEXT X: LPRINT
```

```
UNDERLINING IS SIMPLE TO TURN ON/OFF
```

When the FX is in Underline Mode, it is simply using the ninth pin to underscore the entire passage.

How far under a character its underline appears depends on the model of FX that is printing. The FX-100 prints a character and its underline at the same time, and the underline occurs on the ninth row of the nine-row character matrix. This means that the underline prints over the bottom row of the descender for a few lowercase letters, such as y and g.

The FX-80, on the other hand, can perform a reverse line feed, and it uses this capability to place the underline one row lower than any text dot. To do this, the FX-80 prints the text to be underlined, moves the print head down the paper one row's worth to print the underline, then moves the print head back up to the original text line.

To see which method your printer uses, delete line 10 and replace line 30:

```
30 FOR X=1 TO 5: LPRINT CHR$(103);: NEXT X
```

### UNDERLINING IS SIMPLEggggg TO TURN ON/OFF

On the FX-80, the underlining does occur below the descenders of the gs.

### Script Modes: Super and Sub

Print pitches, such as Pica, Elite, and Compressed, affect the width of characters: both Elite and Compressed Modes may be seen as squeezing Pica characters **horizontally**. FX printers can also squeeze a character vertically-to about half its normal height. These short characters are called Script characters (not to be confused with calligraphic manuscript lettering). Because the Script characters are so short, they can be placed high or low on the line; thus you can use them for either SUPERscripts or SUBscripts.

This command turns Superscripting on:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)"S0"
```

This one turns Subscripting on:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)"S1"
```

Try this program to see both kinds of Script characters:

```
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"S0SUPER";  
30 LPRINT CHR$(27)"TSCRIPT AND";  
40 LPRINT CHR$(27)"S1 SUB";  
50 LPRINT CHR$(27)"TSCRIPT"  
60 LPRINT "CAN EVEN GO ON THE SAME LINE"
```

SUPER<sub>SCRIPT</sub> AND <sub>SUB</sub>SCRIPT  
CAN EVEN GO ON THE SAME LINE

Notice that ESCape "T" turns either kind of Script Mode off and also that both versions of Script Mode are automatically printed in Double-Strike. Since Double-Strike prints at half speed, so do the Script Modes. And since Double-Strike can't mix with Proportional, neither can either type of Script.

If you are using the FX-100 and you switch in and out of Double-Strike Mode several times in the same line, you will see that the print line slopes slightly to the right. This happens because Script prints in Double-Strike, for which FX printers use two passes. After one pass to print the characters on the current print line, the print head moves down the page one-third of a dot to print the second set of dots.

The FX-80 can use reverse feed to return to the original print line, but the FX-100 cannot. This does not make much difference when you use Double-Strike infrequently. If you are using an FX-100, you can add Underline Mode to your program to see exactly where the jog comes:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"-1"
```

SUPERSCRIPT AND SUBSCRIPT  
CAN EVEN GO ON THE SAME LINE

We mention this now because it is with Script characters that you are most likely to move in and out of Double-Strike several times on one line. If you do that on an FX-100, you'll get a line that declines.

If Double-Strike was the current mode before the printer entered Script Mode, the printer exits from Script to Double-Strike. If not, the printer returns to Single-Strike.

## **Italic Mode**

This is the last print mode that we introduce in this chapter. Italic characters are printed in a completely different typeface than are the more usual Roman characters. Appendix A shows the dot-matrix patterns used to define both Roman and Italic characters, along with their corresponding ASCII numbers. As you saw in Chapter 2, the Italic characters' numbering begins in the top half of the ASCII range (at 160, to be exact). And some computer systems won't let the numbers of the top half through to the printer.

Whether your computer system is one of these or not, with ESCape "4" you can print Italic **characters**. Prove it by adding these lines to your program:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27) "4"  
70 LPRINT CHR$(27)"@"
```

*SUPERSCRIPT AND <sub>sub</sub>SCRIPT  
CAN EVEN GO ON THE SAME LINE*

When you want to turn off only the Italic Mode, you use ESCape "5" (instead of line 70's Reset Code) in your program.

## More Mode Combinations

With all the handsome print types we've covered up to this point, you're probably wondering how many different print combinations are waiting in your FX. Well, hang onto your hat. By combining the various print modes, the FX can print text in **128** type styles.

Instead of counting these one by one, we'll begin by describing a special FX feature, the Master Select, which lets you choose any one of **16** popular mode combinations more simply than by calling up each mode separately. Then we'll demonstrate mixing Master Select choices with the modes of this chapter.

### Master Select

For Master Select you use the code sequence of ESCape '!' followed by CHR\$ and a number in parentheses. With Master Select you can quickly produce any possible combination of the following:

- Single-Strike
- Pica
- Elite
- Compressed
- Emphasized
- Double-Strike
- Expanded

These are the modes for pitch and weight. Master Select will accept any number between 0 and **255**. Since there are only **16** unique combinations, however, we've devised a program (Figure 5-1) with which you can print out a handy reference chart (Figure 5-2) listing one set of Master Select numbers.

```

NEW
20 Y$(1)="SINGLE-STRIKE": Y$(2)="SNGL-STRIKE
    EMPHASIZED"
30 Y$(3)="DOUBLE-STRIKE": Y$(4)="DBL-STRIKE
    EMPHASIZED"
40 Z$(1)="PICA": Z$(2)="ELITE"
    Z$(3)="COMPRESSED"
50 FOR X=1 TO 2
60 FOR Y=1 TO 4
70 FOR Z=1 TO 3
80 READ N: IF N<0 THEN 130
90 LPRINT CHR$(27)!"CHR$(0);: IF N<10 THEN LPRINT
    " ";
95 ' OK to substitute CHR$(2) for CHR$(0)
100 LPRINT N; CHR$(27)!"CHR$(N);
110 LPRINT Y$(Y);: IF X=2 THEN LPRINT "EXPANDED"
120 LPRINT Z$(Z)
130 NEXT Z: NEXT Y: NEXT X
140 LPRINT CHR$(27)!"CHR$(0)
150 DATA 0,1,4,8,-1,-1,16,17,20,24,-1,-1
160 DATA 32,33,36,40,-1,-1,48,49,52,56,-1,-1

```

Figure 5-1. Master Select Program

If you want to see this in underlined Italic add the following line:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"-1"CHR$(27)"SO"CHR$(27)"4";
```

Now when you want to use Double-Strike Emphasized Expanded Pica, you do not have to type out the long sequence:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)"G"CHR$(27)"E"CHR$(27)"W1"
```

since you can get the same result by using:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)!"CHR$(56)
```

or even (after consulting the ASCII table for the equivalent of 56):

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)"!8"
```

Because this latter format is the ultimate in simplicity, we use it in Table 5-1 below. You can find the Master Select code for any valid combination of pitch and weight by reading across in the row for the pitch you have selected and down in the column for the weight you want. Where the two intersect you will find the ASCII symbol to use in the simplified format. For example, to combine Compressed with

*Figure 5-2. Master Select choices*

0	SINGLE-STRIKE PICA
1	SINGLE-STRIKE ELITE
4	SINGLE-STRIKE COMPRESSED
8	SNGL-STRIKE EMPHASIZED PICA
16	DOUBLE-STRIKE PICA
17	DOUBLE-STRIKE ELITE
20	DOUBLE-STRIKE COMPRESSED
24	<b>DBL-STRIKE EMPHASIZED PICA</b>
32	SINGLE-STRIKE EXPANDED PICA
33	SINGLE-STRIKE EXPANDED ELITE
36	SINGLE-STRIKE EXPANDED COMPRESSED
40	SNGL-STRIKE EMPHASIZED EXPANDED PICA
48	DOUBLE-STRIKE EXPANDED PICA
49	DOUBLE-STRIKE EXPANDED ELITE
52	DOUBLE-STRIKE EXPANDED COMPRESSED
56	<b>DBL-STRIKE EMPHASIZED EXPANDED PICA</b>

Double-Strike, use LPRINT CHR!\$(27)“!T”. N/A indicates that the two modes cannot be combined.

**Table 5-1. Master Select Quick Reference Chart**

PITCH	WEIGHT			
	Single Strike	Emphasized	Double Strike	Double Strike Emphasized
Pica	@	H	P	X
Elite	A	N/A	Q	N/A
Compressed	D	N/A	T	N/A
Expanded Pica	b	*	0	8
Expanded Elite	l	N/A	1	N/A
Expanded Compressed	\$	N/A	4	N/A

If you rely on Master Select to change print modes, you don't have to turn each mode off separately when you want to change to a different combination. When you select a new mix by Master Select, it takes care of all resetting. Because the Master Select also overrides the DIP switch settings, you use the same codes even if you have reset some of the DIP switches.

## Master Select combinations

At the beginning of this chapter we introduced you to four print modes. Figure 5-3 illustrates the 11 different ways these can be combined.

If you add the default Pica Mode, there are 12 different combinations. Four of these 12 combinations (the ones that don't involve Super- or Subscript) can be combined with any of the 16 Master Select modes. Four times 16 gives you 64 combinations. The other eight combinations that involve Super- and Subscript Modes can be combined with the eight Single-Strike Master Select modes. Eight times eight gives another 64 combinations. Add these to the first 64, and you get the total of 128 unique print modes that we mentioned previously.

To create a new combination that uses both Master Select and one or more of the dress-up modes, the simplest method is to choose a

1	-	<b>SUPERSCRIPT</b>
2	-	<b>SUBSCRIPT</b>
3	-	<b><i>ITALIC</i></b>
4	-	<b><u>UNDERLINE</u></b>
5	-	<b><u>SUPERSCRIPT ITALIC</u></b>
6	-	<b><u>SUPERSCRIPT UNDERLINE</u></b>
7	-	<b><u>SUBSCRIPT ITALIC</u></b>
8	-	<b><u>SUBSCRIPT UNDERLINE</u></b>
9	-	<b><u><i>ITALIC UNDERLINE</i></u></b>
10	-	<b><u><i>SUPERSCRIPT ITALIC UNDERLINE</i></u></b>
11	-	<b><u><i>SUBSCRIPT ITALIC UNDERLINE</i></u></b>

**Figure 5-3. Dress-up combinations**

**Master** Select base and then add the sequence(s) that you want to embellish it. Here is a program that does just that, several times.

```

NEW
18 N=4: GOSUB 70: LPRINT CHR$(27)"S1THE
   FX"CHR$(27)"T"
20 N=17: GOSUB 70: LPRINT CHR$(27)"-1PRINTERS"
30 N=8: GOSUB 70: LPRINT CHR$(27)"-@HAVE EVER"
40 N=49: GOSUB 79: LPRINT "EXPANDING"
50 N=56: GOSUB 70: LPRINT CHR$(27)"4POSSIBILITIES"
60 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
70 LPRINT CHR$(27) !"CHR$(N):: RETURN

```

THE FX  
PRINTERS  
 HAVE EVER  
**EXPANDING**  
**POSSIBILITIES**

Notice that we've stored the Master Select sequence as a subroutine in line 70 to save typing. As we've called up the subroutine and given it a new number, we've three times added the ESCape codes for Subscript (line 10), Underline (line 20), and Italic (line 50) Modes. The Reset in line 60 returns the printer to its defaults.

To aid you in quickly finding your way around in this forest of possibilities, we offer Table 5-2.

*Table 5-2. Print types*

## Summary

You select Script, Underline, and Italic Modes with ESCape codes. You can combine these modes with a Master Select combination of modes for pitch and weight to form 128 print styles.

Appendix A shows the dot matrixes for all characters in the Italic typeface.

Here are the commands that we introduced in this chapter.

CHR\$(27)“-1”	Turns Underline Mode ON
CHR\$(27)“-0”	Turns Underline OFF
CHR\$(27)“S1”	Turns Subscript Mode ON. Script characters print in Double-Strike and at half speed
CHR\$(27)“S0”	Turns Superscript ON
CHR\$(27)“T”	Turns either version of Script Mode OFF
CHR\$(27)“4”	Turns Italic Mode ON
CHR\$(27)“5”	Turns Italic OFF
CHR\$(27)!“CHR\$(n) or CHR\$(27)“!n”	Selects one of the 16 Master Select combinations, where n stands for a number between 0 and 255



# **Chapter 6**

## **Special Printing Features**

In this chapter you'll discover several new features that will enhance your control over the printer. Backspacing, for example, allows you to combine characters. You can use a set of software commands to switch in and out of international character sets, and you can control the speed of printing.

### **Backspace**

The backspace function is handy for making overstrikes. Because it moves the print head backward one character, you can print two characters in one print position. You can also shift the print head slightly to print offsets. You activate backspace by typing a CHR\$(8) between the two characters.

### **Overstrikes**

Typically, backspace is used for single-character overstrikes. Here are a few examples that create some useful mathematical symbols:

```
NEW  
18 LPRINT "="CHR$(8) "/" ' Not-equal
```

#

For the not-equal symbol, the backspace moves the print head back over the equal sign so that the slash can be printed on top of it. You can

use the same technique to produce the plus-or-minus symbol:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"S0+"CHR$(8);   ^Plus/minus
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"S1-"
30 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
                                #
```

How about that, and it only took three lines. Next try this approximately equally short program:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(126)CHR$(8);   ^Approximately equal
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"J"CHR$(11)CHR$(126)
30 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
```

~

This program prints CHR\$(126), a diacritical mark used in Spanish that is called a tilde. You backspace the print head by using CHR\$(8), then force a partial line feed by using Escape" J"CHR\$(11). The FX prints the second tilde just below the first one to form the desired figure.

#### offsets

The backspace function works in all pitches, which opens up some interesting possibilities. To see what happens when you mix backspacing with different pitch modes, we've prepared a special program that shows off the backspace function in two passes: first in Pica and then in Expanded Pica. We cause all backspacing to be done in Compressed Mode to create a slight offset. Enter:

```
NEW
10 FOR J=0 TO 1
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"W"CHR$(J);  ' Expanded when J=1
30 LPRINT "BACKSPACES"CHR$(15); 'Compressed
40 FOR X=1 TO 17: LPRINT CHR$(8);: NEXT X
50 LPRINT CHR$(18)"BACKSPACES"  ' Compressed off
60 NEXT J: LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"  ' Reset
```

and RUN the program.

**BACKSPACES**  
**BACKSPACES**

The 17 backspaces (line 40) are printed in Compressed Mode. The difference in character widths makes the second printing of the word BACKSPACES be offset from the first.

In the next program, the offset is a little more dramatic. Change the following lines:

```
30 LPRINT "BACKSPACE"CHR$(15);
40 FOR X=1 TO 15: LPRINT CHR$(8);: NEXT X
50 LPRINT CHR$(18)"BACKSPACE"
```

**BACKSPACES**  
**BACKSPACES**

After the FX prints each BACKSPACE, it moves the print head 15 Compressed positions backward. Instead of bold characters, you get a shadow effect. You could spend all day mixing pitch modes to get different eye-stretching effects.

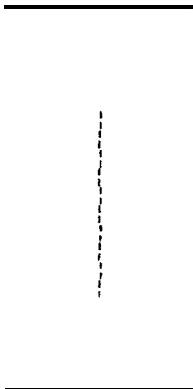
## Unidirectional Mode

The FX printers provide high quality printouts in their normal bidirectional print mode. However, there may be situations in which vertical columns printed in Elite or Compressed Mode get slightly misaligned. The printer has a Unidirectional Mode to prevent such problems .

To see how effective Unidirectional Mode can be, let's create a long vertical line. First we'll print it in the usual, bidirectional manner. Begin by typing:

```
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"CHR$(27)"1"CHR$(40)
40 FOR X=1 TO 10: LPRINT CHR$(124): NEXT X
50 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
```

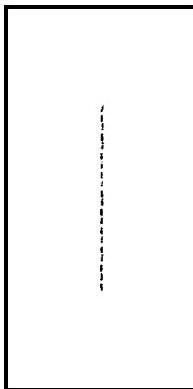
Line 20 sets the line spacing to seven dots and the left margin to 40. To create the vertical line, line 40 prints one character (represented by ASCII 124) 10 times (on 10 print lines). Line 50 resets the printer to its defaults.



**Figure 6-1. Bidirectional line**

Look carefully at your printout or at the version we show as Figure 6-1. See how the line seems to quiver? Now turn on Unidirectional printing to see how much difference it makes. Add line 10 and RUN the program again:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27) "U1"
```



**Figure 6-2. Unidirectional line**

`CHR$(27) "U1"` turns on the Unidirectional printing whose results we show as Figure 6-2, and `CHR$(27) "U0"` turns it off.

Did you watch the print head as it printed? In every row it moved from left to right instead of alternating directions as usual.

You can get the same effect for one line at a time by using the command `CHR$(27) "<"`. This command causes a carriage return with no

line feed, which means that the subsequent movement of the print head will be from the left margin to the right. To see this in action, delete line 10 and change line 40 to read:

```
40 FOR X=1 TO 10: LPRINT CHR$(27) < "CHR$(124):  
NEXT X
```

When you RUN it, you can watch the print head move to its leftmost position after it prints each line.

Unidirectional print motion straightens out the slight misalignment of characters that results from printing bidirectionally in the Elite or Compressed Mode. The difference is subtle, but often it's such subtleties that make a topnotch graphics display possible.

## International Characters

Remember the tilde that you used at the beginning of this chapter to create the approximately equal sign? Well, that tilde is only one of the many uncommon characters that are stored in the FX as components of the nine international character sets.

We mentioned the international character sets in Chapter 1, when we explained that the factory-set defaults for the DIP switches include the selection of the USA character set. Besides the pound sign (#), dollar sign (\$), and at sign (@), the USA set includes the nine other symbols shown in Table 6-1; one or more of these nine may not appear on your computer's keyboard.

**Table 6-7. Some special characters**

91	L	Left bracket
92	\	Back slash
93	J	Right bracket
94	^	Caret
95	—	Underline
96	`	Accent grave
123	{	Left brace
124	:	Flat colon
125	}	Right brace
126	~	Tilde

But that's not all. Your FX has the makings of a world correspondent. Packed in the ROM are nine sets of letters and special characters

that are used in different countries. These international characters can be accessed with:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)"R"CHR$(n);
```

where n is a number from zero to eight. The ESCape "R" sequence selects one of these nine countries:

0	USA	3	United Kingdom	6	Italy
1	France	4	Denmark	7	Spain
2	Germany	5	Sweden	8	Japan

Once you have selected a country, you can use its special characters.

Choosing a new international character set, however, does not give you a completely new set of 256 characters. There are 64 international characters stored in the ROM, 32 in Roman and 32 in Italic typeface, and of these you can only use 12 characters at a time. Each set of 12 is stored as the following ASCII numbers:

```
35, 36, 64, 91, 92, 93, 94, 96, 123, 124, 125, 126
```

The next program selects each of the international character sets in turn. When you RUN it, the printout (shown here as Table 6-2) displays the special symbols of each set (if you have problems, consult Appendix F).

```
NEW
10 DIM ARRAY (12): LPRINT CHR$(27)"M"
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"D"CHR$(1@)CHR$(@)
30 LPRINT CHR$(137);
40 LPRINT "35 36 64 91 92 93 94 96
           123 124 125 126"
50 FOR X=1 TO 12: READ ARRAY(X): NEXT X
60 DATA 35,36,64,91,92,93,94,96,123,124,125,126
70 FOR Y=0 TO 8: LPRINT CHR$(27)"R"CHR$(Y);
80 READ C$: LPRINT C$CHR$(137)CHR$(14);
90 FOR X=1 TO 12: LPRINT CHR$(ARRAY(X))"b";
100 NEXT X: LPRINT: NEXT Y
110 DATA "USA", "FRANCE", "GERMANY", "U.K.", "DENMARK"
120 DATA "SWEDEN", "ITALY", "SPAIN", "JAPAN"
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)@"
```

There are a few items in the program that haven't been covered yet; we'll cover them later. The important thing now is to understand how you can use the CHR\$(27)"R" to gain access to the international characters.

**Table 6-2. International characters in Roman typeface**

	35	36	64	91	92	93	94	96	123	124	125	126
USA	#	\$	@	L	\	J	~	.	C	I	J	~
FRANCE	#	\$	à	°	ç	ś	~	.	é	ú	è	~
GERMANY	#	\$	s	À	Ö	Ü	~	.	ä	ö	ü	B
U.K.	£	\$	@	L	\	J	~	.	C	I	J	~
DENMARK	#	\$	@	Æ	Ø	A	~	.	æ	ø	å	~
SWEDEN	#	¤	E	À	Ö	A	Ü	é	ää	ö	å	ü
ITALY	#	\$	@	°	\	é	~	ù	à	ò	è	ì
SPAIN	R	\$	@	/	ñ	ç	~	.	n	j	~	~
JAPAN	#	\$	@	L	¥	J	~	.	C	I	J	~

This program provides an easy reference to the international characters; you'll probably want to keep the printout handy.

You can also print international characters in Italic Mode. Change these two lines:

```
80 READ C$: LPRINT C$CHR$(137)CHR$(14)CHR$(27)"4";
100 NEXT X: LPRINT CHR$(27)"5": NEXT Y
```

to get the result shown in Table 6-3:

**Table 6-3. International characters in Italic typeface**

	35	36	64	91	92	93	94	96	123	124	125	126
USA	#	\$	@	L	\	J	~	.	C	I	J	~
FRANCE	#	\$	à	°	ç	ś	~	.	é	ú	è	~
GERMANY	#	\$	s	À	Ö	Ü	~	.	ä	ö	ü	B
U.K.	£	\$	@	L	\	J	~	.	C	I	J	~
DENMARK	#	\$	@	Æ	Ø	A	~	.	æ	ø	å	~
SWEDEN	#	¤	E	À	Ö	A	Ü	é	ää	ö	å	ü
ITALY	#	\$	@	°	\	é	~	ù	à	ò	è	ì
SPAIN	R	\$	@	/	ñ	ç	~	.	n	j	~	~
JAPAN	#	\$	@	L	¥	J	~	.	C	I	J	~

When could you use this program? Well, you can print . . .

- · · in italiano,
- · · en français,
- · · in English,
- · · auf deutsch,
- · · på svenska,
- · · paa dansk,
- · · en español.

and if you want to use one of the foreign sets all the time, you can change your printer's default.

The factory setting of a default international character set-for the USA-is shown in line 1 of Table 6-4. You can change this by resetting some of the FX's DIP switches. Three switches:

Switch 1-6

Switch 1-7

Switch 1-8

generate eight combinations. Table 6-4 shows the switch settings.

**Table 6-4. International DIP switch settings**

Country	Switch 1-6	Switch 1-7	Switch 1-8
USA	On	On	On
France	On	On	Off
Germany	On	Off	On
United Kingdom	On	Off	Off
Denmark	Off	On	On
Sweden	Off	On	Off
Italy	Off	Off	On
Spain	Off	Off	Off

That leaves the Japanese set unaccounted for. If you want the characters for it, you must choose the set by using the ESCape "R" statement.

## Special Speeds

You can control the speed of the FX's printing in a couple of ways. You can set it to print at half its usual speed, and FX-80 users can cause it to print one character at a time, immediately upon input. You turn

either of these capabilities on and off, as a mode, with an ESCape sequence.

## Half-Speed Mode

The FX can print at the fine rate of 160 characters per second (cps). But it will also print more slowly if you want it to: the Half-Speed Mode prints at 80 cps. The command sequence uses lowercase s plus zero and one as a toggle:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)"s1"
```

turns Half Speed Mode on, and, as usual, the zero version of the command turns the mode off. If your system can't send lowercase letters, use the longer format:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)CHR$(115)CHR$(1)
```

to get the same results.

The FX uses Half-Speed, as we explained in Chapter 4, to enable extra-dense printing. But why would you want to make the printer work at half its normal speed? The main advantage to Half-Speed printing is a quieter run (e.g., for those late night printing sessions).

## Immediate-Print Mode (FX-80 only)

The FX-80 can move even more slowly—at the speed of your typing. In the Immediate-Print Mode, the print head prints one character at a time, as you send it. The FX-80 also moves the paper up so that you can see the current line and then down to continue printing. This kind of instant feedback can be especially helpful in telecommunications.

You turn Immediate Print on with CHR\$(27)"il" or, to avoid the lowercase i, CHR\$(27)CHR\$(105)"1". But before looking at it, let's review the normal operation of the printer buffer. Enter this program:

```
NEW
20 A$="" : INPUT "TYPE A LETTER"      P",A$
30 IF A$="" THEN 50
40 LPRINT A$;: GOTO 20
50 LPRINT
```

Now type several characters, and after each press the RETURN key. True to form, the printer just stuffs the characters into its buffer while it waits for a carriage-return code. To end this version of the program

and print the contents of the buffer, press RETURN alone. Now add this line:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"i1"
```

And RUN the program. Your FX-80 responds to your typing-immediately.

When you are finished, press RETURN alone, then use the zero version of the command to return to full speed.

## Summary

You can use the Backspace Mode to overstrike one or more characters. In this manner, you can combine two or more characters to form completely new ones. Another way you can use backspacing is to sandwich it between two printings, each in a different print mode, to create characters with offsets.

You can select any one of the nine international character sets by using the control code sequence given below; or you can designate any one of eight of the sets as the default set by changing a DIP switch.

You can cause any FX to print in Half Speed, and you can cause the FX-80 to react as though it were a typewriter by using the Immediate Print Mode. Here are the DIP switches we mentioned in this chapter:

Switches 1-6

1-7

1-8

Any change to these switches causes a change of the default international character set.

Here are this chapter's commands:

CHR(8)                  Causes a backspace

CHR\$(27)"R"CHR\$(n) Selects an international character set,  
where n = 0-8 :

0 = USA	5 = Sweden
1 = France	6 = Italy
2 = Germany	7 = Spain
3 = United Kingdom	8 = Japan
4 = Denmark	

CHR\$(27)“s1”	Turns Half-Speed ON; If your system can't send lowercase letters, use CHR\$(115) <b>CHR\$(1)</b>
CHR\$(27) “s0”	Turns Half-Speed OFF
CHR\$(27)“i1”	For the FX-80 only, turns Immediate-Print Mode ON. If your system can't send lowercase letters, use CHR\$(105)CHR\$(l).
CHR\$(27)“i0”	Turns Immediate-Print Mode OFF



# **Chapter 7**

## **Line Spacing and Line Feeds**

Up to this point in the manual, we have not discussed the way the printer moves a page so that it doesn't print lines of text right on top of each other. Now we do. In this chapter you will learn how to change the distance that the paper moves; the movement is called a line feed, and the distance is called a line space. The ability to change line spacing is vital to printing graphics, as you will see in later chapters.

### **Line Spacing**

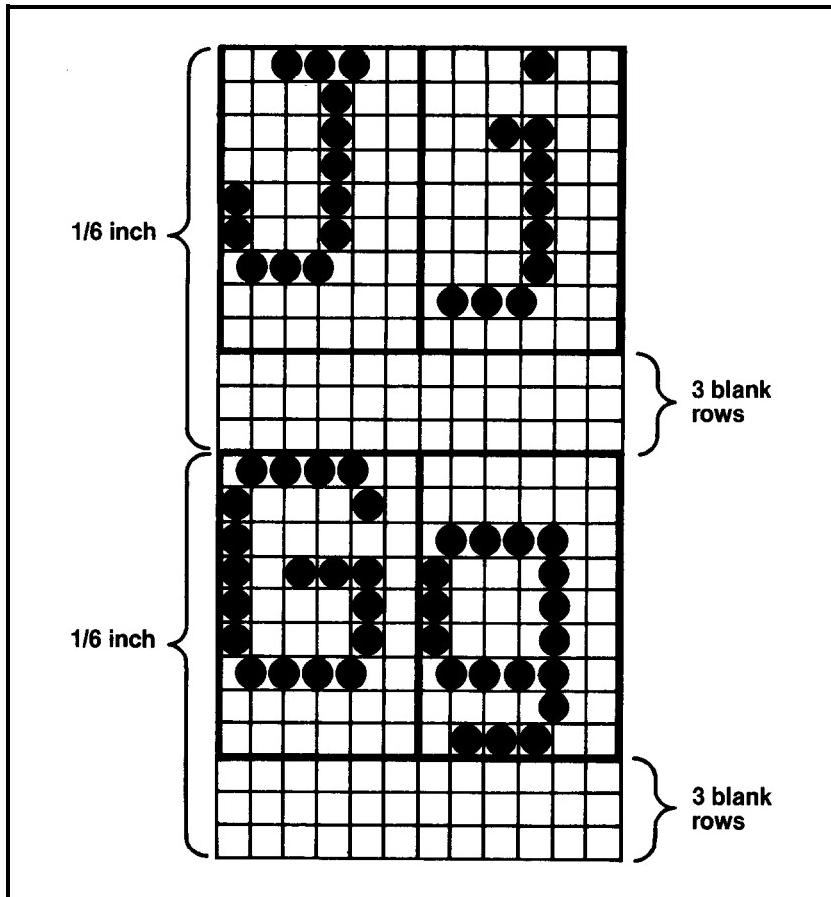
Each line feed must move the paper a specific distance, but that distance need not remain the same for every application, or even every line.

The FX gives you three types of commands to change the size of a line space. You can use one type to select the most common sizes. You can use a second type of command to vary line spacing in 72nds of an inch. And you can use the third to adjust lines microscopically, in 216ths of an inch.

#### **Preset line spacing**

The default setting for one line space is 1/6-inch, which produces 6 print lines per inch. Since this size of line feed is equivalent to 12 rows of dots in the standard character matrix (Figure 7-1), we call this 12-dot line spacing.

When you have been using another size of line spacing and want to return to 12-dot, you use this code: ESCape "2".



*Figure 7-1. Default line spacing*

To see 12-dot spacing, reset the printer (to clear any previous modes), and enter:

```
NEW  
20 FOR X=0 to 4  
30 LPRINT TAB(6*X)"STAIR STEPS"  
40 NEXT X
```

```
STAIR STEPS  
STAIR STEPS  
STAIR STEPS  
STAIR STEPS  
STAIR STEPS
```

Your first STEPS print in 12-dot spacing. Now tighten up the line spacing by adding lines 10 and 50:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
50 LPRINT CHR$(27) "2"
```

```
STAIR STEPS
STAIR STEPS
STAIR STEPS
STAIR STEPS
STAIR STEPS
STAIR STEPS
```

The CHR\$(27)"0" of line 10 changes the usual 12-dot (1/6-inch) line spacing to a handy variation: 9-dot (1/8-inch) spacing. Nine-dot spacing is especially useful in the 9-pin Graphics Mode that we introduce in Chapter 11.

Another convenient line spacing is 7-dot (7/72inch). To see this one, change line 10 to:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27) "1"
```

```
STAIR STEPS
STAIR STEPS
STAIR STEPS
STAIR STEPS
STAIR STEPS
STAIR STEPS
```

Although 7-dot spacing is not suitable for text, it does allow you to print graphics designs with no gaps. You'll use it extensively in the graphics programs presented later.

## Variable line spacing

The FX includes the three line spacing commands shown above mainly for convenience. Besides printing in the preset 7-, 9-, and 12-dot spacing, the FX allows you to vary line feeds from 0 to 85 dots worth (0/7-inch to 85/72-inch). ESCape"A"CHR\$(n), where n represents n/72-inch, changes the distance that a line feed covers to n dots.

To show what varying n can mean, the following program increases the line spacing by one dot's worth on each line feed:

```
20 FOR X=8 TO 24  
30 LPRINT TAB(X) "STAIR" CHR$(27) "A" CHR$(X+128)  
    "STAIR STEPS"  
40 NEXT X  
50 LPRINT CHR$(27) "2"
```

```
STAIR STEPS  
STAIR STEPS
```

**Figure 7-2. Cascading STAIR STEPS**

Figure 7-2 shows that the loop in line 20 and the ESCape “A” command in line 30 gradually increase the line spacing. Because many computer systems have difficulty with one or more numbers below 13 in character-string commands, we have used X+128 in the line-spacing command to avoid those problems.

The ESCape "A" CHR\$(n) command sets the line spacing to  $n/72$ -inch if the n is any number from 0 through 85. If n is between 85 and 128, the line spacing is  $85/72$ -inch. At 128 the sequence starts again, with 128 giving the same result as 0, 129 the same as 1, and so on. Therefore, the X+128 in line 30 produces a change in line spacing from 0 to  $24/72$ -inch.

In summary, ESCape "A" CHR\$(n) selects line spacing in 72nds of a inch, where:

n =	0 - 85	line spacing =	0 - $85/72$ -inch
	85 - 127		$85/72$ -inch
	128 - 213		0 - $85/72$ -inch
	214 - 255		$85/72$ -inch

Since the ESCape "A" sequence lets you specify any 72nd of an inch (from 0 - 85) and since each dot of a dot matrix fills  $1/72$ -inch, you can use this command instead of the preset commands that we covered above. You can set U-dot line spacing either by specifying 12 to the "A" sequence or by using the preset command:

CHR\$(27)"A"CHR\$(12) or CHR\$(27)"2"

Notice the position of the ESCape "A" sequence in line 30-right between the strings STAIR and STEPS. We placed it there to demonstrate that the FX doesn't execute the line-feed command until the end of the print line. Otherwise it would print the two strings on different lines.

Also notice that the lowest valid line spacing is zero dots. You can use this when you want to make multiple overstrikes on one line. To see an example, make these changes to your program:

```
20 FOR X=0 TO 4
30 LPRINT TAB(6*X)"STAIR"CHR$(27)"A"CHR$(0)
      "STEPS"
```

STAIRS~~STAIRS~~STAIRS STEPS STEPS STEPS

The reason for emphasizing 72nds of an inch is that the distance between the centers of any two pins on the print head is  $1/72$ -inch. So these line spacing commands are simply telling the printer just how many dots to space between the lines.

## **Microscopic line spacing**

There is also a way to space at smaller intervals than 72nds. Using a CHR\$(27)"3" will set the spacing to increments of 216th of an inch; l/216-inch is one-third the distance between the pins of the print head (center to center). That means the printer can position a specific line one-third of a dot lower than the previous line. In fact, that's exactly how the Double-Strike Mode operates. One word of caution. As you can imagine, total accuracy is not guaranteed for such fine settings as l/216- and 2/216-inch.

You specify this finer line spacing in much the same way as you did the variable line spacing that we showed above with CHR\$(27) "A". The format is CHR\$(27)"3"CHR\$(n), where n can range from zero to 255. Here's an example using the l/216-inch line spacing five times. Change lines 10 and 30 to read:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"3"CHR$(1)  
30 LPRINT "ABCDEF"
```

**ABCDEF**

These letters are very heavy looking. To carry this idea to an extreme, increase the upper limit of the loop to 10 or 15.

The ability to adjust line spacing in increments of l/216-inch gives you tremendous control in your vertical formatting. You can use this control to fine-tune your graphics printouts. If the 7-dot line spacing leaves gaps in the figures, just tighten it up by changing it to 6-2/3-dot (20/216-inch):

```
CHR$(27)"3"CHR$(20)
```

We'll use this technique in a later chapter.

## **Line Feeds**

Besides being able to change the size of line spaces, you can change other aspects of a line feed. You can send it immediately and for one line only, or you can send it as above, as a continuous feature. And if you are using an FX-80, you can send a reverse line feed to make the print head move back up the page.

## One-time, immediate line feed

The FX has a special line feed that executes a new size of line feed once, then reverts back to the size of the previous line feed. And that's not all—it is executed immediately rather than at the end of the print line as all the other line spacing commands are. The format is:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27) "J"CHR$(n)
```

where n represents a distance of from zero to 255/216-inch.

Put this one to the same test you gave the ESCape “A” command with the following program:

```
20 FOR X=10 TO 30
30 LPRINT TAB(X)"STAIR"CHR$(27)"J"CHR$(X)"STEPS"
40 NEXT X
50 LPRINT CHR$(27)"2"
```

Compare Figure 7-3 to Figure 7-2. In the ESCape “A” program of Figure 7-2, the FX prints STAIR and STEPS on the same line, and performs the variable line feed at the end of the line. In the ESCape “J” program of Figure 7-3, the FX first performs a line feed without a carriage return **between** the strings (see how STEPS begins to sag below STAIR?), and then a standard 12-dot line feed plus carriage return at the end of each line.

To summarize, the ESCape “J” does not require a shut-off code as the other line-feed control codes do: the FX executes it once, then forgets it. Another difference between this line-spacing command and the others is that this one does its work without performing a carriage return: the print head does not move to the left margin.

## Reverse feed (FX-80 only)

The FX-80 has another one-time, immediate line feed, the reverse feed. It operates the same way that ESCape “J” does, as its code suggests: ESCape “j”. The only difference is that reverse feed moves the print head back up the paper (it actually moves the paper, but the effect is of the print head moving). The following program lets you watch ESCape “j” in action. When you RUN it, the FX-80 will first

**Figure 7-3. Staggering STAIR STEPS**

print the two lines of text and then move the print head up the page to print the line of hyphens above the first line.

```
10 LPRINT "REVERSE FEED"
20 LPRINT
30 LPRINT "ARE YOU WATCHING?"
40 LPRINT CHR$(27) "j"CHR$(140);
50 LPRINT "_____1"
```

-----

**REVERSE FEED**

**ARE YOU WATCHING?**

If your system cannot send lowercase letters to the FX, use the numeric equivalent of " j "--CHR\$(106).

Don't use reverse feed with mailing labels in the printer-they can either move on their gummed paper or peel off and get stuck inside the FX.

## **Summary**

The FX provides line spacing in increments of 0/72- to 85/72inch and 0/216- to 255/216-inch. You can cause the FX to change the size of a line space to one of three preset sizes, or you can specify a size in fractions of an inch. You'll use variable line spacing primarily for graphics.

The FX also gives you commands to produce an immediate line feed, either forward or backward.

Table 7-1 summarizes the line-spacing commands and gives a sample of each.

**Table 7-1. Line-spacing commands**

Example	Line spacing	Command
7 DOT LINE SPACING	7/72"	CHR\$(27)*1"
9 DOT LINE SPACING	9/72" (1/8")	CHR\$(27)*0"
12 DOT LINE SPACING	12/72" (1/6")	CHR\$(27)*2" (default)
0-----1-----2-----3-----4-----5-----	n/72" n = 0 - 255	CHR\$(27)*A"CHR\$(n)
0-----3-----6-----9-----12-----15-----	n/216"	CHR\$(27)*3"CHR\$(n) n = 0 - 255
0-----3-----6-----9-----12-----15-----	n/216"	CHR\$(27)*J"CHR\$(n) n = 0 - 255 (immediate)
0-----3-----6-----9-----12-----15-----	n/216"	CHR\$(27)*J"CHRS(n) n = 0 - 255 FX-80 only (immediate)

# **Chapter 8**

## **Forms Control**

The FX has several features that make it easy for you to print on any size of page and to determine where on the page the printing will appear. Because they are needed most often for creating forms or for printing on pre-printed forms, these features are called forms control. With the FX you can easily change the length of a page, the margin settings, and the horizontal and vertical tabs. In this chapter and the next two, you will learn about these forms-control features.

This chapter covers the way you control form feeding, which is the movement of the paper from one paging unit to the next. You can control the distance the paper moves, the positioning of the print head at the top of each page, and the printer's response to your use of single sheets of paper.

### **Form Length Control**

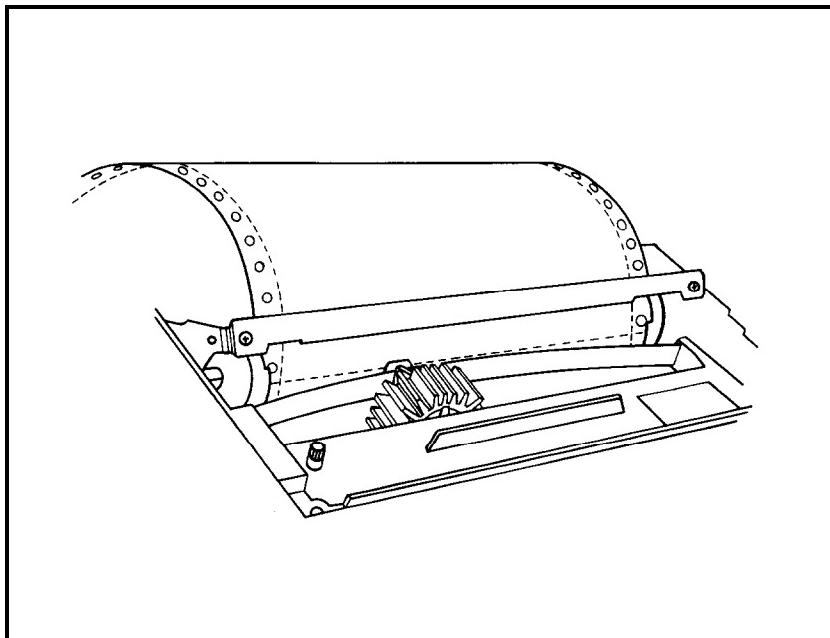
The FX's default form feed is 66 lines, which (in the default 12-dot line spacing) equals the length of a standard form: 11 inches. When you want to use a different size of paper, you can change the length of a form feed. The next three subsections cover these factors of form feeding.

#### **Form feed distance**

When the printer is not on line, using the FF button on the top of the printer feeds the paper to the top of the next form. If you want to advance the paper during a program run without stopping everything, pushing the FF button, then starting again, you can use an ASCII code that performs a form feed whenever you want one.

For the form feed command to be of any use, however, you must

first tell the printer where the top of form is. In most cases you'll want the printer to use the first line below the paper perforation as the top-of-form line. To get this result, turn the printer off and feed the paper through (using the manual-feed knob) until a perforation lines up with the top of the ribbon (see Figure 8-1 or consult Chapter 1).



**Figure 8-1. Setting the top of form**

Turn on the printer. The FX will now remember this position on the paper as the top of form. Each form feed will move the paper to the corresponding position on the next sheet. Try pressing the FF button (with the printer off line). Sure enough, the FX moves the paper right to the top of form.

Now press the LF button a few times, then turn the printer back on line and type:

```
LPRINT CHR$(12);
```

ASCII 12 is the low-order form-feed code; some users will be better off using the high-order 140.

CHR\$(12) sends the paper to the top of the next form. It gives the same result as the FF button so long as you end the line with a semi-colon to prevent BASIC from adding a line feed to the LPRINT line.

## Not-so-standard forms

The printer's default length for a form feed is 11 inches. But what if you decide to use a different form length, say 2 or 14 inches? The printer has no way of measuring the length of your paper. You must tell the FX about your shorter (or longer) form.

The CHR\$(27) "C" command gives you two ways to change the form length: by inches or by lines.

CHR\$(27)"C"CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n) Sets the form length to n **inches**  
(1-22)

CHR\$(27)"C"CHR\$(n) Sets the form length to n **lines**  
(1-127)

CHR\$(0) makes the difference between the two commands.

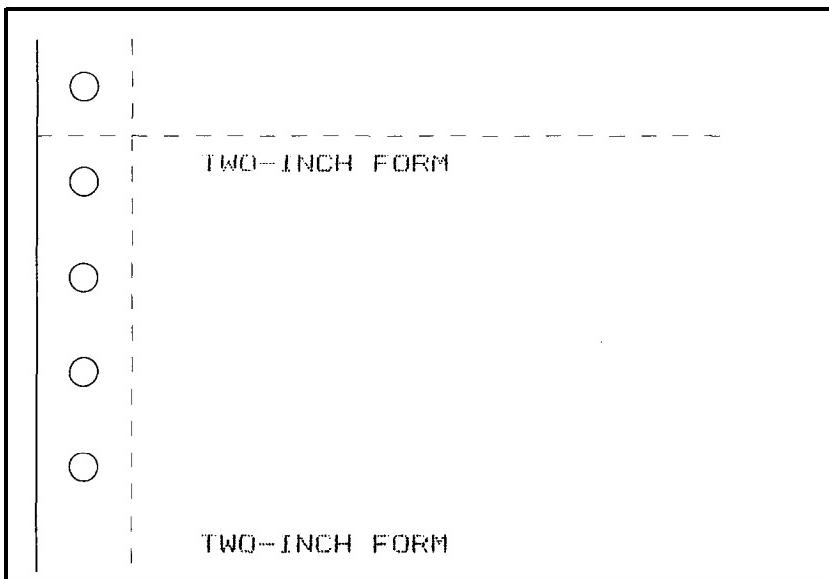
To see the first format in action, run the following program. Enter:

```
NEW
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"C"CHR$(0)CHR$(2);
20 FOR X=1 TO 4
30 LPRINT "TWO-INCH FORM"CHR$(12);
40 NEXT X
50 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
```

CHS(27)"C" is the key. It changes the form length in the printer's memory so that the string TWO-INCH FORM is printed at the top of each new form. It also resets the top of form to the current position of the print head on the paper. It works just as if you'd turned the printer off and on, but without the resetting of other defaults that happens when you set the top of form by using CHRS(27)"@" or by cycling power.

In the program above, line 10 uses the inches format to set the form length to two inches. The CHRS(12) in line 30 activates the form feed to move the paper to the top of the next two-inch form.

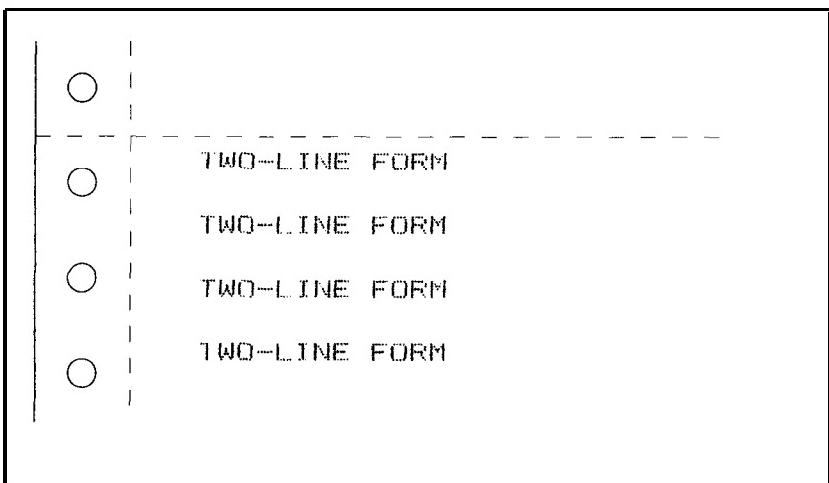
The second format-the one without CHR\$(0)-sets the form length by counting, in the current line spacing, the number of lines.



**Figure 8-2. Two-inch form feed**

Check it by changing your program lines as shown below and RUNNING the program again; see if your printout matches Figure 8-3.

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)\"C"CHR$(2);  
30 LPRINT "TWO-LINE FORM"CHR$(12);
```



**Figure 8-3. Two-line form feed**

Why does the printer give you two options? In some cases, setting the form length by inches is more convenient. If you know how many inches long the form should be, the printer will calculate the correct setting for you, regardless of the current line spacing. On the other hand, setting the form length by number of lines is the only way you can set extremely long form lengths.

If you set the line spacing to its maximum of 85/72-inch and you also set the form length to its maximum of 127 lines, you get a form that is nearly 150 inches long. Compare this to the maximum of 22 inches that you get when you set form length in inches. Except for this difference, your choice of form setting command is a matter of personal preference.

Either format of CHR\$(27) "C" sets the form length in the line spacing that is in effect when the command is given. Subsequent changes in line spacing will not affect it. This can be important in the graphics programs later in this manual.

## Paper Perforation Skip

You can avoid printing on the paper perforation by setting the top of form properly and making sure the printer is informed of the correct form length. Then your appropriately placed form feeds will keep the printing off the perforation.

But there are some situations in which you will find that sending form feeds on every page is inconvenient, and others in which you can't control the process with a BASIC program. A good example of the latter is printing a listing of a long BASIC program. If your computer system's LLIST command doesn't automatically skip perforations, most printers can't compensate. Your FX, however, can; it can automatically output a form feed at the bottom of **every** page to clean up those listings. You can think of it as an automatic skip-over-perforation command.

### Skip command

ESCape "N", the skip-over-perforation command, can automatically skip lines at the bottom of each page to avoid printing right on the perforation, but you must first inform the printer of two things: 1) where the correct top of form is and 2) how long the current forms are.

For standard 11-inch forms, just position the paper correctly before turning on the printer; for other form lengths, use the CHR\$(27)"C" command.

It's time to try this out. Make sure the perforation is even with the top of the ribbon (as in Figure 8-1), reset the printer, then type:

```
NEW  
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"N"CHR$(6);  
20 FOR X=1 TO 70  
30 LPRINT "SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE";X  
40 NEXT X
```

Figure 8-4 shows the skip.

```
SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 57
|SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 58
|SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 59
|SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 60
|
|
|
-----|SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 61
-----|SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 62
-----|SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 63
-----|SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 64
-----|SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 65
-----|SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 66
-----|SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 67
-----|SIX-LINE SKIP . . . LINE 68
```

*Figure 8-4. Standard skip*

The CHR\$(27)"N"CHR\$(6) in line 10 tells the printer to skip 6 lines (1 inch), which moves the paper across the perforation to the next top of form. You can set the number of lines to any value from 1 to 127, as long as the value is less than that for the current form length (set by default or CHR\$(27)"C"). If the value is greater than or equal to the form length, CHR\$(27)"N" is ignored.

When you use the skip-over-perforation command, you may want to change your top of form. No matter what number you use as a skip-over-perforation setting, the printer skips that many blank lines from the last text line to the new top of form. In other words, when you set your top of form the usual way, you will have all of your blank space at the bottom of each page.

To get equal amounts of blank space on the top and bottom of each page, you can set the top-of-form position below the perforation. For the standard six-line (1-inch) gap, setting the top of form to half an inch below the perforation will provide equal amounts of blank space at the bottom of the old page and the top of the new page. You can turn the skip-over-perforation feature off with ESCape "0" (that's the letter oh). You also cancel it by resetting the printer or by setting a new length with ESCape "C".

### **DIP switch skip**

You may find that you want the skip-over-perforation feature to become a default feature on your printer. Nothing could be easier.

Turn the printer off (so that your new setting will take effect when you turn the FX on again). Now remove the vent covering the DIP switches as described in Chapter 1 and change DIP switch 2-3 to the on position.

Set a new top of form as described above. Now replace the vent and turn the printer on. Then delete line 10 and put in this new line 30:

```
30 LPRINT "AUTO SKIP COMING UP . . . LINE";X
```

Except for the positioning of the blank lines and the wording of the text, this printout should match Figure 8-4.

An automatic six-line skip-over-perforation will now be active every time you turn the printer on. And you can still turn it off with the CHR\$(27)"0" or change the setting with CHR\$(27)"N"CHR\$(n).

If you don't want to keep the skip-over-perforation feature active, reset switch 2-3 and your top of form before proceeding.

### **Single-Sheet Adjustment**

For instructions on loading single sheets of paper into the friction feeder, refer back to Chapter 1.

If you use single-sheet paper on your FX printer and run to the end of the form, the paper-out sensor prevents the printer from accidentally printing on the platen. The sensor automatically sounds the beeper and shuts down the printing until you load another sheet and continue. While the sensor saves wear of print head, ribbon, and platen, it also prevents you from printing on the last quarter of a page. If you need to print on this part of the page, you can deactivate the paper-out sensor by setting DIP switch 1-3 on.

Alternatively, you can disable the sensor temporarily by using a software code: ESCape "8". You can see how this works by running the next example. Because you need to see it in action, we do not provide a figure for either run of this program.

With the paper-out sensor active (switch 1-3 off) and the beeper alive (switch 2-2 on), load a single sheet of paper and RUN this program to see the sensor work:

```
10 LPRINT
20 INPUT "HIT RETURN WHEN READY",A
30 FOR X=1 TO 60
40 LPRINT "PRINTING WILL STOP BEFORE PAPER RUNS OUT"
50 NEXT X
```

The printer quits about three-fourths of the way down the page. Good, the sensor is doing its job. Now let's override it. Load in a new sheet of paper and change line 10 to read:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"8"
```

When you RUN this new program with most computer systems, the printer prints all 60 lines, ignoring the paper-out condition. Some systems, however, ignore both the ESCape "8" code and the setting of DIP switch 1-3. (See Appendix F.)

You'll want to use this code with caution, but it's nice to have when needed. To restore the sensor to full power, either send an ESCape "9" command or reset the printer.

## Summary

The printer automatically considers each page to be 11 inches or 66 lines of 12-dot line spacing long. You can change the length of each form (in inches or lines) with an ESCape code. You can turn the skip-over-perforation feature, the paper-out sensor, and the alarm on or

off, either by changing DIP switches or by sending the printer ASCII codes as summarized below.

Switch 2-2	When on; activates the beeper; when off, deactivates it
Switch 1-3	When off, makes the paper-out sensor active; when on, deactivates it
Switch 2-3	When off, turns the skip-over-perforation feature OFF; when on, produces an automatic 1-inch skip over every perforation

Check to see if you want to reset any switches before going on to Chapter 9.

Here are the commands we covered in this chapter:

CHR\$(12)	Produces a form feed; CHR\$ (140) is the alternate, high-order version
CHR\$(27)“C”CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n)	Sets the form length to n inches, where n is 1 - 22
CHR\$(27)“C”CHR\$(n)	Sets the form length to n lines, where n is 1 - 127
CHR\$(27)“N”CHR\$( n)	Turns the skip-over-perforation feature ON, set to n lines, where n is 1 to less than the current form length in lines. Is cancelled by CHR\$(27) “@ ” and CHR\$(27) “C” as well as CHR\$(27) “0”
CHR\$(27)“0”	Turns the automatic skip-over-perforation feature OFF
CHR\$(27)“8”	Turns the paper-out sensor OFF
CHR\$(27)“9”	Used in conjunction with CHR\$(27)“8”, turns the paper-out sensor back ON
CHR\$(27)“@”	The Reset Code resets the form length to 11 inches, the top of form to the current line, and the skip-over-perforation to the DIP switch setting



# **Chapter 9**

## **Margins and Tabs**

At power-up, your FX contains specific default settings for margins and for horizontal and vertical tabs. You can make changes to any of these. Since it is best to change margins before tabs, we discuss margins first, then three aspects each of horizontal and vertical tabs.

### **Margins**

Most word processing programs have commands that let you set the left and right margins. If yours doesn't, or if you ever need to change margins from a BASIC program, the FX has just the thing—margin control. For Pica pitch, the default margins are 80 characters for the FX-80 and 136 for the FX-100. You can change **each** margin separately to suit your needs.

#### **Left margin**

If your word processor cannot control the left margin, this command is the one you've been waiting for. The command for setting the FX's left margin uses the lowercase letter el:

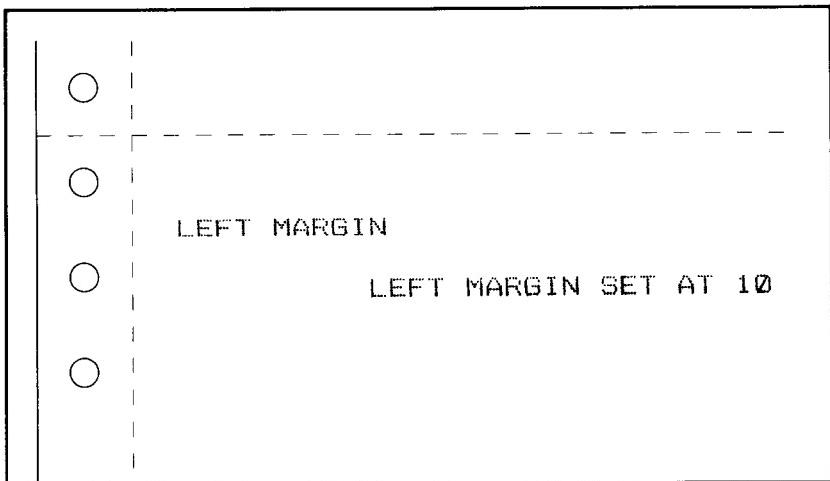
`CHR$(27)"1"CHR$(n)`

where n is the column number for your new left margin. Use `CHR$(l08)` in place of the "1" if your system has trouble with lowercase characters.

Here are the ground rules. The allowed values for n on the FX-80 range from 0 to 78 for Pica, 0 to 93 for Elite, and 0 to 133 for Compressed Mode. On the FX-100 the ranges are 0 to 134 for Pica, 0 to 160 for Elite, and 0 to 229 for Compressed. The printer ignores all invalid settings, such as those greater than the current page width. New margin settings go into effect at the next carriage return, and they stay in effect until you change them.

Try out the left margin command with:

```
NEW  
10 LPRINT "LEFT MARGIN"  
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"CHR$(10)  
30 LPRINT "LEFT MARGIN SET AT 10"  
40 LPRINT
```



**Figure 9-1. Left margin setting**

As Figure 9-1 shows, line 10 prints at the default (zero) left margin, and line 30 makes the new left margin start 10 spaces to the right of the default.

You may have noticed that we did not have you reset the left margin to zero at the end of the program. To see if the new margin is still in effect, type your computer's LLIST command. Does your printout page now look like Figure 9-2?

The left margin is still set at 10, and it will stay at this setting either until it is reset by some software code or until the printer is turned off.

## Margins and pitches

Margin settings are not affected by changing the width of the print **after** they are set. This means that if you set the margin in Pica Mode

```
○  
○ LEFT MARGIN  
○  
○ LEFT MARGIN SET AT 10  
○  
○ 10 LPRINT "LEFT MARGIN"  
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"CHR$  
30 LPRINT "LEFT MARGIN S  
40 LPRINT
```

**Figure 9-2. Listing at new margin**

and then switch to Compressed, the left margin stays the same distance from the edge of the paper. To see an example, type:

```
LPRINT CHR$ ( 15)
```

and then your computer's print listing command. Figure 9-3 shows the page with this addition.

```
○  
○ LEFT MARGIN  
○  
○ LEFT MARGIN SET AT 10  
○  
○ 10 LPRINT "LEFT MARGIN"  
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"CHR$  
30 LPRINT "LEFT MARGIN SE  
40 LPRINT  
  
○  
○ 10 LPRINT "LEFT MARGIN"  
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"CHR$(10)  
30 LPRINT "LEFT MARGIN SET AT 10"  
40 LPRINT
```

**Figure 9-3. Absolute left margin**

The text prints in **Compressed** Mode, but the left margin is still set at **10 Pica** spaces.

## Right margin

The general format for the right margin is:

```
CHR$(27)"Q"CHR$(n)
```

For the FX-80, n can range from 2 to 80 in Pica, 3 to 96 in Elite, and 4 to 137 in Compressed Mode. For the FX-100, n can range from 2 to 136 in Pica, 3 to 163 in Elite, and 4 to 233 in Compressed. The lower limits may seem strange when compared with the Os allowed for left margin limits. We'll investigate the limits on the right margin shortly, but first let's try out the command.

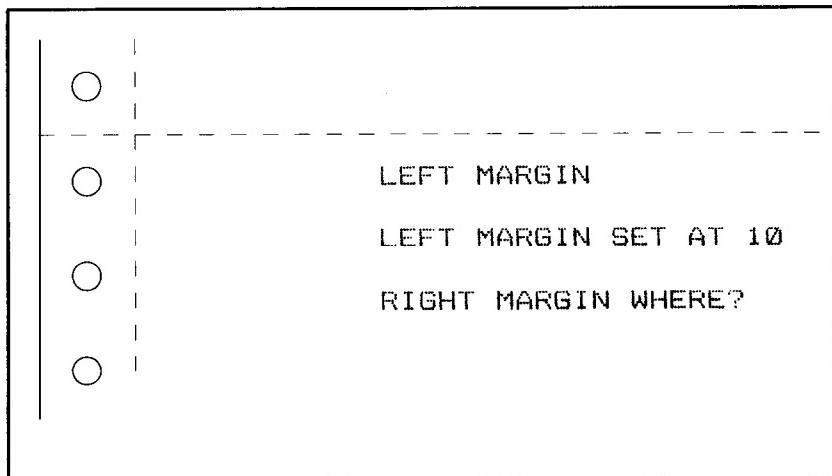
The margins can be set either from a BASIC program or from the BASIC command level (without line numbers). The following line sets the right margin to 5 in Pica. Type:

```
LPRINT CHR$(18)CHR$(27)'Q'CHR$(5)
```

and

```
50 LPRINT "RIGHT MARGIN WHERE?"
```

Now RUN your program.



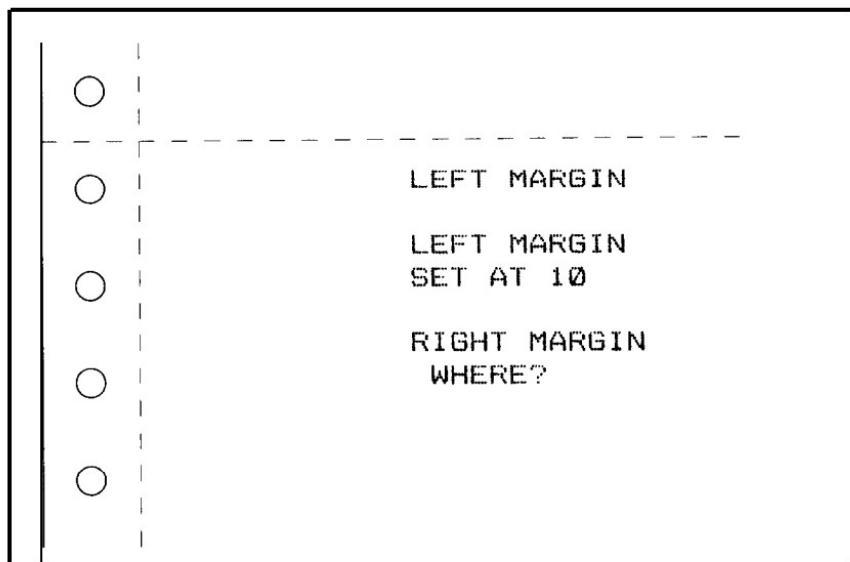
*Figure 9-4. Right margin set incorrectly*

Figure 9-4 shows the new listing, which did not print out at the position you specified. What happened? Well, the CHR\$(18) turned off Compressed Mode, but there was no change in the margin because the new right margin setting would have occurred on the wrong side of the current left margin (which is still set at 10). Remember, the FX simply ignores impossible settings.

Use a workable number to reset the right margin:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)"Q"CHR$(22)
```

Then RUN the program.



**Figure 9-5. Right margin set correctly**

As shown in Figure 9-5, all the characters get printed between columns 10 and 21 (counting from 0).

You can use the right margin setting to increase your printing width in Compressed Mode on the FX-80. The default right margin in that mode is 132, which is slightly less than 8 inches. If you set the right margin to 137 **after** giving the command for Compressed, you get a full S-inch print line. You may also need a WIDTH statement; see Appendix F.

## Both margins

Notice that the left and right margin commands use different numbering systems. In Pica Mode the left margin command counts from 0 to 79 while the right margin command counts from 1 to 80. Keep this difference in mind when you use the two commands together.

Another difference between the two margin commands is that the minimum left margin setting is 0, regardless of pitch, but the minimum right margin is the value of the left margin setting plus 2 in Pica, 3 in Elite, or 4 in Compressed.

The left and right margin commands can make a mess of your program if you aren't aware of three more factors. First, since these commands clear text out of the buffer (as CANcel-CHR\$(24)-does), you should not issue margin commands at the end of a program line that produces a print line. A good rule is: always send your new margin command before you send the print line.

Second, the left margin command has a profound effect on horizontal tabs. It moves the tab columns horizontally, based on the new left margin as the zero column. In other words, use this order:

- set margins first
- set tabs as needed
- then send the print line.

The third factor that can affect your new margins and tabs is resetting. Since the FX returns to its default settings whenever you reset the printer, you must be careful about using the Reset Code-CHR\$(27) "@"-- 'm a program and about turning the printer off during a series of runs.

## Tabs

Your printer contains default horizontal tabs set at every eight spaces and default vertical tabs set at every other line. You can issue one command to use these default tabs, or you can issue other commands to change them. You may change tabs in either a regulated (evenly spaced) pattern or so that the tabs vary. You may also set vertical tabs in sets, called channels.

In this manual, we often use the terms column and row to refer to the positioning of **dots** within a matrix or, in graphics, on a page. In this chapter we will use the terms column and row instead to refer to the positioning of **characters** on a page.

## Horizontal tab usage

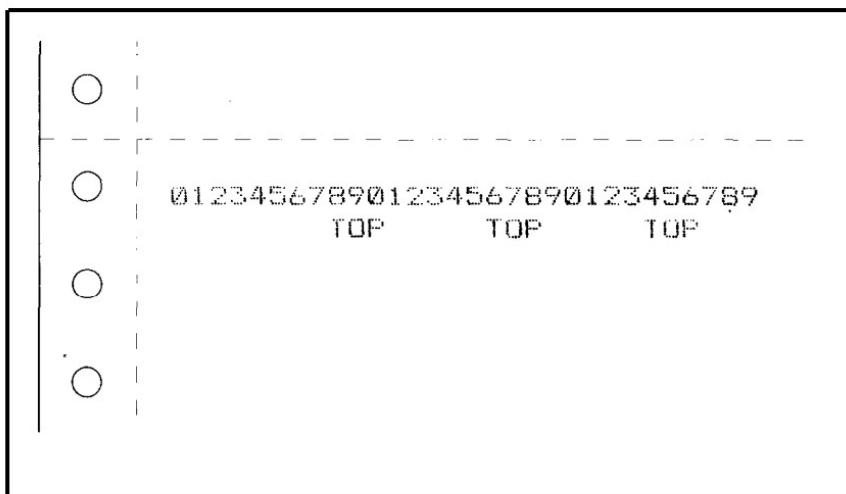
The FX has the ability to tab horizontally, and it has default tabs set in the current pitch at columns 8, 16, 24, 32, . . . every eight Pica spaces on out to the current width of the page. We will show you how to change the tabs to suit your needs more closely, but first let's see how the printer's tabs work.

You can move the print head from any position on the print line to the next tab stop with the ASCII horizontal tab code, CHR\$(9). You use CHR\$(9)-or CHR\$(137) if 9 is a number your system does not send-to move from stop to stop, whether the stop is a default tab or a tab that you have set.

Using the exact line numbers shown, enter this sample program:

```
10 H$=CHR$(137): A$"0123456789"
30 FOR X=1 TO 3:LPRINT A$;: NEXT X: LPRINT
40 FOR J=1 TO 3
50 LPRINT H$;"TOP";
60 NEXT J: LPRINT
120 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
```

and compare your RUN with Figure 9-6.



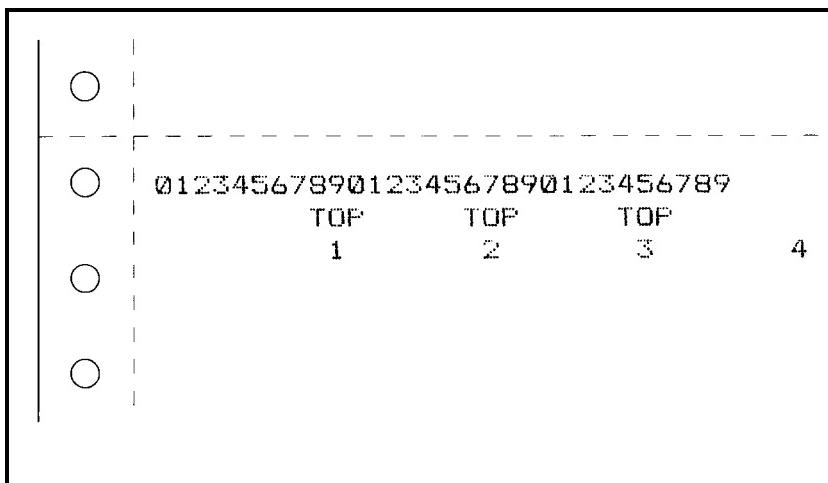
**Figure 9-6. Default horizontal tabs**

This shows that the default tabs (each represented by the T of the word TOP) are set in columns 8, 16, 24, 32, etc. Remember that the column count starts at 0.

Note that many BASICs handle numbers differently from strings. This difference is most evident when you are printing columns that contain mixtures of numbers and strings: many BASICs automatically add spaces both before and after each number. You may have to make adjustments if you want to have a column of numbers line up. Test this out on your machine with the following changes:

```
70 FOR J=1 TO 9  
80 LPRINT H$;J;  
90 NEXT J: LPRINT
```

Figure 9-7 shows the text heading (TOP) centered above each column of numbers. Since each column is three spaces wide and each number consists of a single numeral, the automatic space placed before each number does the centering. Remember the way your system handles numbers so that you can make adjustments as necessary.



**Figure 9-7. Tabs with text and numbers**

When you want to use a tab stop that is not your first stop, you simply enter an extra character string tab command for each stop that you want to skip over. In your current program, for instance, you would put your first column at the second stop by making line 50 read:

```
50 LPRINT H$;H$;"TOP";
```

Since we use this technique within a program later, we do not include a printout here.

## Variable horizontal tabs

You can change the default horizontal tab settings by specifying new tab stops. To do this, use the format:

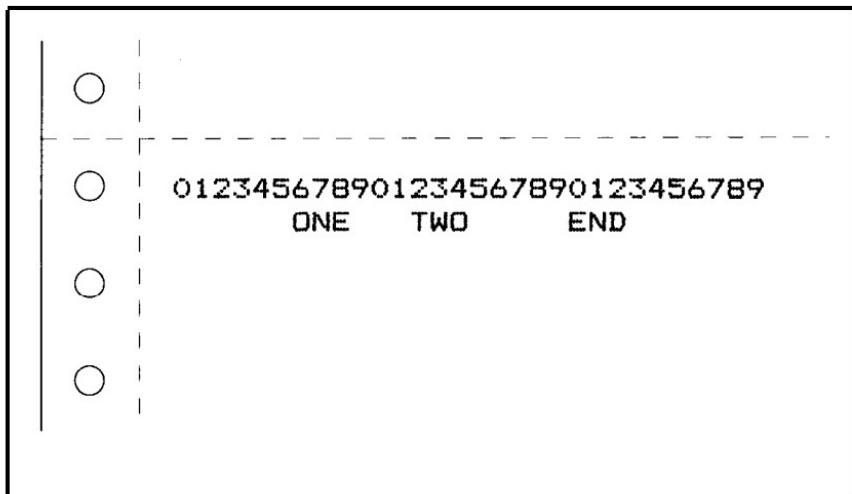
```
CHR$(27)"D"CHR$(n,) . . . CHR$(n,)CHR$(0)
```

where n, and n<sub>k</sub> stand for the first and last of a series of new tab stops, and the CHR\$(O) informs the printer that you are through setting tabs. The FX can store up to 32 tab stops; you may specify one or all of these. You may also add stops to one or more of the default tabs, as in the next version of your current program.

Delete lines 40 through 90 and add:

```
40 LPRINT CHR$(27)"D"CHR$(6)CHR$(12)CHR$(20)CHR$(0);
50 LPRINT H$;"ONE";H$;"TWO";H$;"END"
```

RUN it to see if you get the results of Figure 9-8.



**Figure 9-8. Variable horizontal tabs**

In line 40 you set new tab stops at **6**, **12**, and **20**, terminating the setting process with CHR\$(0). The H\$ sends the tabbing command.

For your horizontal tab settings, you cannot use a number larger than the one that represents the last column of the page. If you have not reset the margins, for the FX-80 this is:

79 in Pica, 95 in Elite, and **131** in Compressed.

For the FX-100 this is:

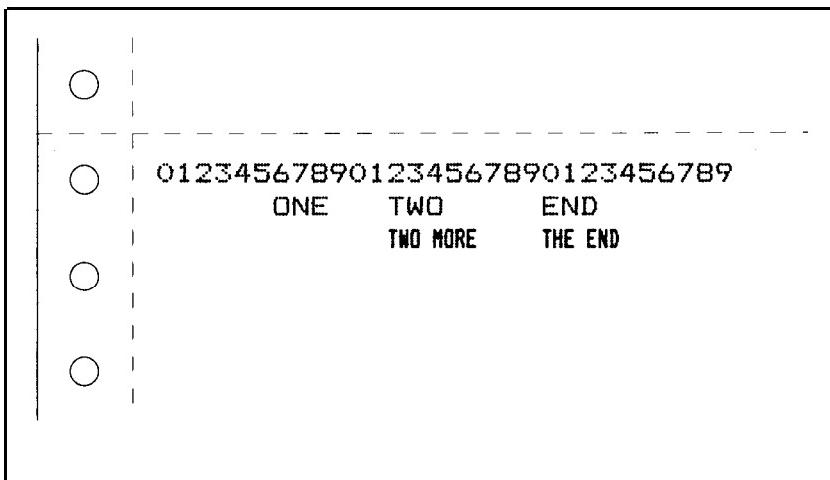
135 in Pica, 162 in Elite, and 232 in Compressed.

Don't forget that resetting the margins automatically returns the tabs to their default settings. Set margins before tabs.

Tabs are set in the currently active pitch, and subsequent changes in pitch do not affect the tab positions. Here's proof. Add these lines to your current program:

```
60 LPRINT CHR$(15);  
70 LPRINT H$;H$;"TWO MORE";H$;"THE END"
```

and RUN it.



**Figure 9-9. Absolute horizontal tabs**

Figure 9-9 shows two more factors of tabbing. First, it demonstrates the way to skip a tab. Since in line 70 you specified a tab stop (H\$) with no text string, the printer moved to the second stop. Second, this figure shows that the tabs are set absolutely. Although you changed the pitch to Compressed in line 60, which changed the width of characters and spaces, the width of the tab did not change. You will need to keep both these factors in mind as you use tabs.

### Vertical tab usage

You use vertical tabs much as you do horizontal ones. With the vertical tab code, CHRS(1l), you move from tab to tab. You can use

the default vertical tabs, which are set for every other line, or you can set tabs in one of two ways, in a single set or, for forms, in up to 8 sets, called channels.

## Ordinary vertical tabs

Most often you probably will only need one series of vertical tabs. You set them with ESCape "B" in this format:

```
CHR$(27)"B"CHR$(n1) . . . CHR$(nk)CHR$(0)
```

where n<sub>1</sub> to n<sub>k</sub> represent up to 16 numbers that specify the lines that get tab stops. The process is terminated by CHR\$(0). If your system won't send a 0, use any number lower than n<sub>k</sub>.

The allowable range of tab settings in the ESCape "B" sequence is 1 to 255, but a number greater than the current form length is ignored. Therefore, you would use a setting as large as 255 only when the line spacing is less than three dots (3/72-inch).

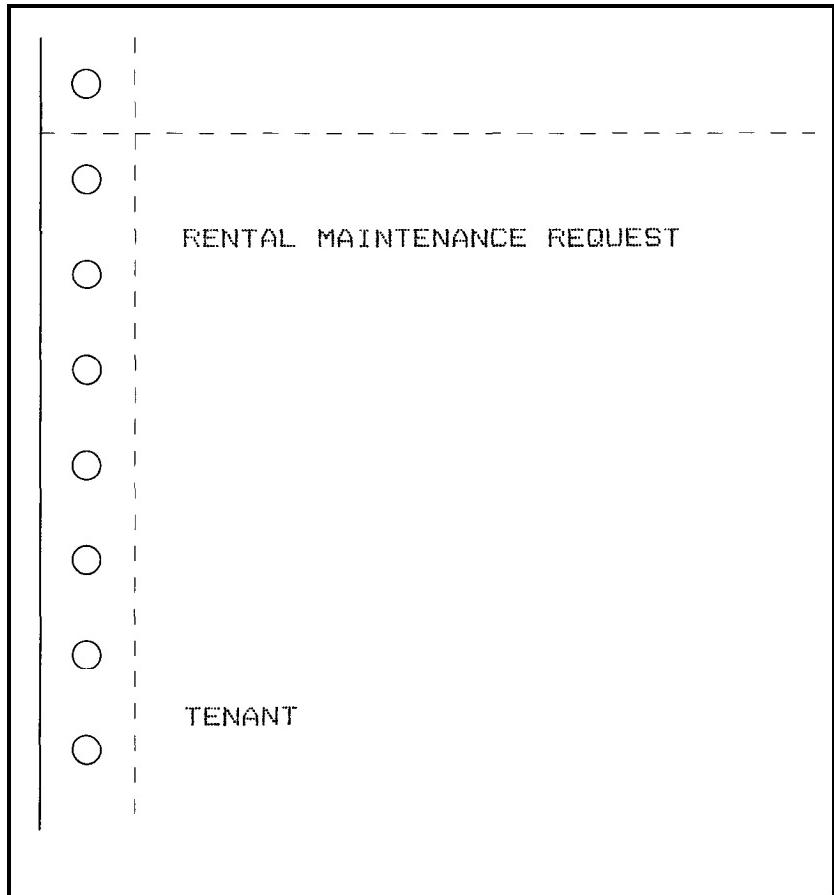
Because the top line of a page is line 0, you can set tabs at line 1 through 65 with the default form feed of 66 lines.

You can set up all the tabs you'll need for a form without having to use all of them at once. Here, for example, is the beginning of a program that will result in a form used by a rental agent:

```
NEW  
10 V$=CHR$(11)  
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"B"CHR$(J)CHR$(8)CHR$(18)CHR$(27)  
     CHR$(37)CHR$(48)CHR$(0)  
30 LPRINT V$; "RENTAL MAINTENANCE REQUEST";  
50 LPRINT V$  
90 LPRINT V$; "TENANT"
```

So that your program will be concise, line 10 defines the vertical tabbing code as V\$. Then line 20 specifies the six lines to which the printer will tab. When you RUN this program, the two sets of text of lines 30 and 90 print out at the first and third stops, while line 50 causes the printer to skip over the second stop. Figure 9-10 shows the printout.

You set the first tab for line 3, but the first printing is on the fourth line. This is because the printer counts the first line as the zero line.



**Figure 9-10. Ordinary vertical tabs**

Once you have tabbed to a stop, you can print more than one line of text at that position. See this by changing line 50 and adding the three lines shown below to your current program. If you enter the number of spaces that we have indicated with Ms, the entries will line up neatly.

```
50 LPRINT V$;"LOCATION"
60 LPRINT "M M ADDRESS:"
70 LPRINT "M M M CITY
80 LPRINT "M M M S STATE:"
```

Your printout should look like Figure 9-11 .

The image shows a rectangular form with a vertical border on the left side. Inside, there are seven horizontal dashed lines representing tab stops. To the left of each stop is a small circle. The text is aligned to the right of each stop. The text includes 'RENTAL MAINTENANCE REQUEST', 'LOCATION', 'ADDRESS:', 'CITY:', 'STATE:', and 'TENANT'.

	RENTAL MAINTENANCE REQUEST
	LOCATION
	ADDRESS:
	CITY:
	STATE:
	TENANT

**Figure 9-11. Text at tab stop**

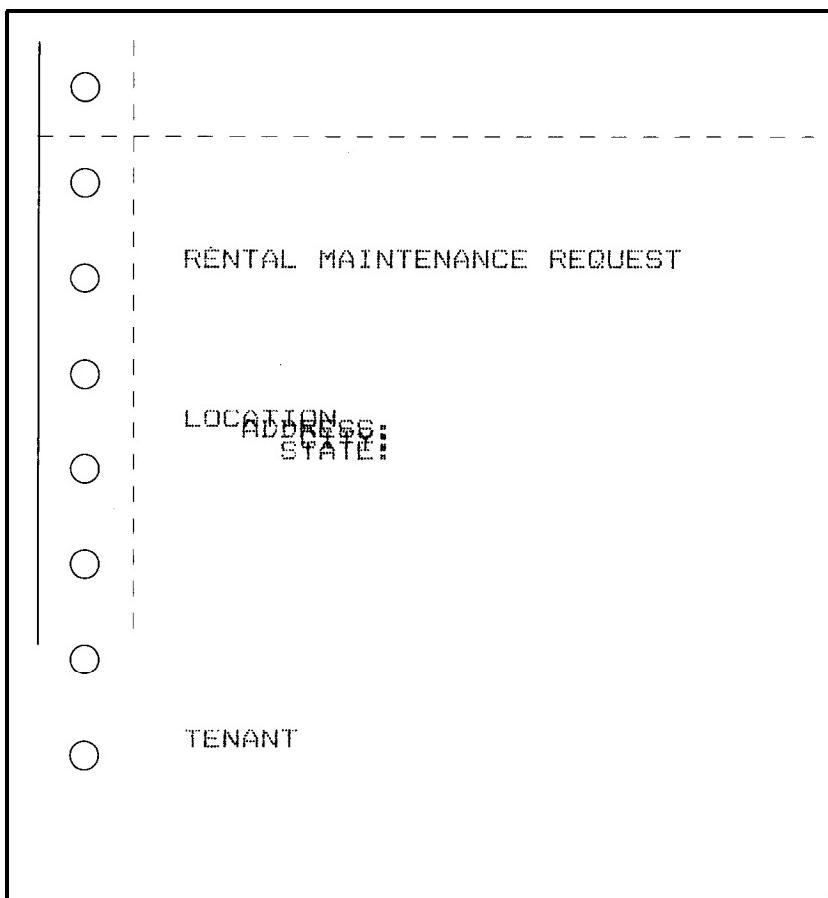
Just as for horizontal tabs, vertical tab settings are absolute: they do not change when you change the size of a space. For example, suppose you want to add to this form a graphics logo that uses special line spacing. If you forget to return to 12-dot spacing before the FX prints the next text after the logo, the line spacing will go awry—but each tab stop will remain the same distance from the top of form.

See that the tab stops are absolute by adding these two lines to your program:

```
25 LPRINT CHR$(27) "A"CHR$(4)  
250 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
```

Line 25 changes the line spacing from 12/72-inch to 4/72-inch; line 250

uses the Reset Code to return the FX to 12-dot spacing. RUNning this program produces a printout to match Figure 9-12.



**Figure 9-12. Absolute vertical tabs**

Be sure to delete line 25 after you've seen its effect.

### **Vertical tab channels**

Vertical tab channels are especially helpful in two situations. The first occurs when you are writing a program to accompany a pre-printed form that can accommodate various types of responses. The second occurs when you create a multipage form or report with different vertical tabs on each page.

You can store up to eight channels of tab stops, numbered from 0 to 7. You use a format that is similar to the one for a single set:

```
CHR$(27)"b"CHR$(N)CHRR$(n1) . . . CHR$(nk)CHR$(0)
```

where N stands for a reference number between zero and seven under which this channel will be stored. If you have already stored a set using ESCape "B", the FX has labelled it as channel 0.

If your system won't send lowercase letters, substitute CHR\$(98) for the "b". As for ESCape "B", you can store up to 16 stops, and you can use numbers between 1 and 254. You use either 0 or a number smaller than n<sub>k</sub> to terminate the setting process.

Because the channels are stored, you must make the printer recall one before you can use it. You use this format:

```
CHR$(27)"/"CHR$(n)
```

where n stands for the number of the channel (0 - 7). After you have used this format, you perform tabbing by using CHR\$(l1) as usual.

Of the two reasons we mentioned for using channels, the programming of a multipage report form is the simpler. The program shown demonstrates the way you could set up an outline to be filled in by someone else or at a later date. Figure 9-13 shows the printout of that program.

```
NEW
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"b"CHR$(1)CHR$(15)CHR$(40)CHR$(1);
   ' SET TABS AT 15,40 FOR CHANNEL #1
20 LPRINT CHR$(27)"b"CHR$(2)CHR$(25)CHR$(30)CHR$(1);
40   ' SET TABS FOR CHANNEL #2 AT 25, 30
50 LPRINT CHR$(27)"b"CHR$(3)CHR$(30)CHR$(45)CHR$(1);
60   ' SET TABS FOR CHANNEL #3 AT 30,45
100 ' ***** START OF MAIN PROGRAM *****
110 FOR Z=1 TO 3 : READ X
120 LPRINT "TOP OF PAGE"
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)"/"CHR$(X);
140   ' SET CURRENT CHANNEL "PAGE"
150 LPRINT CHR$(11)"TAB #1 FOR CHANNEL"X
160 LPRINT CHR$(11)"TAB #2 FOR CHANNEL"X
170 LPRINT CHR$(140);
180 NEXT Z
190 DATA 1,2,3
2000 LPRINT CHR$(27)@"
10000 END
```

TOP OF PAGE	TOP OF PAGE	TOP OF PAGE
TAB #1 FOR CHANNEL 1		
	TAB #1 FOR CHANNEL 2	
	TAB #2 FOR CHANNEL 2	TAB #1 FOR CHANNEL 3
TAB #2 FOR CHANNEL 1		
		TAB #2 FOR CHANNEL 3

***Figure 9-13. Printout of multipage channels***

## **Summary**

The FX gives you the ability to set margins and to use default, regulated and variable tabs; you can set tabs in either the horizontal or vertical direction. The default horizontal tabs occur in Pica, regardless of the current pitch. You set horizontal tabs in the current pitch. The default vertical tabs occur at every other line in 12-dot line spacing. All tabs are absolute once set; subsequent changes in pitch or line spacing do not change the tab positions.

CHR\$(27) "1" CHR\$(n) Sets the left margin to n. (If you can't use lowercase letters, use CHR\$(l08) in place of "1".) Limits are 0 - 78 in Pica, 0 - 93 in Elite, and 0 - 133 in Compressed

CHR\$(27) "Q" CHR\$(n) Sets the right margin to n. Limits are 2 - 80 in Pica, 3 - 96 in Elite, and 4 - 137 in Compressed

CHR\$(9) or CHR\$(137) Moves the print head to the next horizontal tab.

**CHR\$(11)** Moves the print head to the next vertical tab

CHR\$(27) "B" CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) . . . CHR\$(n<sub>k</sub>)CHR\$(0)

Sets vertical tabs at lines, n<sub>1</sub>, n<sub>2</sub> . . . n<sub>k</sub>. Terminates with CHR\$(0) or any number less than

CHR\$(27) "D" CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) . . . CHR\$(n<sub>k</sub>)CHR\$(0)

Sets horizontal tabs at columns n<sub>1</sub> . . . n<sub>k</sub>.

Terminates with CHR\$(0) or any number less than n<sub>k</sub>

CHR\$(27) "b" CHR\$(N)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) . . . CHR\$(n<sub>k</sub>)CHR\$(l)  
N sets the vertical channel number. N = 0-7; 0 is the same as CHR\$(27) "B"

CHR\$(27) " / " CHR\$(n) Selects channel n



# **Chapter 10**

## **Introduction to Dot Graphics**

Welcome to the world of Epson graphics. To get you off to a solid start, we use this chapter to discuss all the fundamentals of dot graphics, from the number of dots per page to the way to position one dot, before we show you several patterns that you can print by using one dot at a time.

### **Dots and Matrixes**

Imagine the blank printout page as a huge canvas that is made up of a series of dot matrixes. You can use this page like an artist's canvas to create your own graphic images. Where the painter uses brush and paint, you will use the computer and printer to express your artistic ideas.

Think of the page as a series of matrixes. For an FX-80 page and Pica characters, for example, you can calculate the number of main columns across a page by multiplying:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} & 80 \text{ matrixes wide} \\ \times & 6 \text{ columns per matrix} \\ = & 480 \text{ dots per row} \end{array}$$

Then you can calculate the numbers of rows down a page by multiplying:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} & 66 \text{ lines per page} \\ \times & 12 \text{ dots high per line} \\ = & 792 \text{ dots per column} \end{array}$$

A final multiplication:

$$\begin{array}{r} 480 \text{ main columns} \\ \times \quad 792 \text{ rows} \end{array}$$

gives you a grand total of 380,160 dot positions per FX-80 page. And that doesn't even take into account intermediate columns, the FX-100's ability to print 136 Pica matrixes, or both models' ability to use graphics density settings to increase the number of dots across the page and microscopic line spacing to increase the number of dots down the page.

Since there is a huge number of such dot positions on each page, this sounds like a giant task. It won't be, however, because we'll give you methods to shorten the time and steps to good graphics design.

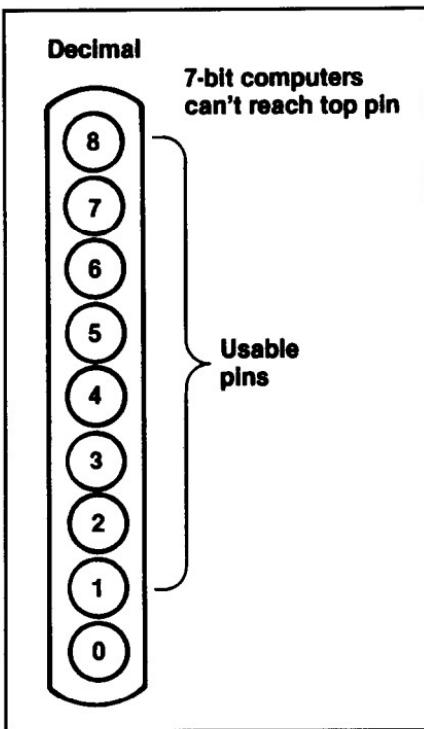
## Print Head

Printing high-resolution graphics on the FX requires a mode that is very different from the text modes. In any of the several versions of Graphics Mode, none of the predefined characters or symbols in the printer's memory are used. Instead, you create the patterns of dots that are printed. Thus, you control where and when each and every dot is printed.

To do this, you look at the page as a series of dot columns, arranged in rows. For each column position on a print line, the print head impresses the pattern of dots that you have specified. Before you can start designing these patterns, however, you need to know a little more about the way the print head works.

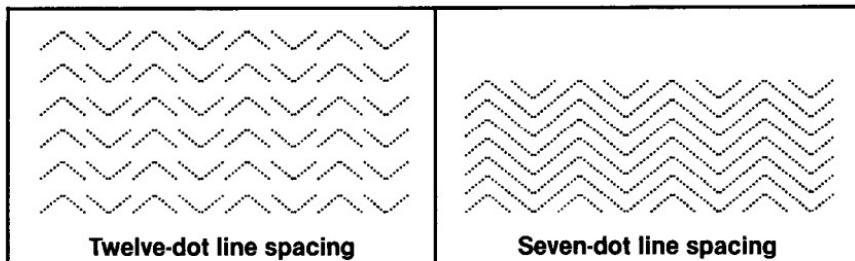
Even though there are nine pins on the print head, each column can be only eight dots high. That's because printer/computer communications are based on eight data lines, with each of the top eight pins of the print head corresponding to one of the eight lines. So each sweep of the head prints eight or fewer dots, depending on your computer system and your specifications (see Figure 10-1).

Seven-bit systems can control only the middle seven pins. Because we want users of such systems to be able to use these programs, we rarely put the top pin to work in the programs that follow. When we do, we tell you so.



**Figure 10-1. Pins numbered sequentially**

Each time the print head makes a horizontal pass, it prints a pattern of dots. To print figures taller than 7 or 8 dots, the print head must make more than one sweep. If you use the 12-dot (default) line spacing, the print head will leave gaps between the graphics lines, just as it does between text lines. To avoid such gaps in your pattern, adjust the line spacing to 7-or8- dot and print consecutive lines until the figure is complete. Figure 10-2 shows a before and after example (we work with this pattern later).



**Figure 10-2. Dot pattern in two line spacings**

Each pass of the print head contains one piece of the total pattern, which can be as tall or short as you desire. You don't have to use the whole page or even an entire line for your graphics figures. In fact, you can reserve as little or as much space as you like for a figure-and position it anywhere on the page.

## Graphics Mode

Multi-line figures are printed in lines that are either seven or eight rows tall. For each graphics figure, you must first enter one of the seven versions of Graphics Mode and then tell the printer the number of columns you wish to print on each line. In other words, you specify the density of the dots.

Here is the format for entering Single-Density Graphics Mode (60 dots per inch).

```
LPRINT CHR$(27) "K"CHR$(n1)CHR$(n2);
```

The two number slots (n<sub>1</sub> and n<sub>2</sub>) determine the number of columns reserved for graphics.

Why two numbers instead of one? To get around a limitation of the BASIC CHR\$ function, which with only one reservation slot would not let you print a figure across the entire width of the page. An 8-inch page can hold up to 480 Single-Density graphics dots per row. But since the BASIC CHR\$ function is limited to numbers from 0 to 255, you can't send a number as large as 480 directly to the printer.

That's where the second number slot fits in. You use the two sets of numbers together to send large numbers to the printer. The first number that you specify (n<sub>1</sub>) indicates a number of columns (0-255), as you'd expect. A 255 in that position says "reserve 255 columns for graphics," which means that any Single-Density figure less than half a page wide can be handled easily by the first number alone. Although you may sometimes need only this first slot for specifying width, you must not stop with that specification. You must still satisfy the printer, which always expects a value for the second slot (n<sub>2</sub>). Send it a 0.

Often a figure needs more than half a line. To reserve more than 255 columns for graphics, the second number ( $n_2$ ) must be greater than 0. But  $n_2$  does not represent a number of single dots; it represents a number of groups, each of which contains 256 dots. Using a 1 in the second slot means "reserve one group of 256 dots plus whatever is in the first slot." A 2 in that spot means "reserve two groups of 256 dots (512) plus . . ." and so on up to 7 times 256 (or 1792) dots on the FX-80 and up to 12 times 256 (or 3072) on the FX-100.

Actually, the FX-80 will accept numbers larger than 7 for  $n_2$ , but it is pointless to send them because the printer treats them as modulo 8. That is, 8 works the same as 0, 9 as 1, 10 as 2, etc.

Similarly, the FX-100 treats numbers above 12 as modulo 13. The maximum number of dots you can reserve on the FX-80, then, is:

```
CHR$(27)"K"CHR$(255)CHR$(7);
```

which is 255 dots plus 7 times 256 dots . . . for a total of 2047 dots per row. On the FX-100, you can reserve 255 plus 12 times 256 . . . for a total of 3327 dots per row.

But on a Single-Density print line you can only fit 480 dots.

For now, we'll stick with Single-Density, which means that we won't use numbers over 480. Later we'll see that the FX does have Graphics Modes of greater density.

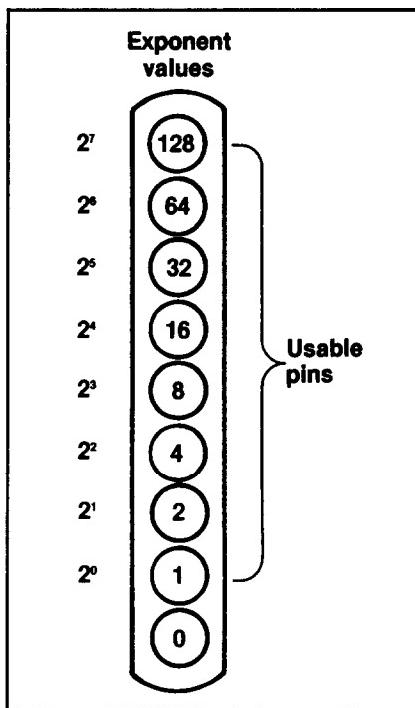
Some systems, such as those for the IBM-PC and the Epson QX-10, also require WIDTH statements for longer lines. See your system documentation.

## Pin Labels

Once you put the printer into Graphics Mode, your next step is to tell the print head which pins to fire at each new position. You do this by sending numbers via the CHR\$ function. Each number that you send represents a unique combination of pins.

You might expect that the eight pins would be numbered 1 through 8 (as they are in Figure 10-1). But that won't work because you are going to send one number to represent all the pins to fire in one column. Using the 1-through-8 system, you would send such a total as 10 and the FX wouldn't know if this meant pins 4 and 6 or pins 2,3, and 5.

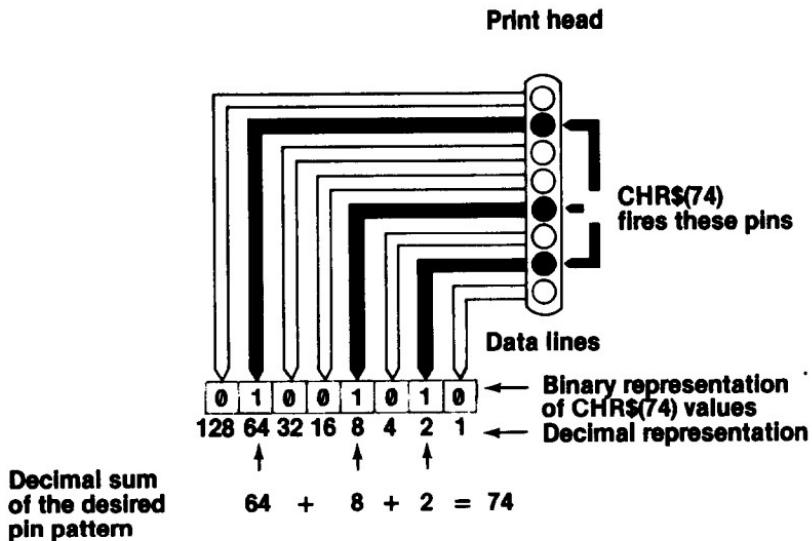
Since computers use the binary numbering system (0s and 1s only), it is most efficient for each pin to correspond to the decimal equivalent of one bit in an 8-bit binary number: 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, etc. (see Figure 10-3).



*Figure 70-3. Pins labelled uniquely*

The hardware makes this the most practical labelling system. Each pin corresponds to one of the eight data lines from the computer, and each data line corresponds to one bit in a binary number. The place values in a binary number are nothing more than the series made up of powers of two. Figure 10-4 shows how you use a decimal sum-74-to fire a particular pattern of pins.

If you try adding several sets of pins together, you'll see that with this system you get no duplicates. The number 6 represents pins 2 and 4 (since  $2 + 4 = 6$ ) and there is no other way to get 6 by adding powers of two. This means that any combination of the eight pins adds up to a unique decimal number which falls within the range 0 to 255.



**Figure 10-4. Pin combinations**

Now that you know the labels for the pins, how would you fire the top pin? Why, by sending LPRINT CHR\$(128), of course. And how about the bottom graphics pin? That's right, LPRINT CHR\$(l). If you wanted to fire only the top and bottom pins, you'd simply add 128 and one, then send LPRINT CHR\$(129). By adding the appropriate label numbers together, you can fire any combination of pins you want.

Now you can see why not being able to send an ASCII code above 127 is the same as not being able to fire the top pin.

## First Graphics Programs

The next few exercises show you what you can do by printing with one pin per column. That may sound simple, but with one pin at a time you can create interesting figures; you move from a straight line to a slash, a large caret, a wave pattern, and finally to a diamond pattern.

In the programs that follow (except the first), we shorten the process of specifying pins by using the fact that their labels represent powers of two. (Refer back to Figure 10-3 to refresh your memory about the relationship of ordinal numbers to powers of two and the exponential labels for the pins.) We use the caret (^) to represent exponentiation; for example,  $2^6$  means raise two to the sixth power. Some computer systems use, instead of a caret, an up-arrow (t), which prints as a left bracket (l) on the FX.

## Straight line

Your first testing of the FX's graphics potential will consist of firing the bottom graphics pin. Enter and RUN this program (be careful to include the semicolons):

```
NEW
10 LPRINT CHR$(27) "K"CHR$(100)CHR$(0);
20 FOR X=1 TO 100
30 LPRINT CHR$(1);
40 NEXT X
50 LPRINT
```

---

If your system won't send CHR\$(0), use CHR\$(8).

This program deserves a full discussion:

Line 10 prepares the printer to accept 100 columns of graphics data.

Line 20 starts a loop for the LPRINT statement. Note that the loop must match the number of columns specified in line 10. The printer is expecting 100 bytes of data; it interprets everything it receives as graphics data until this quota is filled.

Line 30 sends a one to fire the bottom graphics pin. The semicolon at the end of the line is necessary to suppress the carriage return and line feed (ASCII 13 and 10), because otherwise they are sent automatically at the end of each LPRINT line. Without that semicolon, the printer would receive the sequence 1,13,10,1,13,10 . . . instead of l,l,l,l.

Line 40 completes the loop.

Line 50 doesn't print anything-it just forces a carriage return at the end of the print line, overriding the semicolon of line 30. Forcing the carriage return is not really necessary since the line is the last one of this program. It's just a good habit to develop.

Notice that the printer doesn't print each time it receives a CHR\$(l). The FX stores data in its print buffer until it receives as many numbers as it expects-in this case, 100.

## Slash

Using the form  $2^X$ , you can fire individual pins by letting X vary between 0 and 7 (0 and 6 for 7-bit systems). Here's how it works. To exercise the pins in a pattern (a slash) that shows off their placement, enter:

```
NEW
40 LPRINT CHR$(27)"K"CHR$(7)CHR$(0);
80 FOR X=0 TO 6
110 LPRINT CHR$(2^X);
120 NEXT X
```

When X equals 0, $2^X$  is 1-so the bottom graphics pin is fired. When X equals 1, $2^X$  is 2--so the second pin is fired. This pattern continues right up through X equals 6, which fires the seventh pin. We purposely omit X equals 7 to accommodate systems that are limited to 7 bits.

## Large caret

The next step is to change the direction of the slash. Can you guess how it's done? Sure, just reverse the order of the exponents, and the same routine can be used. In fact, let's turn it into a subroutine:

```
10 F=0
40 LPRINT CHR$(27)"K"CHR$(14)CHR$(@);
50 GOSUB 80: F=1: GOSUB 80
70 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
80 FOR X=0 TO 6
90 N=X: IF F=1 THEN N=6-X
```

```
110 LPRINT CHR$(2^N);
120 NEXT X: RETURN
```



On the first pass of the loop (line 10), N equals X and the exponents increase in order from 0 to 6. The second time the routine is called, N equals 6 minus X, which reverses the order (from 6 down to 0). The flag F of line 50 activates the change of direction, and line 90 reflects the value for the exponent.

This two-directional slash routine can be repeated indefinitely. For an interesting variation, alternate the direction of the slashes each time a pair is printed by changing the flag F in line 50:

```
20 FOR L=1 TO 2
30 FOR J=0 TO 9
50 GOSUB 80: F=1-F: GOSUB 80
60 NEXT J: LPRINT: NEXT L
```



In this version of the program, Line 50 makes F alternate between zero and one. The J loop repeats pairs of diagonals on one line, while the L loop adds a second line.

## Wave pattern

For most graphics programs, you'll want to change from the normal 12-dot line spacing to 7-dot-or 8-dot spacing if you can use the top pin. Add line 10 to make your listing look like this:

```
10 F=0: LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"
20 FOR L=1 TO 2
30 FOR J=0 TO 9
40 LPRINT CHR$(27)"K"CHR$(14)CHR$(0);
50 GOSUB 80: F=1-F: GOSUB 80
60 NEXT J: LPRINT: NEXT L
70 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
80 FOR X=0 TO 6
90 N=X: IF F=1 THEN N=6-X
110 LPRINT CHR$(2^N);
120 NEXT X: RETURN
```



See what a big difference the line spacing makes? All of the multiple-line graphics programs in this manual use this line spacing.

## Diamond pattern

In this next and final version of the program, you exercise even more control over the slashes. This program varies not only their direction, but also their sizes (length and height) on the print line. Although the program still uses only one subroutine, it prints 24 different patterns, 12 on each of the 2 print lines. The differences in the patterns are achieved by IF-THEN tests in a subroutine.

To get the final listing, add line 100 and change lines 10, 30, 40, 50, 80, 90, and 120:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"
20 FOR L=1 TO 2
30 FOR J=0 TO 1
40 LPRINT CHR$(27)"K"CHR$(27)CHR$(@);
50 GOSUB 80
60 NEXT J: LPRINT: NEXT L
70 LPRINT CHR$(27)":" END
80 FOR X=1 TO 6: Y=X: IF J=1 THEN Y=7-X
90 FOR Z=0 TO Y: N=Z: IF J=1 THEN N=Y-Z
100 IF L=2 THEN N=7-N
110 LPRINT CHR$(2^N);
120 NEXT Z: NEXT X: RETURN
```



If you didn't watch the printing when you ran this program, the printout may not make it obvious that there are two lines of print—but there are. The first line prints slashes by moving from bottom to top and then from top to bottom, whereas the second line prints the slashes first from top to bottom and then from bottom to top.

And how do the IF-THEN statements fit into the picture? The one in line 80 changes the length of the slashes. The one in line 90 controls the direction and height. The IF-THEN in line 100 makes the bottom row a mirror image of the top.

## Summary

You enter Graphics Mode with the CHR\$(27)"K" CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>) CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) command. You determine the number of graphics columns by filling the two reservation slots, n<sub>1</sub> and n<sub>2</sub>. You fire your pin patterns by adding up the pin labels, which consist of powers of two.

Here is the command we introduced in this chapter:

CHR\$(27)"K"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>);

Enters Single-Density Graphics Mode and specifies width setting. Width = n<sub>1</sub>+256\*n<sub>2</sub>, where n<sub>1</sub> is 0 - 255 and n<sub>2</sub> is 0 - 7 on the FX-80 and 0 - 12 on the FX-100

Note: Single-Density graphics dots are printed 60 per inch horizontally and 72 per inch vertically.

# **Chapter 11**

## **Varieties of Graphics Density**

We introduced you to FX graphics by having you use Single-Density Graphics Mode and a single pin per column. In this chapter we cover six more graphics densities and provide examples of designs that use pin combinations. We also offer you several tips for programming graphics.

### **Graphics Programming Tips**

Let's start with a program that fires the four low graphics pins in each column. Since these pins are labelled 1,2,4, and 8, and since the sum of these four labels is 15, send a CHR\$(15) to the printer:

```
NEW
20 A$=CHR$(27)+"K"+CHR$(100)+CHR$(0)
30 B$=CHR$(15)
40 LPRINT A$;: FOR X=1 TO 100: LPRINT B$;: NEXT X
80 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
```

---

Sure enough, CHR\$(15) fires the four low pins.

This is basically the same program as the one you used to print the first slash in the last chapter, but we've added a new wrinkle. We have you store the concatenated string for entering Single-Density Graphics Mode in the variable A\$ and the string for data in B\$. The first variable makes it easy to enter a Graphics Mode several times in one program, and the second, to send data repeatedly.

## **Graphics and the Reset Code**

You may have wondered about the semicolon we had you place after the BS in line 40 . If this line were text rather than graphics data, this semicolon would cause the text and the Reset Code (CHR\$(27) "@") in line 80 to be placed in the same text buffer and consequently the Reset Code would wipe the text out. This doesn't happen with the graphics command and its data because the CHR\$(27) "K" command itself dumps everything from the buffer to the printer. By the time the Reset Code makes its appearance, both the command and its data are gone.

To see this in action, add a line to your program:

```
50 INPUT A
```

The INPUT causes the program run to pause for you to see that the graphics design is printed before the program reaches the Reset Code in line 80 . To let the program finish, press your carriage-return key.

There's an important correlation to note. Anything that was in the buffer prior to the graphics string remains unscathed, and anything left behind is erased. To verify this, make these changes in your program:

```
35 LPRINT "PROTECTED TEXT";  
50 LPRINT "THIS WILL NOT PRINT";
```

and RUN it once.

PROTECTED TEXT.....

In general, you need to remember that the Reset Code doesn't affect graphics data, but it may affect companion text.

## **Graphics and low ASCII codes**

Sending the codes between zero and 31 from BASIC can be a problem when you are printing graphics just as it is when you are printing text. The problem again is that most computer systems handle some of these codes in a special way instead of delivering them to the printer.

For example, one computer system handles form feeds by itself. It counts lines to keep track of the top of form. If a program sends the CHR\$ command with the number that ASCII designates as the code

for form feed-CHR\$(12)-to the printer, the computer system intercepts it and sends instead a series of line feeds-CHR\$(10). It does this whether the CHR\$ commands represent true commands, parameters for commands, or data. It screens out all instances of its reserved numbers. You can see how this could upset the printing of graphics. In this example, you would get pins 2 and 4 (whose sum is 10) when you wanted pins 3 and 4 (whose sum is 12).

Does this mean that if your computer system transmutes some control codes, you can't use the pin patterns of those numbers in your graphics programs? Well . . . yes, it does. At least, not via the usual CHR\$ function. But you can often design around these problems by using other numbers with similar patterns, or you can POKE the trouble codes directly to the FX. Learning how to cope with these problems is part of learning how to use the printer with your system. See Appendix F for help.

## Density Varieties

The FX printer offers you the 16 text densities that we printed out as Figure 5-2, and seven graphics density settings that we list later in this chapter (Table 11-1). Remember that you can choose a text density by specifying it in the Master Select ESCape code sequence, and that you can switch densities later by changing one parameter in that code.

The FX has a similar command sequence for specifying and changing modes for its graphics densities. Here is the commands format:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)*CHR$(m)CHR$(n1)CHR$(n2);
```

where m indicates the number (0 - 6) of the desired Graphics Mode, and the settings n<sub>1</sub>and n<sub>2</sub>are the usual graphics width settings. The seven modes include six densities and the two speeds for Double-Density.

Before you try out any of the new graphics density settings, record a sample line of Single-Density. To do so, enter this new program:

```
20 A$=CHR$(27)+"*"+CHR$(0)+CHR$(50)+CHR$(0)
30 B$=CHR$(85)+CHR$(42)
40 LPRINT A$;: FOR X=1 TO 25: LPRINT B$;: NEXT X
50 LPRINT "J&SINGLE-DENSITY GRAPHICS ";
60 LPRINT A$;: FOR X=1 TO 25: LPRINT B$;: NEXT X
70 LPRINT
80 LPRINT CHR$(27)"@"
```

SINGLE-DENSITY GRAPHICS

The printer fires pins 1, 3, 5, and 7 (with the respective exponential values of 1, 4, 16, and 64) in the first column and pins 2, 4, and 6 (exponential values 2, 8, and 32) in the second. And it alternates that sequence for 50 columns-50 columns in Single-Density.

This program also mixes graphics and text on one line. It does that by using semicolons to keep both kinds of output on the same print line.

## High-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode

Now let's print the same pattern in twice the normal (Single) density. Change the first 0 in line 20 to a 2 and retype the text in line 50 as shown below:

```
28 A$=CHR$(27)+"*"+CHR$(2)+CHR$(50)+CHR$(0)
50 LPRINT " HIGH-SPEED DOUBLE-DENSITY GRAPHICS ";
```

If your computer system requires a WIDTH statement to prevent the printer from issuing a carriage return before the graphics line is complete, add it now:

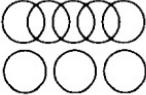
7 WIDTH LPRINT 255

The format for this statement may be different for your BASIC; see your software documentation.

**HIGH-SPEED** **DOUBLE-DENSITY** **GRAPHICS**

The program still prints 50 columns of dots, but now it presses them together and prints them in half the space. They print at the same speed as in Single-Density Graphics.

This High-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode has one drawback. Because the dots are so closely packed, two dots in the same row cannot appear in two consecutive columns. In the above program we avoided the problem by never calling up one dot twice in succession. If you try to print two consecutive dots, the printer simply ignores the second one (see Figure 11-1).

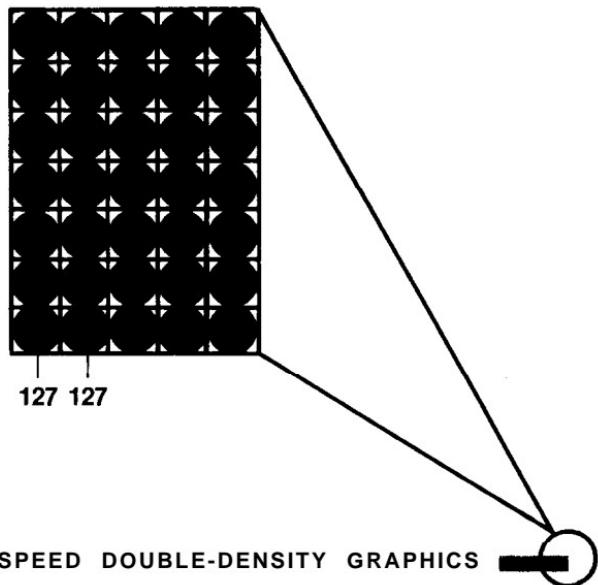
Pattern		(Overlapping dots)
Prints as		In double-density mode at High Speed

**Figure 11-1. High-Speed Double-Density dots**

To check this out, change the pin patterns in line 30 from 85 to 127, the sum of the labels for pins 1 through 7:

```
30 B$=CHR$(127)+CHR$(42)
```

As Figure 11-2 shows, the repeated dots, the ones called for by the CHR\$(42)-pins 2, 4, and 6-are not printed at all. The print head is moving too fast to retract the pins and then instantly fire them again, so the FX's program suppresses them.



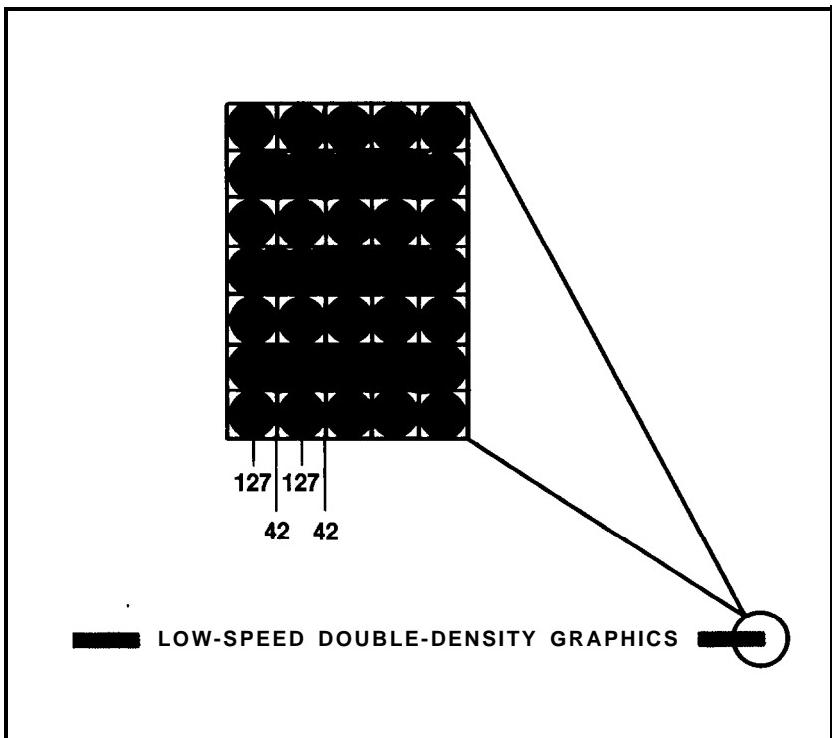
**Figure 11-2. No overlapping dots**

## Low-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode

Ah, but the FX has a special print mode to take care of this very problem. It's called the Low-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode. Change the 2 of line 20 to a 1 and change the text in line 50 once more:

```
20 A$=CHR$(27)+"*"+CHR$(1)+CHR$(50)+CHR$(0)  
50 LPRINT "PLOW-SPEED DOUBLE-DENSITY GRAPHICS ";
```

Take note of the print speed when you RUN your program this time. It's the same density as the previous mode, but printed at half the speed. As you can see in Figure 11-3 or from looking very carefully at your printout, this time the CHR\$(42) columns are printed as requested.



*Figure 11-3. Overlapping dots*

## Quadruple-Density Graphics Mode

The FX also gives you the ability to print dots four times as densely as in Single-Density. Change the 1 line 20 to a 3 and lines 30 and 50 to read:

```
20 A$=CHR$(27)+"*"+CHR$(3)+CHR$(50)+CHR$(0)
30 B$=CHR$(85)+CHR$(42)
50 LPRINT " QUADRUPLE-DENSITY GRAPHICS ";
```

### ■ QUADRUPLE-DENSITY GRAPHICS ■

In Quadruple-Density Graphics Mode, any FX can print 480 times 4 (or 1920) columns of dots on a single 8-inch line and the FX-100 can print 816 times 4 (or 3264) columns on a 13.6-inch line. The graphics setting required to fill an entire &inch line in this mode is  $n_1$  equals 128 and  $n_2$  equals seven (since 7 times 256 plus 128 equals 1920).

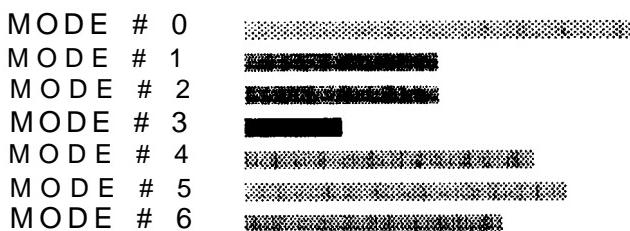
At this density the same limitation as for High-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode applies—you can't print two adjacent dots in the same row.

## More densities

Yes, there are more densities. Besides the three graphics densities we've covered so far (Single, Double, and Quadruple), the FX can print in two graphics densities that match the screen densities of two types of CRTs. One of these may allow you to develop designs and then print them in the same weight. Additionally, the FX can simulate the density that plotters use—called one-to-one aspect ratio. This mode prints the same density horizontally as vertically, 72 dots per inch each way, which allows you to print true circles.

You can print a sample of all the modes with the following program:

```
10 FOR M=0 TO 6
20 A$=CHR$(27)+"*"+CHR$(M)+CHR$(120)+CHR$(0)
30 B$=CHR$(85)+CHR$(42)
50 LPRINT "MODE # ";M;"   ";
60 LPRINT A$;: FOR X=1 TO 60: LPRINT B$;: NEXT X
70 LPRINT: NEXT M
80 LPRINT CHR$(27)"@"
```



**Figure 11-4. Seven density modes**

Figure 11-4 displays all seven of the FX modes that affect graphics density. Table 11-1 describes them.

## More Graphics Programming Tips

The next two sections discuss two modes that the FX offers to help you solve potential graphics problems. A reassigning code allows you to change the density for graphics programs that use one of the four alternate codes. The 9-pin Graphics Mode allows you to use all nine pins on each line and thus speed up screen dumps.

### Reassigning alternate graphics codes

The FX provides a command to reassign one of the alternate graphics codes-K, L, Y, or Z-so that it represents any other of the seven Graphics Modes. The command and its format are:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27) "?s"CHR(n);
```

where s is one of the four symbols, K, L, Y, or Z, and n is one of the numbers used with the ESCape " \*\*" command, 0 to 6. There are several instances in which you may use this sequence.

The first occurs if you have written a program to be printed in one Graphics Mode and now want to print it in another. If you have used concatenation to store your Graphics command strings in one short character string, that will not be difficult. You can simply change the mode number or alternate code in the definition of the character string.

In the program for Figure 11-4, for example, you did this in line 20 by storing the Graphics Mode command sequence in A\$ and making

**Table 11-1. Graphics Modes**

Mode Density	Alternate code	Description	Head speed (in./sec.)
0 Single	CHR\$(27)"K"	60 dots per inch; 480 dots per 8" line 816 dots per 13.6" line	16
1 Low-Speed Double	CHR\$(27)"L"	120 dots per inch; 960 dots per 8" line 1632 dots per 13.6" line	8
2 High-Speed Double	CHR\$(27)"Y"	Same density as Mode 1, but faster. The printer does not print consecutive dots in any one row.	16
3 Quadruple	CHR\$(27)"Z"	240 dots per inch; 1920 dots per 8" line; 3264 dots per 13.6" line The printer does not print consecutive dots in any one row.	8
4 Epson QX-10	none	Matches the screen density of the QX-10: 80 dots per inch; 640 dots per 8" line; 1088 dots per 13.6" line. (This makes it easy to do screen dumps.)	8
5 One-to-one (plotter)	none	72 dots per inch 576 dots per 8" line; 979 dots per 13.6" line. Produces the same density horizontally as vertically, which makes circles look round.	12
6 Other CRT screens	none	90 dots per inch; 720 dots per 8" line; 1224 dots per 13.6" line Matches the Corvus Concept™ and DEC® screens.	8

the mode number a variable, M. As M varied, so did the graphics density. It was your use of the "\*" command that allowed you to use the variable.

Suppose you had used the " K " command instead. You could use the reassigning code to make it work as though it were " \* ". To see this work, enter the following lines for your current program:

```
15 LPRINT CHR$(27)?"K"CHR$(M);
20 A$=CHR$(27)+"K"+CHR$(120)+CHR$(0)
```

You should get another printout of Figure 11-4.

A second time you can make good use of the reassigning code occurs when you want to change a program in which you have not concatenated the graphics codes. Using the "?" sequence allows you to change every instance of your graphics command by entering only one line.

A third type of use occurs when you want to use a program developed for a different model of Epson printer. Suppose you have a program for circles written for an MX that uses Double-Density-the "L" variety-and you want to refine it by switching to the one-to-one aspect ratio. In this case, you would use the following line at the beginning of your program:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27) "?L"CHR$(5);
```

and the FX will do the rest.

## Nine-Pin Graphics Mode

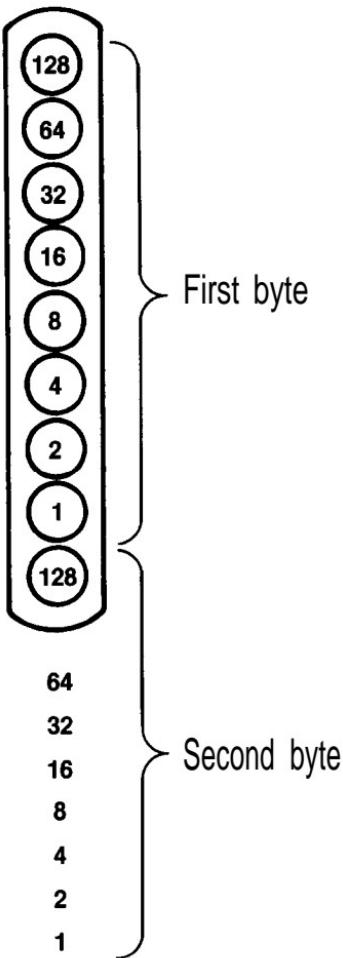
Recall that in the last chapter we said that the bottom (zero) pin of the print head is not normally used in the Graphics Modes. That's because most microcomputers communicate with parallel-type peripheral devices using eight data lines (even if they have 16-bit processors). When the peripheral is a printer, each data line corresponds to one pin on the print head. Thus each byte sent will fire up to eight pins.

But the printer has 9 pins available. So how do you fire the ninth pin with only 8 data lines? In fact, do you really want to bother with just one extra pin? Well, for such graphics-intensive applications as screen dumps, printing 9 pins at a time can speed up the process considerably. For this purpose, the FX has a special 9-Pin Graphics Mode (it won't, however, work with 7-bit computer systems). In this mode the printer takes 2 bytes to fire all 9 pins-as shown in Figure 11-5.

Since computers are faster than printers, there is no significant time loss in printing a single line of graphics with 9 pins. You get 9 dots per line in about the same time as you get 8 dots in the other Graphics Modes. Not a bad deal.

The format for entering 9-Pin Graphics Mode is:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27) "^"CHR$(d)CHR$(n1)CHR$(n2);
```



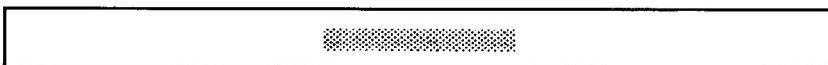
**Figure 11-5. Nine-pin usage**

(Use CHR\$(94) if you can't generate the caret symbol (^) from your system.) The d determines the density of the graphics: d set to 0 produces Single-Density; d set to 1 produces Double-Density.

In this format,  $n_1$  and  $n_2$  represent the usual width settings, but each print pattern requires two bytes (instead of one). This means that when you want to print 60 columns of graphics, you must send 120 data bytes.

Firing 9 pins with 8 data lines is just a shade more difficult than firing 7 or 8 pins. It takes 2 bytes to define each 9-dot pin pattern: the first byte determines the pattern of the top 8 pins in the usual way and only the top bit of the second byte is used. Thus any second byte of 128 or greater fires the bottom pin of the print head; anything less does not. Try this sample program:

```
20 A$=CHR$(27)+CHR$(94)+CHR$(0)+CHR$(60)+CHR$(0)
30 B$=CHR$(85)+CHR$(0)+CHR$(170)+CHR$(128)
60 LPRINT A$;: FOR X=1 TO 30: LPRINT B$;: NEXT X
80 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
```



*Figure 11-6. Printout using bottom pin*

Compare this with the densities in Figure 11-4 (this one is Single-Density). Look closely at Figure 11-6; you'll see that the bottom pin prints in every other column. If you want to see Double-Density, change the first 0 of line 20 to a 1. For fans of 9-Pin Graphics, the CHR\$(27)"0" line spacing is ideal: it sets the line spacing to 9/72-inch (9-dot).

## Pin Combination Patterns

The next phase in printing graphics is to arrange pin firing sequences into meaningful designs. Figure 11-7 shows how you might design a dot pattern on graph paper.

In Figure 11-7, we show on the side of the figure the pin labels for each row of dots. At the bottom of each column we show the sum of those labels. These sums are the numbers you send to print this pattern.

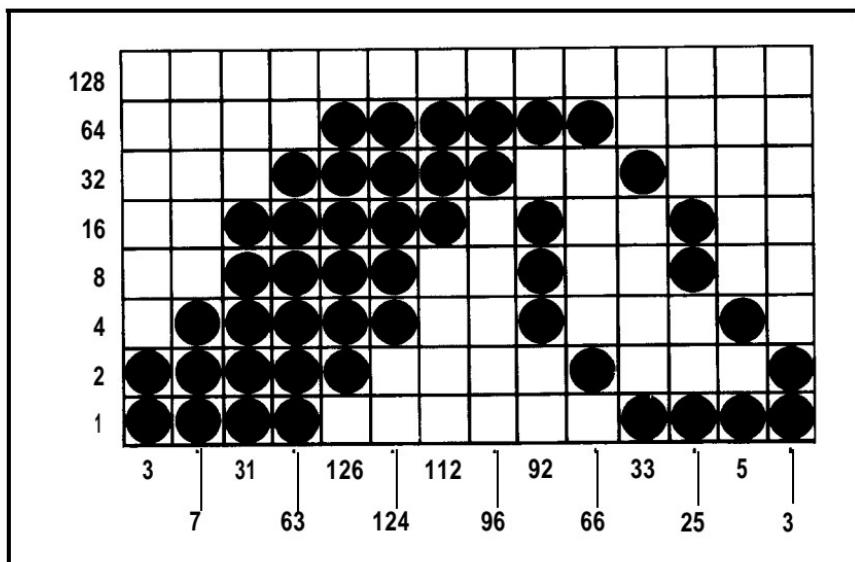
Once you've calculated the numbers for a pin pattern, you can store them in DATA statements. You separate items in a DATA statement with commas. A program reads these items from the DATA statement into variables with a READ statement.

Now begin a new program with a READ statement and the values for the pattern of Figure 11-7. Enter the following lines, but don't RUN the program yet.

```
50 READ N  
90 DATA 3,7,31,63,126,124,112,96,92,66,33,25,5,3
```

Line 50 reads the first data number into the variable N. To read the rest of the numbers, line **50** must be executed in a loop. Add these lines to the program:

```
20 A$=CHR$(27)+"K"+CHR$(14)+CHR$(0)  
30 LPRINT A$;
```



*Figure 11-7. Curling design*

```
40 FOR X=1 TO 14  
60 LPRINT CHR$(N);  
70 NEXT X  
80 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
```

Perfect! Just like the design.

## Repeated patterns

Now how would you go about repeating this pattern-add more data? Or store the data in program variables to be recalled as needed? Here you don't need to go to that much trouble. For simple programs

like this one, you can just get the program to reread one set of data by using a RESTORE statement. To see this, change two lines and then RUN the program:

```
30 FOR Y=1 TO 10: RESTORE: LPRINT A$;  
70 NEXT X: NEXT Y
```

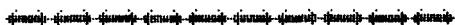


Although the new loop in line 30 repeats the pattern 10 times, you don't need 10 repetitions of the DATA statements. The RESTORE statement in line 30 tells the program to read the same data again. If you use it carefully, the RESTORE statement can reduce the amount of data that you need to type in for a graphics pattern.

### Repeated DATA numbers

Sometimes you will want to repeat the same DATA number several times in succession. Here's a change that gives an instance:

```
90 DATA 8,28,62,93,28,28,28,28,28,28,93,62,28,8
```



At the center of this program line you fire the middle three pins-with CHRS(28)-six times in succession. Six 28s was boring enough to type. Can you imagine typing the data for 20 or 50 repetitions of the same number? There has to be a-better way-and there is.

You can enter the number of repetitions right into the DATA lines, coded as a negative number. Then change the READ routine to test for a negative number. When the program reads a negative number, it transfers control to a special subroutine that does the repeating. (Or you could use a STRING\$ statement.)

Change lines 50 and 90, and add lines 100, 110, and 120 so that your listing looks like this:

```
20 A$=CHR$(27)+"K"+CHR$(14)+CHR$(0)  
30 FOR Y=1 TO 10: RESTORE: LPRINT A$;  
40 FOR X=1 TO 14  
50 READ N: IF N<0 THEN 100  
60 LPRINT CHR$(N);  
70 NEXT X: NEXT Y
```

```
80 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
90 DATA 8,28,62,93,-6,28,93,62,28,8
100 READ R: FOR J=1 TO -N
110 LPRINT CHR$(R);: NEXT J
120 X=X-N-1: GOT0 70
```

RUN it again. Same arrow pattern, right? And with less data. The number of repetitions (6) is entered into the DATA line as a negative number that is followed by the pattern (28) to be repeated. Yet even with this short cut, graphics designs do require that you plan and enter lots of data. In the next few chapters, we'll show you more ways to take advantage of design patterns to reduce the amount of data needed.

## Summary

We began this chapter by adding up pin labels and using the total to fire four graphics pins at one time. We changed that program to show that the Reset Code does not affect either graphics commands or data. And we commented on problems that may arise from software interfacing when you try to send codes that represent added-up pin labels.

After this general discussion, we introduced two new graphics densities that have specific commands. You can print Double-Density at one of two speeds: 160 cps (High) and 80 cps (Low). The second of these modes, Quadruple Density, prints only at Low.

We then introduced a new single command with which you can access any one of the seven FX graphics modes; Table 11-1 summarizes them.

Here are the commands that we introduced in this chapter:

CHR\$(27) "\*" CHR\$(m)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)

Enters Variable-Density Graphics Mode and specifies a mode and the width setting, where m is mode 0 - 6. Width = n<sub>1</sub> + (256\*n<sub>2</sub>), where n<sub>1</sub> is 0 - 255 and n<sub>2</sub> is 0 - 7

CHR\$(27)"Y"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)

Enters High-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode and specifies the width setting. Width = n<sub>1</sub> + (256\*n<sub>2</sub>), where n<sub>1</sub> is 0 - 255 and n<sub>2</sub> is 0 - 7

**CHR\$(27)“L”CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)**

Enters Low-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode and specifies the width setting. Width = n<sub>1</sub> + (256\*n<sub>2</sub>), where n<sub>1</sub> is 0 - 255 and n<sub>2</sub> is 0 - 7

**CHR\$(27)“Z”CHR!\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)**

Enters Quadruple-Speed Graphics Mode and specifies the width setting. Width = n<sub>1</sub> + (256\*n<sub>2</sub>), where n<sub>1</sub> is 0 - 255 and n<sub>2</sub> is 0 - 7

**CHR\$(27)“?s”CHR\$(n)**

Reassigns an alternate code to a new code number so that it produces a different Graphics Mode, where s is the sequence letter K, L, Y, or Z and n is 0 - 6

**CHR\$(27) “^” CHR\$(d)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)**

Enters 9-Pin Graphics Mode and specifies the width setting, where d is 0 for Single-Density and 1 for Double-Density. Width = n<sub>1</sub> + (256\*n<sub>2</sub>), where n<sub>1</sub> is 0 - 255 and n<sub>2</sub> is 0 - 7

# **Chapter 12**

## **Design Your Own Graphics**

In this chapter we take you through the development of two graphics programs, from design to implementation. The two programs use entirely different techniques. The first program uses a method of storing and recalling data similar to that of the curling program in the last chapter. You store pin patterns and their repetition factors in DATA statements to produce a pattern that is suitable as a logo.

The second program does not read pin patterns from DATA statements at all. Instead, you code the few necessary pin patterns into the program as constants. You do store values in DATA lines to control the number of times each pattern is to be repeated.

These examples show how easy it is to create high-resolution dot graphics on your FX. We hope they inspire you to include graphics in your own programs.

### **Planning Process**

It should be apparent by now that printing high-resolution images requires careful planning and lots of data. Programs available for some computers enable users to draw figures on the screen, then echo them to the printer. Without such a program, there really is no quick and easy way to calculate the data required for pin patterns.

Once you have a design, you can usually plan your graphics program most easily by following these steps:

1. Plot the design, dot by dot, on graph paper.

2. Translate the dots into their appropriate pin numbers, seven or eight rows (depending on your computer system's capability) at a time.
3. Figure out the easiest way to send those numbers to the printer.

Once you get the hang of it, the whole process is easy. It does require some patience, but sometimes, when regular patterns form your designs, you can use the computer to do most of the tedious work. It can calculate the pin patterns.

Follow the development of the programs in this chapter, then get yourself some graph paper and a pencil and have a good time.

## STRATA Program

This program prints (in Double-Density Graphics Mode) a sample logo that will be used again in Chapter 17. As shown in Figure 12-1, we drew the design on graph paper, using six horizontal rows consisting of 7 vertical dots to correspond to the 7-dot line spacing we will use. Each of these rows corresponds to one pass of the print head, making it easier to calculate the pin patterns.

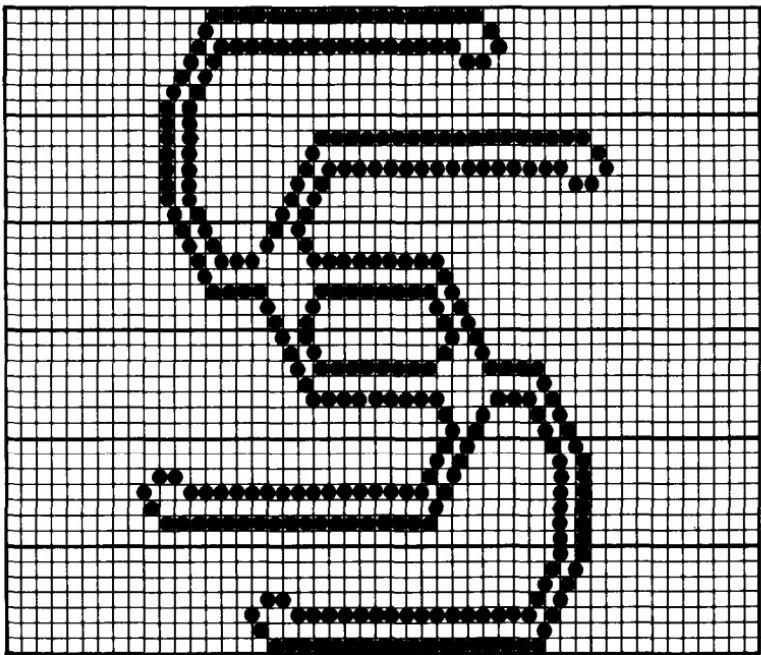
Here is the DATA line for the first row. Be sure to enter the line numbers exactly as shown. Type:

```
NEW  
800 DATA 0,1,2,4,11,18,36,72,-16,16,  
64,8,64,8,32,16,0,-7,0,0,128
```

The program's handling of the data is fairly straightforward. In most cases, the program merely reads a number and sends it to the printer. To make this happen, add three lines:

```
610 READ N: IF N=128 THEN 650  
620 IF N>=0 THEN LPRINT CHR$(N);: GOTO 610  
650 LPRINT
```

Since 127 is the largest number that can fire seven pins, you will place a 128 at the end of each DATA line as a "stopper" number to signal the end of the print line. Line 610 tests for a stopper. When it reads an N of 128, it passes control to line 650, which produces the necessary line feed. This makes line 650 the only exit from the continuous loop.



**Figure 12-1. STRATA layout**

In most cases the program reads a number greater than or equal to zero and sends it to the printer (line 620). Control then returns to line 610, which reads the next number.

If N is negative, the program bypasses the LPRINT **in** line 620 and goes on to line 630. Negative numbers in the DATA lines represent repeat factors as they did in the last chapter, but the repeat routine is slightly different. This program repeats numbers in pairs:

```
630 READ P,R: FOR J=1 TO -N:  
    LPRINT CHR$(P)CHR$(R);: NEXT J  
640 GOTO 610
```

For example, when the negative 16 in line 800 is read into N, control passes to line 630. Line 630 reads the next two numbers (16 and 64) into P and R and prints them 16 times. Control then returns to line 610, which reads the next number.

There's only one thing left to do before you can print the first line-enter a Graphics Mode:

```
600 LPRINT CHR$(27)"L"CHR$(60)CHR$(0);
```

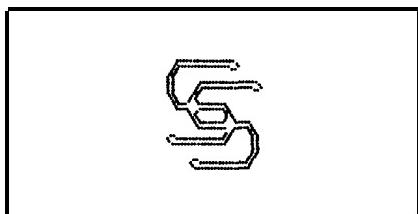
Now RUN the program.



That's a good start. To complete the program, add 7-dot line spacing, a loop to process the last five lines of data, and the data lines:

```
100 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"
590 FOR K=1 TO 6
650 LPRINT: NEXT K: LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
799 ' <<< LOGO DATA >>>
810 DATA 0,126,1,0,126,1,-5,0,0,1,2,4,11,
     18,36,-16,8,32,4,32,4,16,8,0,128
820 DATA 0,0,0,64,32,16,72,36,-3,16,4,34,
     65,0,0,65,34,-8,16,4,18,11,4,2,1,0,-9,0,0,128
839 DATA -8,0,0,64,32,16,72,36,16,-7,
     4,16,36,65,0,0,1,66,36,16,-3,4,16,4,18,11,4,2,1,
     -2,0,0,128
840 DATA 0,32,16,64,8,64,-15,8,32,72,16,32,64,-6,
     0,0,0,127,0,0,127,0,0,0,128
850 DATA -7,0,0,0,8,4,16,2,16,-15,
     2,8,18,36,72,16,32,64,-2,0,0,128
```

Now RUN the STRATA program.



**Figure 12-2. STRATA logo**

And there you have it . . . Figure 12-2 , a genuine logo that you could use on all types of business printouts. If your printout doesn't match this, print a listing and check it against Figure 12-3 .

```

100 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"
590 FOR K=1 TO 6
600 LPRINT CHR$(27)"L"CHR$(60)CHR$(0);
610 READ N: IF N=128 THEN 650
620 IF N>=0 THEN LPRINT CHR$(N);: GOTO 610
630 READ P,R: FOR J=1 TO -N:
      LPRINT CHR$(P)CHR$(R);: NEXT J
640 GOTO 610
650 LPRINT: NEXT K: LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
799 ' <<< LOGO DATA >>>
800 DATA 0,1,2,4,11,18,36,72,-16,16,
64,8,64,8,32,16,0,-7,0,0,128
810 DATA 0,126,1,0,126,1,-5,0,0,1,2,4,11,
     18,36,-16,8,32,4,32,4,16,8,0,128
820 DATA 0,0,0,64,32,16,72,36,-3,16,4,34,
65,0,0,65,34,-8,16,4,18,11,4,2,1,0,-9,0,0,123
830 DATA -8,0,0,64,32,16,72,36,16,-7,
4,16,36,65,0,0,1,66,36,16,-3,
     4,16,4,18,11,4,2,1,-2,0,0,128
840 DATA 0,32,16,64,8,64,-15,8,32,72,16,32,64,-6,
0,0,0,127,0,0,127,0,0,0,128
850 DATA -7,0,0,0,8,4,16,2,16,-15,
     2,8,18,36,72,16,32,64,-2,0,0,128

```

*Figure 12-3. STRATA program*

We have you use this logo as part of a larger program in Chapter 17.

## Three-Dimensional Program

Using a little imagination and creativity, you can do a lot with dot graphics. Take a look at the three-dimensional design of Figure 12-4, which spells out the name of your favorite printer.

In this section we work through an FX-80 design; if you own an FX-100, do not think that we have forgotten you. As we go along we note which lines will differ for you, and at the close of the section we show you a complete FX-100 program.

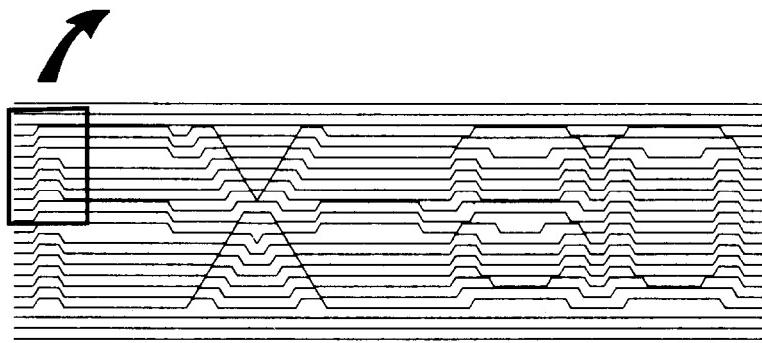
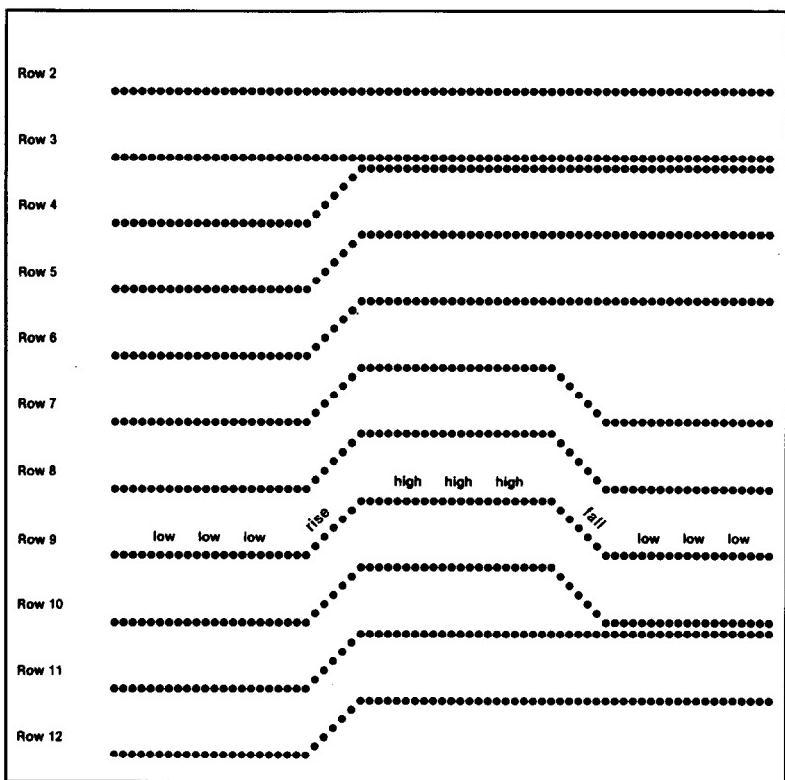


Figure 12-4. Corner of the FX-80 design

A very few pin patterns are needed for this program. In fact, each "pattern" consists of only one pin, making the numbers easy to calculate:

1 for the low pin  
64 for the high pin  
1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64 for the diagonal rise  
64, 32, 16, 8, 4, 2, 1 for the diagonal fall

As you will see in the next few pages, these pin patterns are coded right into the program. You'll only need to store as data the number of repetitions for the low and high sections.

A close look at Figure 12-4 reveals that most of the lines can be produced by repeating a 4-step pattern:

1. Fire the bottom pin (pin 1), repeat L times.
2. Draw a diagonal rise (pins 1 - 64).
3. Fire the top pin (pin 64), repeat H times.
4. Draw a diagonal fall (pins 64 - 1).

This pattern is repeated several times. Printing the figure is mainly a matter of reading the length of the low and high sections, then printing the four-part cycle.

## First version of 3D program

We have you enter this program in portions that are easy to discuss as units, so please don't try to RUN it until we give the word.

Might as well start off with the easy stuff. Set the line spacing for 7-pin graphics:

```
NEW
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"
```

Note: If your system leaves gaps in 7-dot graphics printing, you will prefer to use the 6-2/3-dot line spacing, CHR\$(27) "3'CHR\$(20).

Next up are the three straight lines at the start of the design. There's no need for anything fancy-just a single dot printed across the page. For that, add these lines (lines 20 and 170 are different for the FX-100):

```
20 G$=CHR$(27)+"L"+CHR$(51)+CHR$(3): GOSUB 160
150 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
160 FOR X=1 TO 3:LPRINT G$;
```

```
170 FOR Y=1 TO 819: LPRINT CHR$(1);: NEXT Y  
180 LPRINT: NEXT X: RETURN
```

Now RUN the first trial:

---

---

Line 20 stores the graphics entry string in G\$. This produces Low-Speed Double-Density dots for 819 columns [ $51 + (3 \times 256) = 819$ ]. Line 170 fires the bottom graphics pin 819 times. The X loop (lines 160 and 180) repeats the routine to print the line three times.

Because you will use this line-printing routine (lines 160 - 180) again to print the bottom three lines of the figure, we have you set it aside as a subroutine. It is called by the GOSUB in line 20 and separated from the rest of the program by the END in line 150.

So far, so good! Now for the rest of the figure. The following lines control the four-step process:

```
80 FOR X=1 TO L: LPRINT CHR$(1);: NEXT X  
100 LPRINT CHR$(1)CHR$(2)CHR$(4)CHR$(8)  
     CHR$(16)CHR$(32)CHR$(64);  
110 FOR X=1 TO H: LPRINT CHR$(64);: NEXT X  
120 LPRINT CHR$(64)CHR$(32)CHR$(16)  
     CHR$(8)CHR$(4)CHR$(2)CHR$(1);
```

Lines 100 and 120 print the 7-dot rise and fall. The lengths of the low and high sections are stored in DATA statements, then read into the variables L and H. Line 80 prints the bottom pin L times; line 110 prints the top pin H times.

The next step is to add the READ portion of the program:

```
50 READ L,H  
60 L=L*7: H=H*7  
70 IF L=0 THEN 90  
90 IF H<0 THEN LPRINT: GOTO 150  
130 GOT0 50
```

Line 50 reads numbers from the data statements in pairs: the first is stored into L, the second into H. L and H are then each multiplied by seven; this extends the width of the figure without increasing the size of the data numbers. This enlargement factor must be the same as the number of dots in the rise and fall or the design will not line up properly.

If L is read as zero, line 70 causes the program to ignore line 80. This enables the printer to print the center portion of the X, where the diagonal fall meets the diagonal rise at a point and no low section is required.

Line 90 serves two purposes. It forces a line feed each time a negative number is read, and it skips the last three steps of the four-step cycle so that each print line can end on a low.

If your computer system requires a WIDTH statement to prevent the printer from issuing a carriage return before the graphics line is complete, add it now:

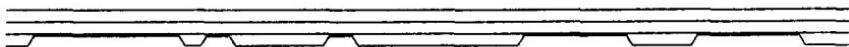
```
7 WIDTH LPRINT 255
```

The format for this statement may be different for your BASIC; see your software documentation.

To print the program with one line of data, add lines 40 and 190 (the latter differs for the FX-100):

```
40 LPRINT G$;  
190 DATA 3,20,2,3,12,3,22,14,8,14,6,-1
```

and RUN it.



The negative number at the end of line 190 signals the end of the print line.

The last program changes add a loop to print 17 lines and enter the data statements. (All the data lines differ slightly for the FX-100):

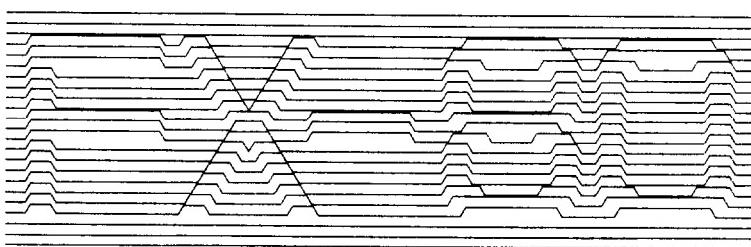
```
30 FOR D=1 TO 17: PRINT "ROw;D  
90 IF H<0 THEN LPRINT: GOT0 140  
140 NEXT D: GOSUB 160  
200 DATA 3,20,3,3,10,3,21,18,4,18,4,-1  
210 DATA 3,20,4,3,8,3,21,5,8,5,2,5,8,5,3,-1  
220 DATA 3,3,22,3,6,3,22,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1  
230 DATA 3,3,23,3,4,3,23,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1  
240 DATA 3,3,24,3,2,3,24,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1  
250 DATA 3,3,25,3,0,3,25,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1  
260 DATA 3,20,9,6,5,15,5,18,3,3,12,3,3,-1  
270 DATA 3,20,10,4,6,15,7,14,5,3,12,3,3,-1  
280 DATA 3,20,9,6,5,15,5,5,6,5,3,3,12,3,3,-1
```

```

290 DATA 3,3,25,3,0,3,25,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
300 DATA 3,3,24,3,2,3,24,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
310 DATA 3,3,23,3,4,3,23,3,12,3,2,3,1&3,3,-1
320 DATA 3,3,22,3,6,3,22,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
330 DATA 3,3,21,3,8,3,21,5,8,5,2,5,8,5,3,-1
340 DATA 3,3,20,3,10,3,21,18,4,18,4,-1
350 DATA 3,3,19,3,12,3,22,14,8,14,6,-1

```

Yes, indeed, high-resolution graphics does require a large amount of data. Okay, now RUN the program:



**Figure 12-S. FX-80 figure**

Success! In your printout (which should look like Figure 12-5), can you see the 3D effect of the letters? The modifications to follow will make the letters easier to read.

Type LLIST to see what you've got up to this point. It should match Figure 12-6. Figure 12-7 shows the printout and Figure 12-8 shows the listing for the FX-100.

```

7 WIDTH LPRINT 255
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"
20 G$=CHR$(27)+"L"+CHR$(51)+CHR$(3): GOSUB 160
30 FOR D=1 TO 17: PRINT "ROW";D
40 LPRINT G$;
50 READ L,H
60 L=L*7: H=H*7
70 IF L=0 THEN 90
80 FOR X=1 TO L: LPRINT CHR$(1);: NEXT X
90 IF H<0 LPRINT: GOTO 140

```

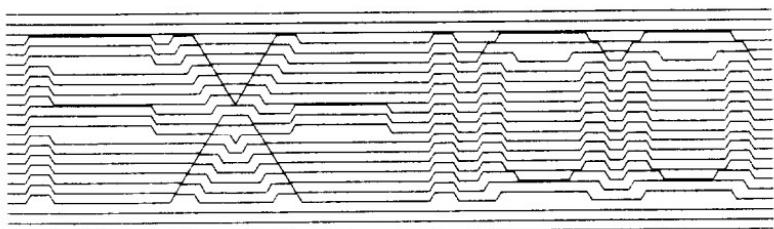
**Figure 12-6. Program for FX-80 figure**

```

100 LPRINT CHR$(1)CHR$(2)CHR$(4)CHR$(8)CHR$(16)
    CHR$(32)CHR$(64);
110 FOR X=1 TO H: LPRINT CHR$(64);: NEXT X
120 LPRINT CHR$(64)CHR$(32)CHR$(16)CRR$(8)CHR$(4)
    CHR$(2)CHR$(1);
130 GOTO 50
140 NEXT D: GOSUB 160
150 LPRINT CHR$(27)"@": END
160 FOR X=1 TO 3: LPRINT G$;
170 FOR Y=1 TO 819: LPRINT CHR$(1);: NEXT Y
180 LPRINT: NEXT X: RETURN
190 DATA 3,20,2,3,12,3,22,14,8,14,6,-1
200 DATA 3,20,3,3,10,3,21,18,4,18,4,-1
210 DATA 3,20,4,3,8,3,21,5 , 8 , 5 9 2 , 5 9 8 9 5 ) 3 2 -1
220 DATA 3,3,22,3,6,3,22,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
230 DATA 3,3,23,3,4,3,23,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
240 DATA 3,3,24,3,2,3,24,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
250 DATA 3,3,25,3,0,3,25,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
260 DATA 3,20,9,6,5,15,5,18,3,3,12,3,3,-1
270 DATA 3,20,10,4,6,15,7,14,5,3,12,3,3,-1
280 DATA 3,20,9,6,5,15,5,5,6,5,3,3,12,3,3,-1
290 DATA 3,3,25,3,0,3,25,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
300 DATA 3,3,24,3,2,3,24,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
310 DATA 3,3,23,3,4,3,23,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
320 DATA 3,3,22,3,6,3,22,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
330 DATA 3,3,21,3,8,3,21,5,8,5,2,5,8,5,3,-1
340 DATA 3,3,20,3,10,3,21,18,4,18,4,-1
350 DATA 3,3,19,3,12,3,22,14,8,14,6,-1

```

**Figure 72-6. Program for FX-80 figure (concluded)**



**Figure 12-7. FX-100 figure**

```

7 WIDTH LPRINT 255
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"
20 G$=CHR$(27)+"L"+CHR$(121)+CHR$(3): GOSUB 160
30 FOR D=1 TO 17.: PRINT "ROW ";D
40 LPRINT G$;
50 READ L,H
60 L=L*7: H=H*7
70 IF L=0 THEN 90
80 FOR X=1 TO L: LPRINT CHR$(1);: NEXT X
90 IF H<0 THEN LPRINT: GOTO 140
100 LPRINT CHR$(1)CHR$(2)CHR$(b)CHR$(8)CHR$(16)
    CHR$(32)CHR$(64);
110 FOR X=1 TO H: LPRINT CHR$(64);: NEXT X
120 LPRINT CHR$(64)CHR$(32)CHR$(16)CHR$(8)
    CHR$(4)CHR$(2)CHR$(1);

130 GOTO 50
140 NEXT D: GOSUB 160
150 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
160 FOR X=1 TO 3:LPRINT G$;
170 FOR Y=1 TO 889: LPRINT CHR$(1);: NEXT Y
180 LPRINT: NEXT X: RETURN
190 DATA 3,20,2,3,12,3,21,3,6,14,8,14,6,-1
200 DATA 3,20,3,3,10,3,22,3,4,18,4,18,4,-1
210 DATA 3,20,4,3,8,3,23,3,3,5,8,5,2,5,8,5,3,-1
220 DATA 3,3,22,3,6,3,24,3,3,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
230 DATA 3,3,23,3,4,3,25,3,3,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
240 DATA 3,3,24,3,2,3,26,3,3,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
250 DATA 3,3,25,3,0,3,27,3,3,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
260 DATA 3,20,9,6,5,15,6,3,3,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
270 DATA 3,20,10,4,6,15,6,3,3,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
280 DATA 3,20,9,6,5,15,6,3,3,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
290 DATA 3,3,25,3,0,3,27,3,3,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
300 DATA 3,3,24,3,2,3,26,3,3,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
310 DATA 3,3,23,3,4,3,25,3,3,3,12,3,2,3~2>3,3,-1
320 DATA 3,3,22,3,6,3,24,3,3,3,12,3,2,3,12,3,3,-1
330 DATA 3,3,21,3,8,3,23,3,3,5,8,5,2,5,8,5,3,-1
340 DATA 3,3,20,3,10,3,22,3,4,18,4,18,4,-1
350 DATA 3,3,19,3,12,3,21,3,6,14,8,14,6,-1

```

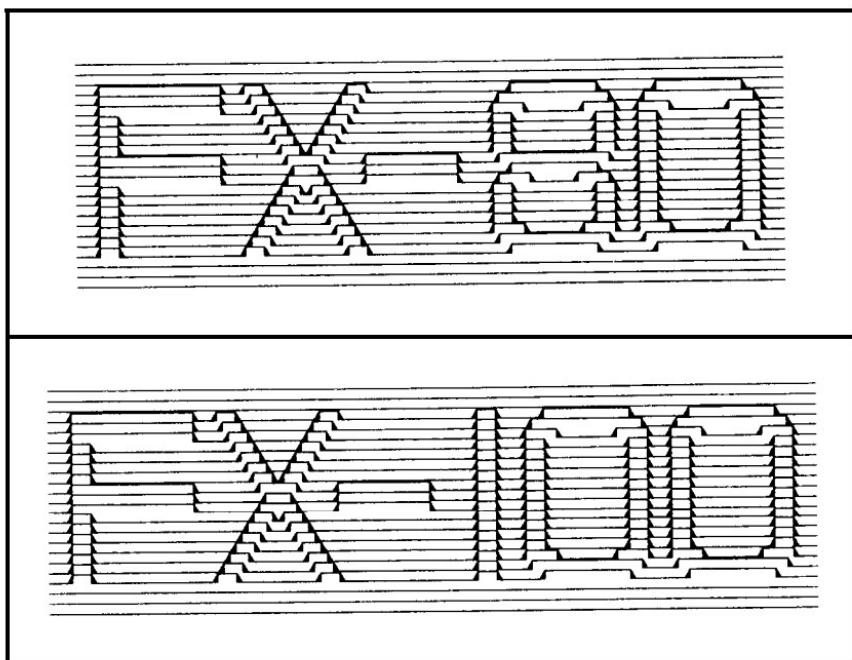
*Figure 12-8. Program for FX-100 figure*

## Other versions

Now that you've typed in all that data, it's time to have some fun. You can change a few of the pin patterns to make a dramatic effect on results. These changes work the same on either model's figure.

These **changes** fill in the diagonals as illustrated in Figure 12-9:

```
100 LPRINT CHR$(1)CHR$(3)CHR$(7)CHR$(15)  
    CHR$(31)CHR$(63)CHR$(127);  
120 LPRINT CHR$(127)CHR$(63)CHR$(31)CHR$(15)  
    CHR$(7)CHR$(3)CHR$(1);
```



**Figure 12-9. More distinct version**

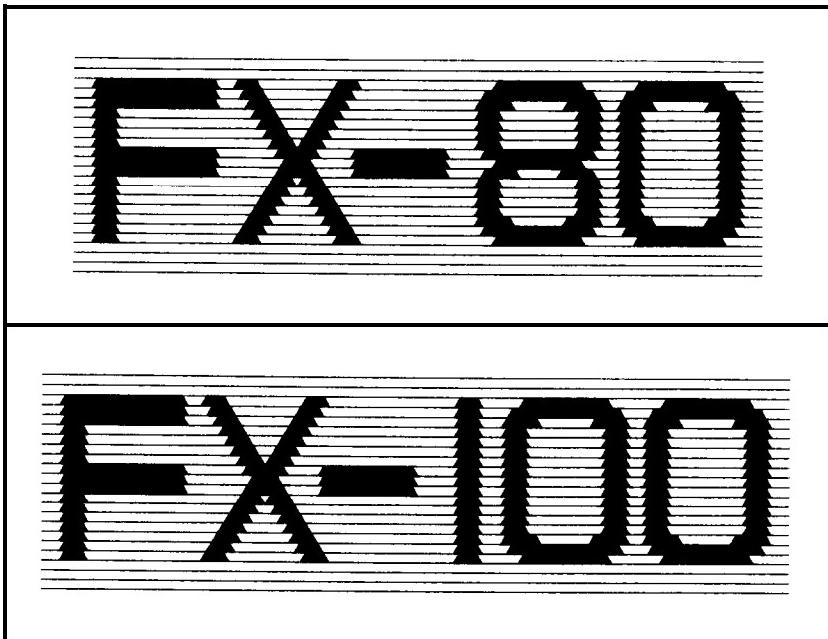
And one additional change fills in the entire text (Figure 12-10):

```
110 FOR X=1 TO H: LPRINT CHR$(127);: NEXT X
```

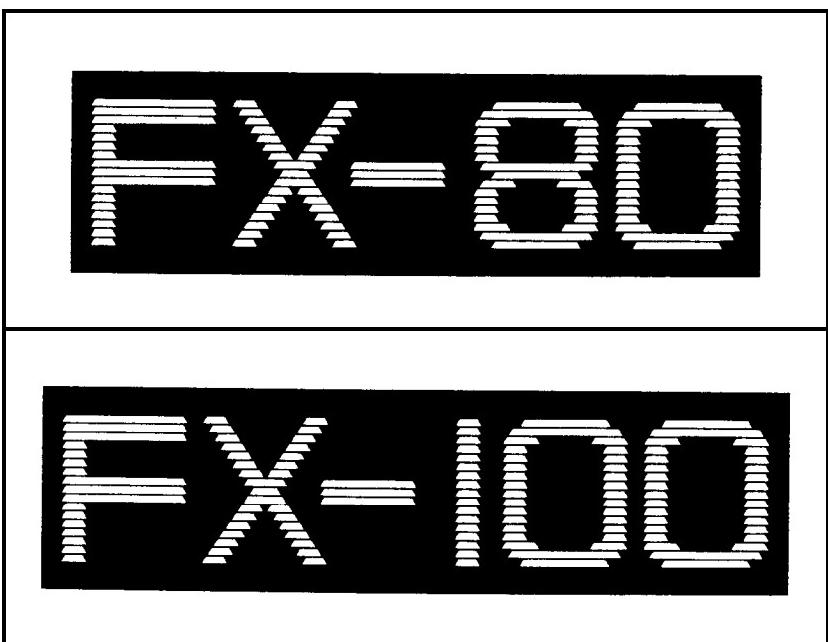
Can you vary the program to produce a complete black/white reverse like the one in Figure 12-11?

## Summary

We did not introduce any commands in this chapter. Instead, we demonstrated two ways of programming dot graphics. For the first example we used DATA statements to store pin patterns and repetition factors. For the second example we stored the pin patterns as constants and used DATA statements only to store repetition factors.



*Figure 12-10. Most distinct version*



*Figure 12-11. Reversed version*

# **Chapter 13**

## **Plotter Graphics**

As you work with dot graphics, you may run into printer limitations because dot-matrix printers are designed primarily for fast printing of text. The FX, however, can also print high-resolution graphics, as you saw in the STRATA program. But the side-to-side motion of a dot-matrix printer makes it virtually impossible to place the print head in the middle of a page and trace out a lazy spiral or even a circle.

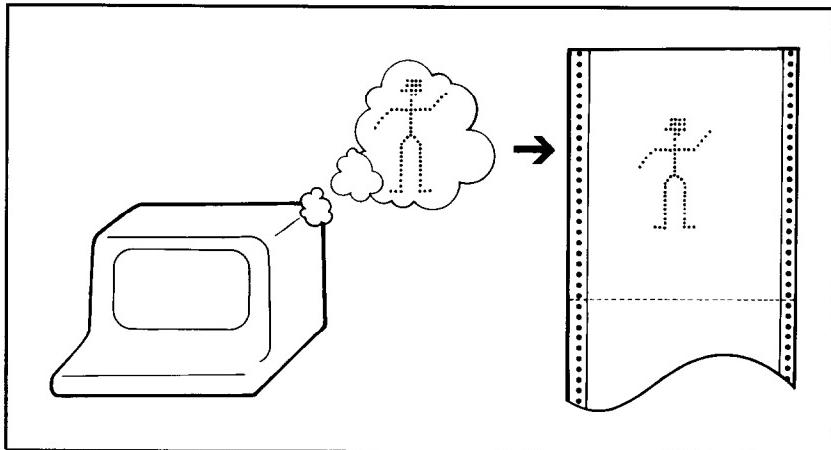
Does that mean the FX can't create the same type of figures that a plotter does? Certainly not. You just have to approach the problem a little differently than you would in working with a plotter. In fact, with a little advance planning, you can use the dot graphics modes to simulate the activity of a full-fledged plotter.

The secret to bringing out the plotter in your FX is to apply the capabilities of your computer system. You can use its memory as a sketch pad. With mathematical formulas, you can design any sort of pattern. Once you've got your picture complete in memory, you can send it line by line to the printer. When you use this approach, the printer doesn't have to act like a plotter to draw like one.

The figures printed in this chapter show how easy it is to simulate plotter graphics with the FX. You start by using the computer's memory as a sketch pad for the plotting. To do this, you set up a correspondence between a pattern of dots on paper and a set of values that you arrange in the computer's memory (Figure 13-1).

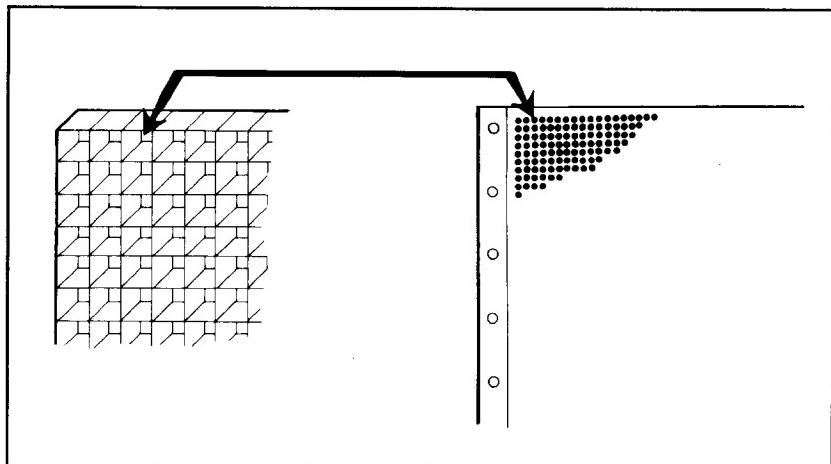
### **Arrays**

The structure in computer memory in which you store your pattern of dots is called an array. Think of an array as an ordered set of cubby



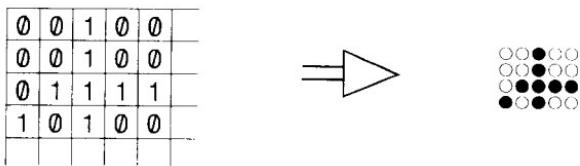
**Figure 13-1. Computer memory as sketch pad**

holes or cells arranged in rows and columns, as Post Office boxes are. Each cell of the array corresponds to a dot position on the paper (Figure 13-2).



**Figure 13-2. Array in memory and on paper**

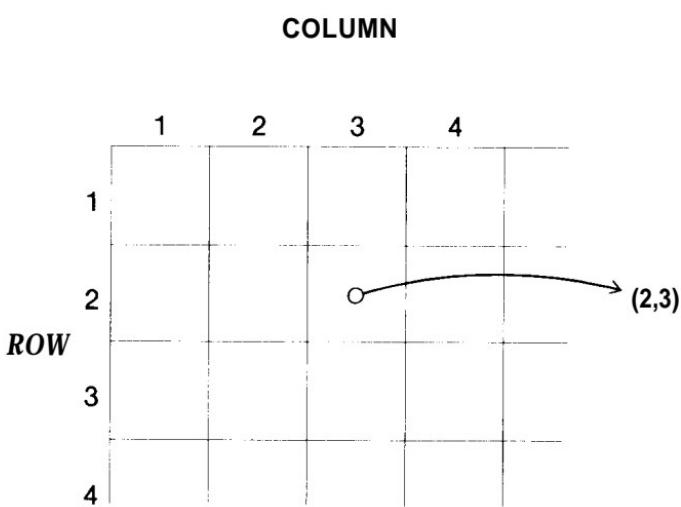
Although the cells in a numeric array can hold nearly any numeric value, you use only the binary numbers (0 and 1) for this graphics program. Figure 13-3 demonstrates using a 1 to represent a dot and a 0 to represent no dot.



**Figure 13-3. Ones and zeros become dots and blanks**

Why all this fuss and stew about arrays? We want to show you that the FX can simulate a plotter. And once the correspondence between array cells and dot positions is firmly established, you can easily plot in any direction.

Let's look at the way each cell is named. The cells are arranged in rows and columns, so each cell can be easily pinpointed by its row and column position.



**Figure 13-4. Labelled cell**

The labelled cell of Figure 13-4 sits at the intersection of row **2** and column **3**, so you can label it by its address: cell **(2,3)**. In BASIC, you give the entire array a name, then append the address to the name. Thus, if you name the array of Figure 13-4 array A, the cell name is A(2,3).

## DIMension and arrays

Most BASICs allow you to use up to 10 rows and 10 columns in an array without any special preparation of the computer's memory. Since arrays use up lots of memory, you must inform the system if you intend to use a larger array. In BASIC, this is done with the DIMension statement, which is contained in the first line of the next program. Enter:

```
NEW  
10 DEFINT A: N=21: DIM A(N,N)
```

If your system rebels at line 10, use:

```
10 DEFINT A: N=21: DIM A(21,21)
```

The DIM statement in line 10 reserves enough memory for 21 rows and 21 columns of numbers. That gives you a total of 441 cells. Each cell takes up 2, 4, or 8 bytes, depending on the precision of the variables you use. The DEFINT restricts all variables that start with the letter A to be of the integer type (2 bytes); this definition saves memory.

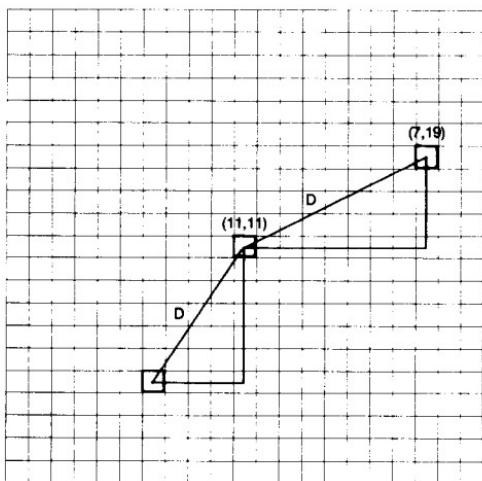
## Filling arrays

Most computer systems set to 0 all numeric variables, including cells of arrays, at the beginning of a program. If your system does not automatically do this, use the following lines to perform the same function:

```
15 FOR X=0 TO N: FOR Y=0 TO N  
17 A(X,Y)=0: NEXT Y: NEXT X
```

To plot a figure in memory after all the cells are set to zero, you simply deposit ones in the correct positions using LET statements. For example, the statement  $A(2,3) =1$  will place a one in location (2,3).

Suppose you want to plot a circle of radius 10 in the 21 row by 21-column array-definitely a job for a plotter! You can, however, use the standard distance formula (as in Figure 13-S) to calculate the distance from the center cell (11,11) to each of the surrounding cells. If this distance is equal to 10, the cell content is changed to one; otherwise, the cell value remains zero.



$$\begin{aligned}
 D &= \sqrt{(19 - 11)^2 + (7 - 11)^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{8^2 + (-4)^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{64 + 16} \\
 &= \sqrt{80} \\
 &\approx 8.94 \neq 10
 \end{aligned}$$

**Figure 13-5. Plotting a circle**

## Circle Plotting

You can have your program examine the cells of an array in any order; the following program scans them row by row, using two loops:

```
20 FOR R=1 TO N: FOR C=1 TO N
```

At each cell, line 30 calculates the cell's distance from a center point by using the distance formula:

```
30 D=SQR((R-11)^2+(C-11)^2)
```

Next the program compares this distance with a number (10) that specifies the radius of a circle. Notice that this formula commonly results in a number that includes a decimal fraction, e.g., 8.94.

If the distance for the current cell A(R,C) is close to 10, you set its contents equal to one: otherwise, you leave it alone.

```
40 IF INT(D+.0)=10 THEN A(R,C)=1
```

Line 40 sets any cell whose distance is between 9.5 and 10.5 equal to one.

The final step to plotting a circle in an array is to close the loops and display the contents of the array. Add these three lines to your program:

```
50 LPRINT A(R,C);: NEXT C: LPRINT  
60 PRINT "ROW";R: NEXT R  
170 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@" : END
```

and RUN it.

0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0

**Figure 13-6.** Displaying an array

The printout shows, in terms of ones and zeros, the results of your planning and your program's plotting.

**Ones become dots**

Next you need to translate the contents of the array to dots on the paper. First, modify line 50 so that it no longer prints out the contents of the array:

50 NEXT C

Then fill the usual graphics prescription for 7-dot line spacing:

```
70 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"CHR$(7);
```

The CHR\$(7) sounds the beeper to tell you when the array is full.

The next line loads the beginning (B), ending (E), and step (S) values for the loop that will read and print the array.

```
100 B=1: E=N-6: S=1
```

We have you use variables here so that you can change them later. That way you can make your program read the array in a number of directions.

Using 7 pins of the print head on each pass, the program will take 3 passes to print a 21-row array. If you change the array size, remember to use a multiple of 7.

Continue by adding these five lines:

```
110 FOR P=B TO E STEP 7*S  
120 PRINT "LOADING ROWS";P;"TO";P+6*S  
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)"*"CHR$(0)CHR$(N)CHR$(0);  
150 FOR C=1 TO N: GOSUB 180: NEXT C  
160 LPRINT: NEXT P
```

Line 110 loads the array rows from beginning (B) to end (E) in sets of seven.

Line 120 prints to the screen an update of the computer's progress.

Line 130 enters Graphics Mode and reserves N columns for graphics (N is the width of the array).

Line 150 accesses the subroutine (to be added next) that calculates the pin patterns for each column.

And line 160 closes the loop for each pass (P) of the print head.

## Pin firing sequences

The last step before printing the figure is to convert those ones and zeros to pin firing sequences. Add this subroutine to your program:

```
170 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END  
180 F=0: FOR R=P TO P+6*S STEP S  
190 IF A(R,C)=1 THEN F=F+2^ABS(P+6*S-R)  
200 NEXT R  
220 LPRINT CHR$(F);: RETURN
```

Understanding the subroutine is easy if you take it one step at a time. This subroutine calculates the pin firing pattern (F) for each column of seven dots. It examines the array vertically, one cell at a time. When it

encounters a one, it adds the appropriate power of two to F (line 190). The exponent is the difference between the current row (R) and the last row in this pass of the print head (P+6\*S). Line 220 sends F to the printer as a graphics pin pattern.

```
10 DEFINT A: N=21: DIM A(N,N)
20 FOR R=1 TO N: FOR C=1 TO N
30 D=SQR((R-11)^2 + (C-11)^2)
40 IF INT(D+.5)=10 THEN A(R,C)=1
50 NEXT C
60 PRINT "ROW";R: NEXT R
70 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"CHR$(7);
100 B=1: E=N-6: S=1
110 FOR P=B TO E STEP 7*S
120 PRINT "LOADING ROWS";P;"TO";P+6*S
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)*"CHR$(0)CHR$(N)CHR$(0);
150 FOR C=1 TO N: GOSUB 180: NEXT C
160 LPRINT: NEXT P
170 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
180 F=0: FOR R=P TO P+6*S STEP S
190 IF A(R,C)=1 THEN F=F+2^ABS(P+6*S-R)
200 NEXT R
220 LPRINT CHR$(F);: RETURN
```

Check your listing against the program above to make sure you have it all. If you do, type RUN.



The array looks like this printout when it's translated into dots.

If all went well, skip to the “Higher resolution” section, below. If not, take the time to find out a code solution.

## Code solutions

If your printout doesn't look much like ours, it's likely the problem involves the codes from nine to 13. Remember that the program determined the dot patterns to send to the printer by the figure stored in the array. The cleanest way to get the figure to print correctly is to either POKE the codes directly or use a printer driver that allows the codes to pass through as sent. See Appendix F.

If neither is possible, there is a third way. You can avoid these codes during printing without doing too much damage to the figure. The test

below picks off any potential problem codes and changes them to less dangerous numbers.

```
210 IF F>8 AND F<14 THEN F=F-5
```

This line takes any number between 8 and 14 and subtracts 5 from it, putting it out of the trouble range. Adjust this test to fit your system.

You may see another problem with the figure. The standard 7-dot line spacing may be off just enough to add a slight gap every seven rows. An easy fix for this is to adjust the line spacing as needed with the CHR\$(27) "3' command. This gives you the ability to make adjustments as fine as one-third of a dot. For example, in this program you can set a 6 -2/3-dot line spacing by changing line 70 to:

```
70 LPRINT CHR$(27) "3"CHR$(20)CHR$(7);
```

## Higher resolution

If everything did go according to plan, your printed figure resembles a circle of radius 10 dots, but the resolution isn't all that you might hope for. For one thing, the individual dots are clearly visible. To make a more continuous figure, you need a graphics mode of higher density. To get it, change line 130 to:

```
130 LPRINT CHR$(27) "*"CHR$(1)CHR$(N)CHR$(0);
```



This does give a more satisfactory density, but now the program distorts the circle. Mathematically inclined folks can adjust for this distortion by creating an ellipse in the array (the horizontal compression creates a circle). If you pursue this course, keep in mind that the FX has several graphics densities available.

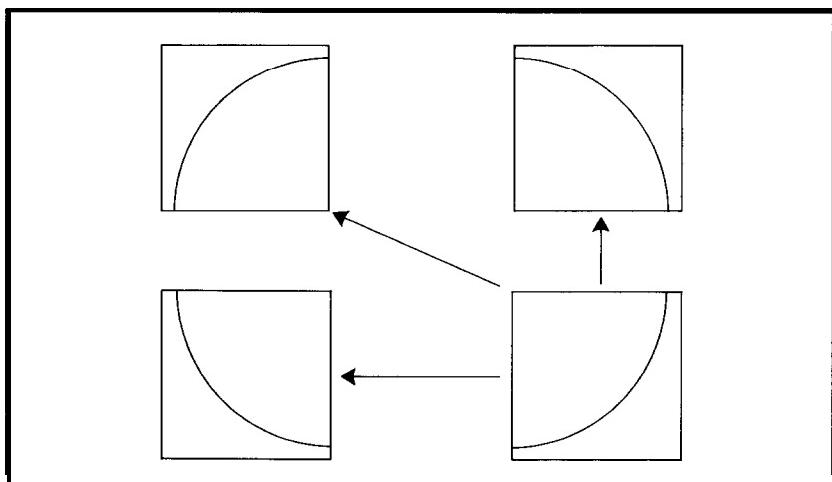
With figures this small, it is difficult to obtain a smooth curve. The solution is to draw larger circles.

Unfortunately, larger arrays gobble up memory. For example, an array wide enough to stretch clear across an g-inch page in Single-Density would contain over 200,000 cells (480 x 480). Considering that each cell takes up at least two bytes, there is not much hope of tucking the entire array into memory all at once.

So how can you squeeze more print out of your arrays? For non-symmetric designs, you are pretty well stuck with the memory limitation of two bytes per cell unless you are willing to resort to more

drastic measures. One such measure would be to let each bit of the numbers stored in the array cells represent one graphics dot. This would increase the storage ability but tremendously complicate the programming.

For symmetric designs such as the circle, you can use a different measure. Take advantage of the symmetry to increase your output four-fold without increasing the size of the array one iota. How? By using the array to plot one-fourth of the circle in memory, then modifying the array three times to generate the remaining three parts (Figure 13-6).



**Figure 13-7. Divide and conquer**

Try this out with the current program. Here are the changes you need to make to your current program in order to plot the lower-right corner :

```
30 D=SQR(R^2+C^2)
40 IF INT(D+.5)=20 THEN A(R,C)=1
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)/*CHR$(5)CHR$(N)CHR$(0);
```



By moving the center of the circle from (11,11) to (0,0) and increasing the radius from 10 to **20**, you enlarge the figure.

## Reflections

Once the desired image is stored in the array you can rotate and reflect it in several different directions. It's all done with mirrors; at least, it looks like mirror reflections when you are done. You create the mirror effect by reading the array in different directions.

Currently your program reads the array from left to right, seven rows at a time, but it is just as easy to read it in the reverse order. Add this line:

```
140 FOR C=N TO 1 STEP -1: GOSUB 180: NEXT C
```

and double the graphics width setting in line 130 :

```
130 LPRINT- CHR$(27) "*"CHR$(5)CHR$(2*N)CHR$(0);
```

Now RUN it.



The left half of the figure mirrors the right half. With a few more changes, the program can read the array upside down and double the output again. Add these two lines:

```
80 B=N: E=7: S=-1  
90 FOR Z=1 TO 2
```

and change these three:

```
60 PRINT "T MINUS";N-R: NEXT R  
100 IF Z=2 THEN B=1: E=N-6: S=1  
160 LPRINT: NEXT P: NEXT Z
```

Now lines 80, 90, and 100 change the order in which the array is read. First (Z = 1) it's read upside down, then (Z =2) right side up, as before. This is the full listing:

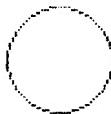
```
10 DEFINT A: N=21: DIM A(N,N)  
20 FOR R=1 TO N: FOR C=1 TO N  
30 D=SQR(R^2+C^2)  
40 IF INT(D+.5)=20 THEN A(R,C)=1  
50 NEXT C  
60 PRINT "T MINUS";N-R: NEXT R  
70 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"CHR$(7);  
80 B=N: E=7: S=-1  
90 FOR Z=1 TO 2
```

```

100 IF Z=2 THEN B=1: E=N-6: S=1
110 FOR P=B TO E STEP 7*S
120 PRINT "LOADING ROWS";P;"TO"; P+6*S
130 LPRINT CHR$(27) "*"CHR$(5)CHR$(2*N)CHR$(0);
140 FOR C=N TO 1 STEP -1: GOSUB 180: NEXT C
150 FOR C=1 TO N: GOSUB 180: NEXT C
160 LPRINT: NEXT P: NEXT Z
170 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
180 F=0: FOR R=P TO P+6*S STEP S
190 IF A(R,C)=1 THEN F=F+2^ABS(P+6*S-R)
200 NEXT R
220 LPRINT CHR$(F);: RETURN

```

Go ahead and RUN it to see how it works.



There are two important points here: 1) instead of tracing the circle like a plotter, the program gathers the pattern in the computer's memory, then prints it line by line; 2) the program takes advantage of symmetry to print a figure four times the size of the original array.

## **Exploding galaxy**

With a few more program changes, you can turn this mundane circle into a design for an exploding galaxy. First change the size so that you can see the full impact of the figure (note that 105 is a multiple of seven):

```
10 DEFINT A: N=105: DIM A(N,N)
```

Yes, that 105 means this will take even longer to print out than the circle did, but that's the price you pay for largeness.

If your computer system requires a WIDTH statement to prevent the printer from issuing a carriage return before the graphics line is complete, add it now:

```
7 WIDTH LPRINT 255
```

The format for this statement may be different for your BASIC; see your software documentation.

Next modify the distance formula slightly. Type:

```
30 D=SQR(R^2+C^2)/N: D=D*D
```

This adjustment makes it easier to compare the distance value with the value of the RND function (line 40, below).

Once the computer knows the distance of each cell from the upper-left corner, it can use the following test to determine which cells receive 1s and which cells continue to contain 0s.

**40 IF D>RND(9) THEN A(R,C)=1**

Line 40 compares the modified distance (D) of each cell to a random number between 0 and 1. If D is greater than the random number, a 1 goes in that cell.

Note: Use your computer system's version of RND(9) in line 40 [some systems use RND(X) or just RND].

By using a random number (line 40), you add a measure of uncertainty to the placement of the dots. Cells close to the upper-left corner of the square array have a high probability of containing a zero, while those far away have a high probability of containing a one. Since the program reads the array four times (normal, reversed, upside down, and upside down reversed), the upper-left corner of the array corresponds to the center of the large figure that the program will produce and the cells farther away from that point correspond to the corners of that figure. You will see the results when you run the program. Also, the use of randomness can yield a different pattern with each run of the program, but you may have to use a different number in the RND statement for each run, depending upon your version of BASIC.

## Big bang

Are you ready to see what the program does? Change two lines:

```
60 PRINT "COUNTDOWN TO BIG BANG: T MINUS";
    N-R: NEXT R
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)""CHR$(0)CHR$(2*N)CHR$(0);
```

You may want to check your program against the full listing:

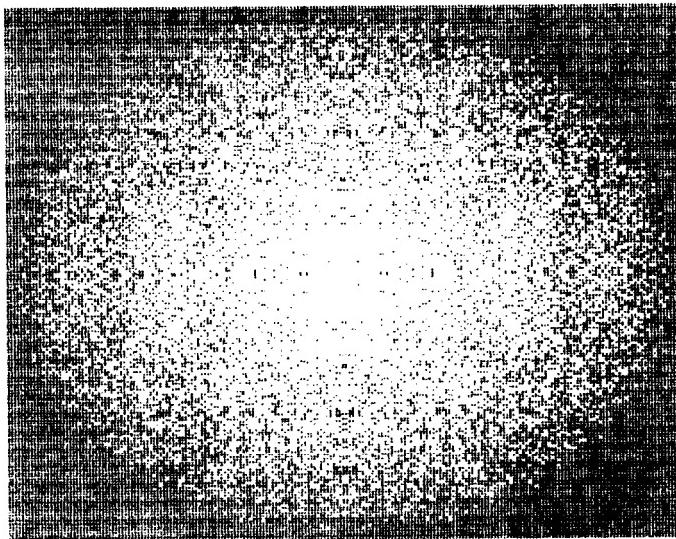
```
7 WIDTH LPRINT 255
10 DEFINT A: N=105: DIM A(N,N)
20 FOR R=1 TO N: FOR C=1 TO N
30 D=SQR(R^2+C^2)/N: D=D*D
40 IF D>RND(9) THEN A(R,C)=1
50 NEXT C
60 PRINT "COUNTDOWN TO BIG BANG: T MINUS"; N-R:
    NEXT R
```

```

70 LPRINT CHR$(27)"3"CHR$(20);CHR$(7);
80 B=N: E=7: S=-1
90 FOR Z=1 TO 2
100 IF Z=2 THEN B=1: E=N-6: S=1
110 FOR P=B TO E STEP 7*S
120 PRINT "LOADING ROWS";P;"TO"; P+6*S
130 LPRINT CHR$(27) "*"CHR$(0)CHR$(2*N)CHR$(0);
140 FOR C=N TO 1 STEP -1: GOSUB 180: NEXT C
150 FOR C=1 TO N: GOSUB 180: NEXT C
160 LPRINT: NEXT P: NEXT Z
170 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
180 F=0: FOR R=P TO P+6*S STEP S
190 IF A(R,C)=1 THEN F=F+2^ABS(P+6*S-R)
200 NEXT R
210 IF F>8 AND F<14 THEN F=F-5
220 LPRINT CHR$(F);: RETURN

```

O.K., now RUN the program (you can have a few cups of coffee while you're waiting).



In the printout can you see white stars against the blackness of outer space?

The design above demonstrates that symmetry can increase the size of a complex figure produced by a two-dimensional array. The only problem is that the array for this figure uses over 20,000 bytes, which

is nearly all of the available memory on many personal computers. You are, therefore, not able to print significantly larger figures of this type with such computers.

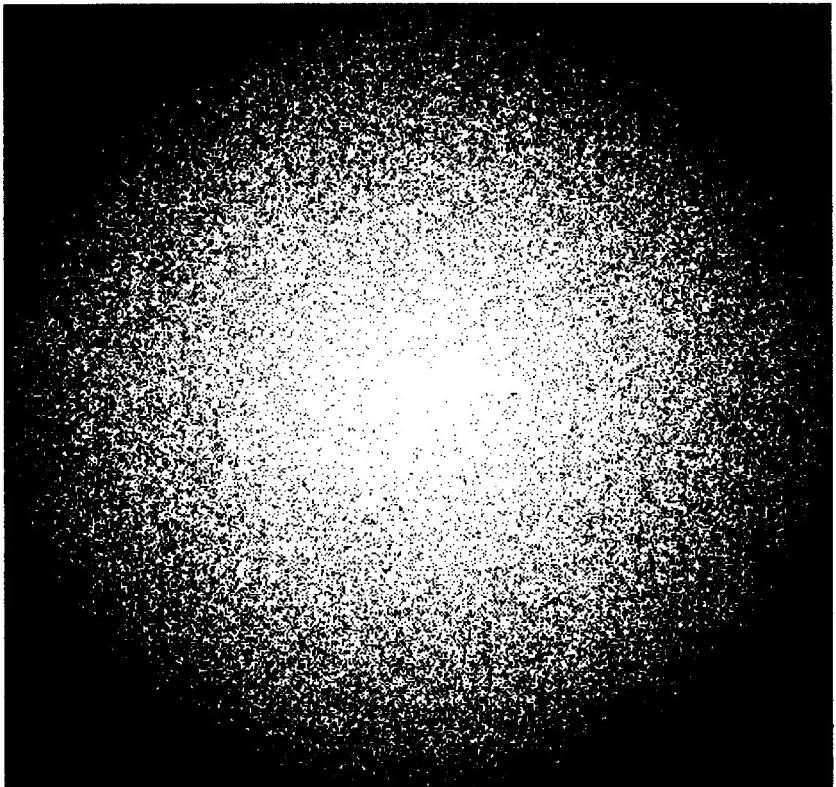
If you like the effect that is produced by this use of random numbers but would like a bigger printout without using more memory, there is a solution.

The alternate method used in the program listed below does not use symmetry and uses very little of the computer's memory because it does not store data in an array. It is, however, not a perfect solution. As you might expect, there is a trade-off. Once you enter this program and type RUN, you must wait an agonizingly long time before it is finished.

The program prints a figure that is over 36 square inches in area, but it takes seven to twelve hours to run. You will not, however, have to wait that long to see if the program is working correctly. After the second row starts printing (within 20 or 30 minutes), you can compare your partial printout with the figure on the next page to see whether or not your program is on the right track.

We don't want to sound less than enthusiastic; we just want you to understand the consequences of using less memory.

```
NEW
10 N=476: M=INT((N+1)/2): WIDTH LPRINT 255
20 N2=INT(N/256): N1=N-256*N2
30 LPRINT CHR$(27)"3"CHR$(20)CHR$(7);
40 FOR P=1 TO N-6 STEP 7
50 PRINT "PRINTING ROWS";P;"TO";P+6
60 LPRINT CHR$(27)*"CHR$(5)CHR$(N1)CHR$(N2);
70 FOR C=1 TO N
80   F=0: PRINT C;
90   FOR R=P TO P+6
100   D=((R-M)^2+(C-M)^2)/M^2
110   IF D>RND(8) THEN F=F+2^ABS(P+6-R)
115   IF F=9 THEN F=10
120 NEXT R: LPRINT CHR$(F);
130 NEXT C: LPRINT: NEXT P
140 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@"
```



By changing the value of N to different multiples of seven, you can generate this pattern in different sizes. Just be prepared to let your computer cook for several hours.

## Summary

We used this chapter to demonstrate the way you can use your FX as though it were a plotter. You can also use your computer system to design a symmetric pattern, applying mathematical principles to minimize the amount of data needed, and then store the data in an array. When you print the pattern, your system sends the data to the FX one line at a time.

## **Chapter 14**

# **Symmetrical Graphics Patterns**

In this chapter we continue to explore the generation of graphics patterns in memory. As in the last chapter, you will use ones and zeros in an array to generate pin patterns, but this time you will save memory by using a one-dimensional array to print a two-dimensional figure. You will construct one long program in which an array containing less than 300 elements will produce a pattern made up of many thousands of dots. Because of the length of the program we will only occasionally ask you to run it.

Begin by defining variables:

```
NEW  
10 DIM A(480): X=1: C=0  
20 MAX=5: MIN=1: RE=4: N=0
```

For easy reference, Table 14-1 lists, in alphabetical order, the variables you will use for this program. The array A, which is DIMensioned in line 10, will store the pattern. Program loops will use the variables in line 20 to control the size and shape of the figure. You can change these values later to create your own variations on the pattern.

Here are the loops:

```
30 FOR J=1 TO RE  
40 N=N+1  
50 GOSUB 300  
60 IF N<MAX THEN 40  
70 N=N-1  
80 GOSUB 300
```

**Table 14-1. Variables for SYMMETRY**

<b>Variable</b>	<b>Purpose</b>
A	Array
C	Counter of array elements
DOT	Counter of dots; used to calculate P
H	Highest number used in calculating P
J	Loop counter
K	Loop counter
L	Loop counter
LAST	Last pass of the print head
MAX	Maximum number for the pattern
MIN	Minimum number for the pattern
N	Number of pins in the current pattern
N1	Length of the graphics line
N2	Length of the graphics line
P	Pin firing pattern
P0	Reverse pattern of P
PASS	Number of the current pass
R	Remainder
RE	Number of repeats of the pattern
X	0 or 1 to fill the array

```
90 IF N>MIN THEN 70  
100 NEXT J: PRINT
```

The J loop will Repeat four times (RE = 4). It has two subloops, each of which depends on the value of N. Each time through the first loop (lines 40 to 60), N increases by one-to the value of MAX. Each time through the second loop (lines 70 to 90), N decreases by one-to the value of MIN. For each value of N, the program calls subroutine 300, and each time it is called, this subroutine adds more ones and zeros into the array.

Enter the program lines for the subroutine by typing:

```
290 LPRINT CHR$(27)"2": END  
300 FOR K=0 TO MAX-N  
310   FOR L=1 TO N  
320     C=C+1: A(C)=X  
330   NEXT L: X=1-X  
340 NEXT K: PRINT N;: RETURN
```

Line 320 in the L loop stores the ones and zeros in the array. The end of line 330 makes X alternate between zero and one.

To print out the contents of the array at this point, type:

```
5 LPRINT CHR$(27) "Q"CHR$(44)
110 FOR K=1 TO C: LPRINT A(K):: NEXT K:
      LPRINT.. LPRINT "C="C
```

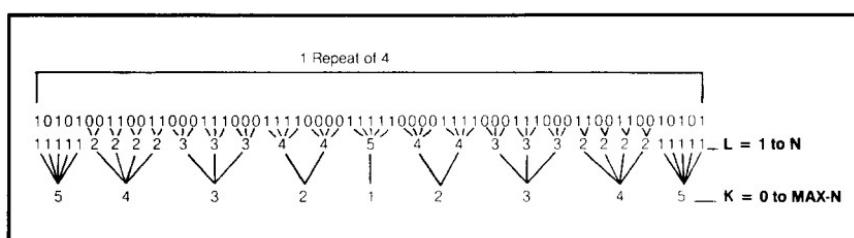
and RUN your growing program. Figure 14-1 shows the first seven lines of the result:

1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0
0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0
0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	0
0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1
0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1

**Figure 14-1.** Printing the array contents

Your entire printout is just a one-line array; the ones and zeros wrap around when they meet the temporary right-margin that you set in line 5.

This program shows how FOR-NEXT loops can use variables to create patterns. The overall pattern gets made up of five sets of pattern 1, four sets of 2, three sets of 3, . . . as shown in Figure 14-2.



**Figure 14-2. Pattern sets**

Before proceeding, delete line 5 and modify line 110 so that it prints to the screen instead of to the printer:

```
110 FOR K=1 TO C: PRINT A(K);: NEXT K:  
      PRINT' PRINT "C =" C
```

## Pin Pattern Calculation

You will use the one-line array that you just created to generate a two-dimensional pattern. This technique results in a significant saving of memory compared to the method of generating an array that we used in the last chapter.

Two patterns are used in each pass of the print head. P is the pattern formed by the seven vertical dots at the start of each print line, and PO is its black/white reverse image. The program prints the pattern P in each column that is headed by a black dot. Pattern PO is printed in the other columns.

The pin patterns are created this way:

```
140 FOR PASS=0 TO LAST: P=0:  
    PRINT "PASS";PASS;"OF";LAST  
160 FOR DOT=0 TO H  
170 IF A(7*PASS+DOT+1)=1 THEN P=P+2^(6-DOT)  
180 NEXT DOT  
190 P0=127-P: IF PASS=LAST THEN P0=P0+1-2^(7-R)
```

For each pass of the print head (zero to LAST), the program calculates the pin patterns, seven dots at a time. Line 170 calculates P, and line 190 calculates its complement, PO.

Appendix F discusses problem codes and the P variable.

Adjust the line spacing to match the 7-dot passes:

```
120 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1";
```

If this spacing produces slight gaps between rows, adjust it with CHR\$(27)"3"CHR\$(20).

The length of the array depends entirely on the variables in line 20. The following lines adjust the pin patterns (P and PO) for the last pass of the print head if the array length is not a multiple of seven. Add:

```
130 LAST=INT(C/7): R=C-7*LAST  
150 H=6: IF PASS=LAST THEN H=R-1
```

On the last pass, R represents the number of pins used, and H is set to one less than the number of pins to be fired.

## Graphics Width Settings

The required graphics width is C, the size of the array. If, however, C is greater than 255, the value n<sub>1</sub> in the graphics entry string must change from zero to one. With this in mind, add these three lines:

```
200 N1=C: N2=0  
210 IF C>255 THEN N1=C-256: N2=1  
220 LPRINT CHR$(27) "*"CHR$(5)CHR$(N1)CHR$(N2);
```

Introduced in Chapter 11, CHR\$(27) \* "CHR\$(5) is the one-to-one graphics density setting. It ensures a printout image that is square.

If your computer system requires a WIDTH statement to prevent the printer from issuing a carriage return before the graphics line is complete, add it now:

```
7 WIDTH LPRINT 255
```

The format for this statement may be different for your BASIC; see your software documentation.

## Pattern Printout

Now that you've completed the groundwork, add the lines that actually print the pattern.

```
230 FOR K=1 TO C  
240   IF A(K)=1 THEN LPRINT CHR$(P);  
250   IF A(K)<>1 THEN LPRINT CHR$(PO);  
260 NEXT K  
270 LPRINT  
280 NEXT PASS
```

These lines, which are part of the loop for each pass, cause the program to check each element of the array and then print either the pattern P (if the element is a one) or the pattern PO (if the element is not a one). Line 280 completes the PASS loop. After each pass is printed, the program recalculates the values of P and PO in lines 170 and 190.

Check your listing against the listing of Figure 14-3 to make sure it's all there:

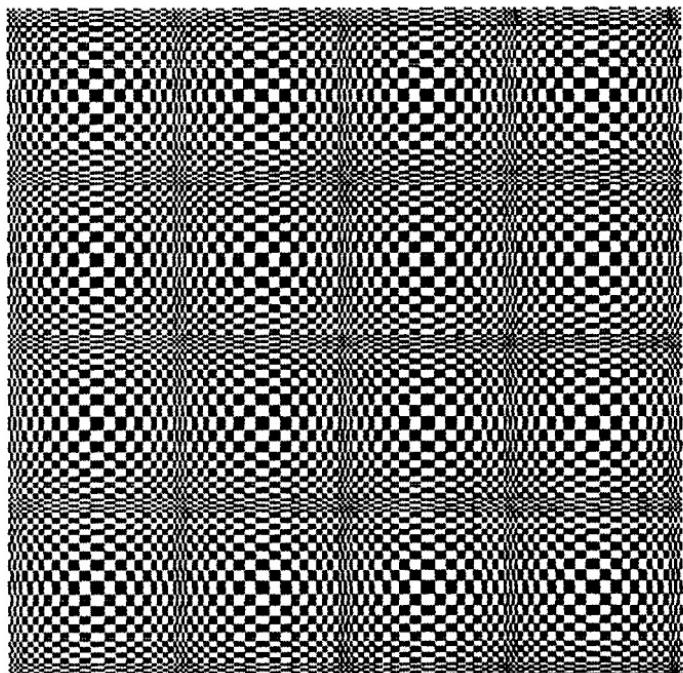
```

10 DIM A(480): X=1: C=0
20 MAX=5: MIN=1: RE=4: N=0
30 FOR J=1 TO RE
40 N=N+1
50   GOSUB 300
60   IF N<MAX THEN 40
70   N=N-1
80   GOSUB 300
90   IF N>MIN THEN 70
100 NEXT J: PRINT
110 FOR K=1 TO C: PRINT A(K);:
NEXT K: PRINT: PRINT      "C = " C
120 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1";
130 LAST=INT(C/7): R=C-7*LAST
140 FOR PASS=0 TO LAST: P=0: PRINT "PASS"; PASS;
"OF";LAST
150 H=6: IF PASS=LAST THEN H=R-1
160 FOR DOT=0 TO H
170   IF A(7*PASS+DOT+1)=1 THEN P=P+2^(6-DOT)
180 NEXT DOT
190 P0=127-P: IF PASS=LAST THEN P0=P0+1-2^(7-R)
200 N1=C: N2=0
210 IF C>255 THEN N1=C-256: N2=1
220 LPRINT CHR$(27)*CHR$(5)CHR$(N1)CHR$(N2);
230 FOR K=1 TO C
240   IF A(K)=1 THEN LPRINT CHR$(P);
250   IF A(K)<>1 THEN LPRINT CHR$(P0);
260 NEXT K
270 LPRINT
280 NEXT PASS
290 LPRINT CHR$(27)"2": END
300 FOR K=0 TO MAX-N
310   FOR L=1 TO N
320     C=C+1: A(C)=X
330   NEXT L: X=1-X
340 NEXT K: PRINT N;: RETURN

```

**Figure 14-3. Program for SYMMETRY**

then RUN it to see if it looks like Figure 14-4 .



**Figure 14-4. Symmetric pattern 1**

That's enough to knock your eyes right out of their sockets! And all **that** from a single one-dimensional array.

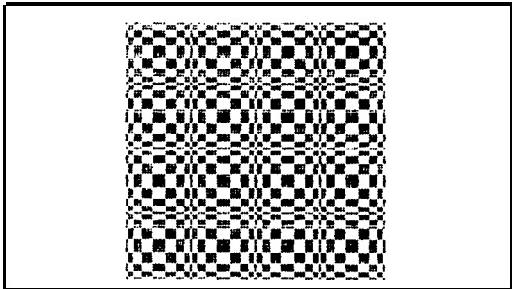
## Variations

The computer completely controls your symmetric pattern, dot for dot. Small changes in the program can affect the pattern in a big way. For example, try this simple change in line 300:

```
300 FOR K=0 TO 0
```

And RUN the program again:

Notice in your printout (or in Figure 14-5) that each string of ones and zeros in the array prints only once. The K loop in line 300 controls the repetitions of these strings.



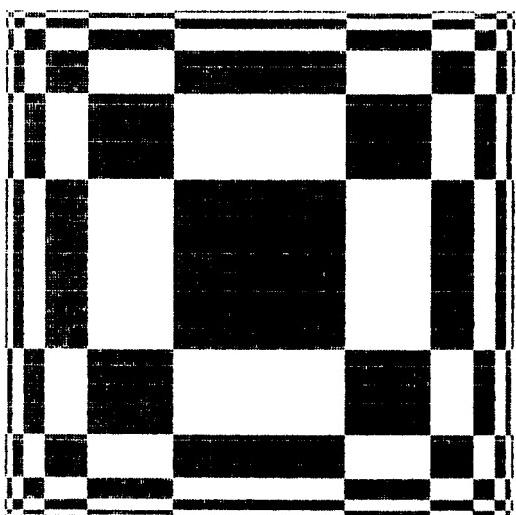
*Figure 14-5. Symmetric pattern 2*

Here's another interesting variation:

20 MAX=64: MIN=1: RE=1: N=1/2

**40** N=N\*2

**70** N=N/2



*Figure 74-6. Symmetric pattern 3*

Quite a difference! Instead of adding and subtracting one from N, lines **40** and **70** now double and halve it. This geometric progression creates a very different pattern.

Also notice that, because the variable RE is set to one, this pattern repeats only once.

Now's the time to experiment with some of your own changes to the variables and loops.

## Summary

In this chapter you used a single string of ones and zeros to create a two-dimensional figure. You can use this technique to create large patterns with little drain on computer memory, but only with highly structured patterns.

You also used a graphics density of 72 dots per inch to produce a one-to-one aspect ratio of the dots.



## **Chapter 15**

# **User-Defined Characters**

If you've studied the program examples in this manual, you are quite adept at printing both graphics and text with the FX. In this chapter we're going to share the secrets of the ultimate in printer control-defining your own characters.

With the FX, you can create any number of new characters, graphics patterns to serve as building blocks for larger designs, or even whole type fonts. You can use these characters for any purpose as long as they fit into the same dot matrix as the ROM characters do-9 dots tall by 11 dots wide (6 main columns plus 5 intermediate columns). Figure 15-1 shows a comparison of a few sample characters and their ROM equivalents.

ROM CHARACTERS	USER DEFINED CHARACTERS
LETTERS:	F, X
SYMBOLS:	R, -
NUMBERS:	8, 0
<b>J F P L A Y I T A G A I N , F X - 8 0 ! J F</b>	

**Figure 15-1. ROM and user-defined characters**

Once you define your own characters, you can use them over and over, just as you use the FX's ROM characters. The FX prints user-defined characters the same way it does any other ASCII characters.

But before you can take advantage of this fantastic feature, you must first make a little preparation.

## Preparation

DIP switch 1-4 controls the use of the FX's 2K RAM buffer. You can use this RAM memory as a large text buffer to smooth printer/computer communications, or you can store in it a set of user-defined characters. Unfortunately, it can't serve both purposes simultaneously. In this and succeeding chapters, we'll use this RAM area for user-defined characters. So set switch 1-4 off before proceeding.

## Character Definition

Characters are defined with the ESCape "&" command sequence. The format is:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27) & CHR$(r)CHR$(c1)CHR$(c2);
```

The r tells the printer in which RAM area the characters are to be stored. With a stock printer, there is only one area available: RAM area 0.

The notations c<sub>1</sub> and c<sub>2</sub> specify the range of characters to be defined. You can use the entire range of ASCII numbers from 0 to 255 (for which the ROM characters are shown in Appendix A), except for those areas where control codes reside (0 to 31, 127 to 159, and 255). You can also use some of the control-code locations, but only after special ESCape codes are issued. We'll get to that a bit later.

Here's how c<sub>1</sub> and c<sub>2</sub> work. Suppose you want to redefine the letters from A to E. The associated ASCII numbers are 65 to 69, so you simply let c<sub>1</sub> be 65(A) and c<sub>2</sub> be 69(E). Any of the keyboard characters can be redefined in a similar manner. For example, defining c<sub>1</sub> as 97 and c<sub>2</sub> as 101 selects lowercase letters a through e; defining c<sub>1</sub> as 33 and c<sub>2</sub> as 43 selects the symbols ! through + .

To simplify things a bit, the ASCII symbols can be used in place of CHR\$(c<sub>1</sub>) and CHR\$(c<sub>2</sub>). For example, either:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27) & CHR$(0)CHR$(65)CHR$(69);
```

or:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27) & CHR$(0)"AE";
```

selects characters A through E. On some occasions you may wish to define only one character. That's O.K., too. Just use the same number or letter for c<sub>1</sub> and c<sub>2</sub>:

```
130 LPRINT CHR$(27) & CHR$(0)"EE";
```

The semicolon is very important. The CHR\$(27) "&" sequence expects more data to follow (just as Graphics Mode does). The semicolon at the end of the line prevents an unwanted carriage-return code from disrupting the data.

For each character to be defined (determined by  $c_1$  and  $c_2$ ), the printer expects 12 data numbers to follow. The first of these numbers is called the attribute byte. It determines some special attributes or characteristics of the character being defined. The next 11 numbers contain the dot patterns of the symbol being defined-nothing fancy, just 11 standard graphics pin patterns.

## Design

The first step in defining a new character is to lay out the dot pattern. Check Appendix A to see how the ROM characters are designed. Your characters share the same limitations as those found in the ROM. Characters can be a maximum of 8 dots tall (even though the matrix is 9 dots) and 11 dots wide. Most characters use only the top 7 pins of the print head; lowercase characters with descenders use the bottom 7. Also note that all characters leave the last two columns (one intermediate and one main) unused; this provides space between the letters when they are printed. Figure 15-2 shows the design of a letter E in an 8 by 11 matrix.

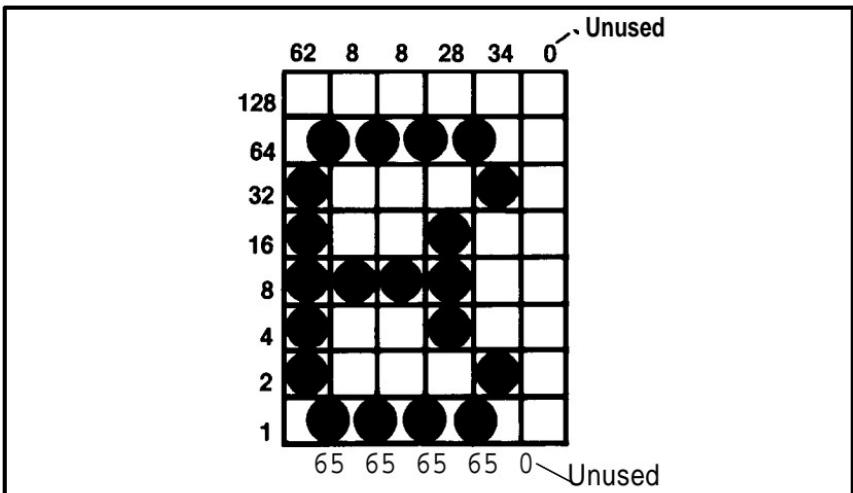
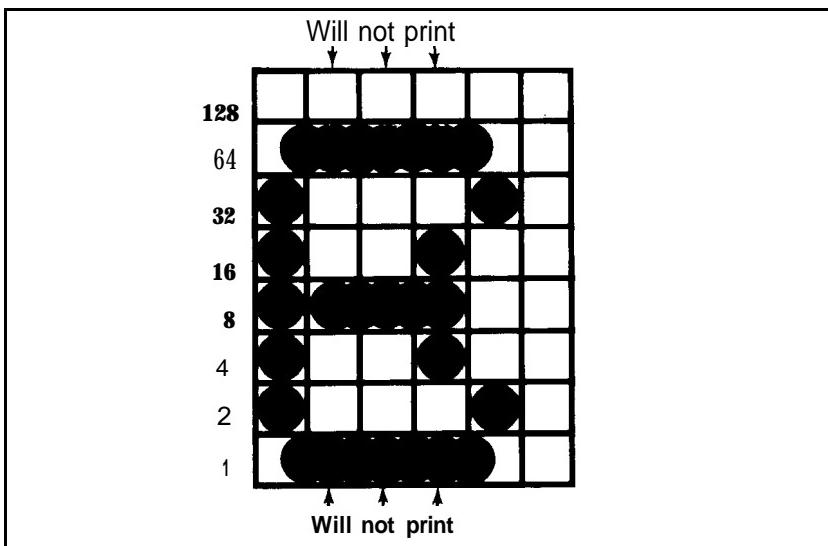


Figure 15-2. User-defined E

To be consistent with the ROM characters, we use only 7 rows. The character would normally go in the top 8 rows, but we shift all the dots down one row so that 7-bit systems can stay with the program.

Also note that two adjacent dots cannot be printed in the **same** row. Even in Half-Speed Mode, the printer simply refuses to print two overlapping dots. Figure 15-3 illustrates an E that is incorrectly designed because it uses overlapping dots:



*Figure 15-3. Incorrectly designed E*

## Dots into DATA

The data numbers for each column of Figure 15-2 are calculated in the same manner as the data for Graphics Mode. And the appropriate numbers can just as easily be stored in DATA statements. Type in the READ routine and data for the character in Figure 15-2:

```
150 FOR X=1 TO 11: READ C:  
    LPRINT CHR$(C);: NEXT X  
1170 DATA 62, 65, 8, 65, 8, 65, 28, 65, 34, 0, 0: ' My E
```

Notice that the DATA statement contains 11 numbers even though the design uses only 9 of the 11 columns. Unused columns must be coded as 0.

## Attribute byte

The attribute byte is the first of the 12 data numbers required to define any character. At print time it controls two aspects of the way the character is printed. First, it determines which 8 pins of the print head are used to print the character. For most characters, the top 8 pins are used, but for lowercase characters with descenders (like g and p), the bottom 8 pins can be used.

So how does the attribute byte determine which 8 pins are used? At print time, the printer checks the attribute byte before each character is printed. If the high-order bit is on, the top 8 pins of the print head are used; if the high-order bit is off, the bottom 8 are used. To put it another way, if the attribute byte for a given character is 128 or greater, the top 8 pins are used; if it is 127 or less, the bottom 8 are used. Figure 15-4 demonstrates these choices.

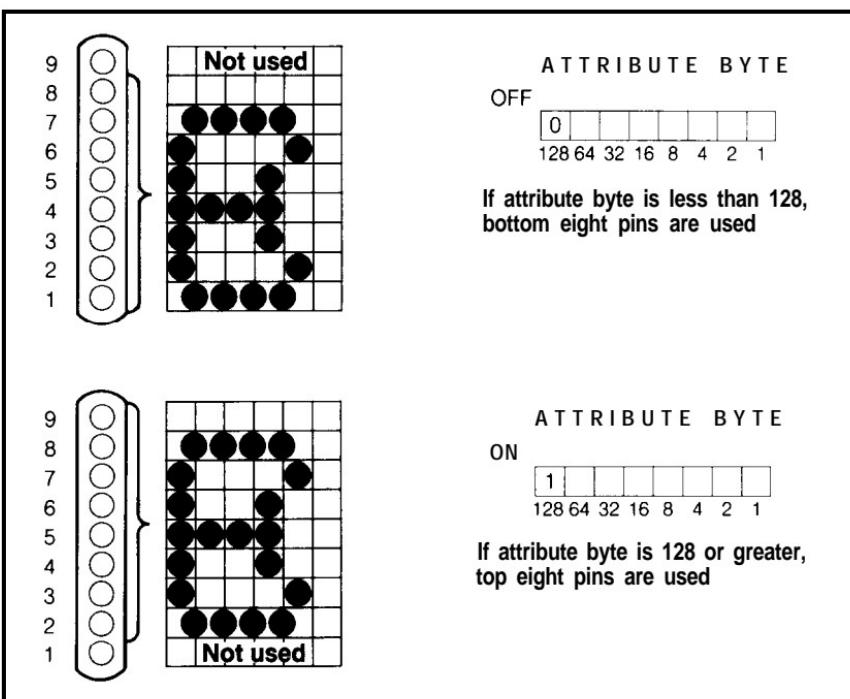


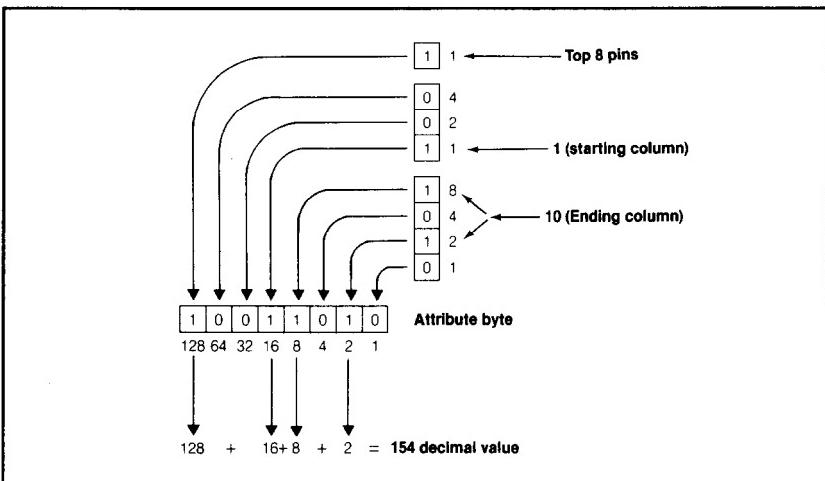
Figure 15-4. Pins chosen by attribute byte

## Proportional print

The attribute byte also contains information used to print a character in Proportional Mode. It tells the printer in which columns to start and stop printing for each character. If you label the 11 columns deter-

mined by the data numbers as columns 0 to 10, then in Proportional Mode the minimum and maximum starting and stopping columns will be 0 and 11. Why 11 instead of 10? Column 11 is the maximum value because Proportional characters are always Emphasized; this makes each character wider by one intermediate column. So when defining your own characters for proportional printing, always reserve one extra column.

Suppose you want a character to start in column 1 and end in column 10. How do you put this information into the attribute byte? The starting column number (1) is converted to a 3-bit binary number (001) and stored in bits 4, 5, and 6 of the attribute byte. The ending column number (10) is converted to a 4-bit binary number (1010) and stored in bits 0 to 3. The conversions are shown in Figure 15-5.



**Figure 15-5. Attribute byte conversions**

The full 8-bit attribute byte, then, is composed of three parts:

1. Bit 7 determines which pins are used to print the character.
2. Bits 4, 5, and 6 determine the starting column number.
3. Bits 0, 1, 2, and 3 determine the ending column number.

So the attribute byte constructed in Figure 15-5--`CHR$(154)`--uses the top eight pins, starts printing in column 1, and ends in column 10.

Note that the proportional print information is used only when the character is printed in Proportional Mode. Otherwise-the full range of columns 0 to 11 is used. Also note that if 7-bit system users set the high-order bit with CHR\$(27)">" before they use the CHR\$(27)"&" sequence, it stays on for the attribute and character data bytes.

One final note. Even if you choose not to print the columns from 0 through 11, you must send the printer 11 data numbers plus the attribute byte. The printer expects 12 data numbers for each character, no matter what.

So much for the example. In the current program, set the attribute byte to 139 (139 in binary is 10001011). This value starts at column 0, ends at column 11, and uses the top 8 pins of the print head. Seven-bit systems can use 139 or 11. Either way, the printer will use the bottom 8 pins for 7-bit systems, Add:

```
140 LPRINT CHR$(139);
```

## Printing User-Defined Characters

If you RUN the program at this point, it will define the character E in RAM area 0 (assuming switch 1-4 is off), but only the ROM version of the E will print. Try it. Add:

```
180 LPRINT "EEEEEE"  
200 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
```

EEEEEE

Sure enough, the FX prints a Roman Pica E. To print your newly defined character, you must tell the printer to ignore the ROM and print only RAM characters. The format for this instruction is:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27) "%" CHR$(n1) CHR$(n2);
```

The CHR\$(27)"%" sequence determines the currently active character set. The n<sub>1</sub> selects either ROM (0) or RAM (1), while n<sub>2</sub> selects the area (0 is the only area available). The command to activate the RAM area is:

```
120 LPRINT CHR$(27) "%" CHR$(1) CHR$(0);
```

but before you print the user-defined E, make it more visible by adding:

```
170 LPRINT CHR$(27)!"8";
190 LPRINT CHR$(27)!"@"
```

Line 170 uses the Master Select code to print Double-Strike, Expanded, Emphasized Pica characters. Line 190 uses the Master Select to return to Pica Mode.

Here are the lines you've typed so far:

```
120 LPRINT CHR$(27)%"CHR$(1)CHR$(0);
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)"&"CHR$(0)'EE";
140 LPRINT CHR$(139);
150 FOR X=1 TO 11: READ C: LPRINT CHR$(C);: NEXT X
170 LPRINT CHR$(27)!"8";
180 LPRINT "EEEEEE";
190 LPRINT CHR$(27)!"@"
200 LPRINT CHR$(27)!"@": END
1170 DATA 62,65,8,65,8,65,28,65,34,0,0: ' My E
```



Let's see what it looks like in Proportional Mode (without the last two columns printed). Add:

```
140 LPRINT CHR$(137);
175 LPRINT CHR$(27)"pl";
```



See how the Es are packed closely together? Fine. Before proceeding, change back to monospacing by deleting line 175 and changing 140:

```
140 LPRINT CHR$(139);
```

While you are in the neighborhood, take a look at some of the other characters in RAM with:

```
180 LPRINT "EPSON"
```



Oops! Where is the rest of EPSON? All right, we confess-the only characters in the user-defined RAM are those you put there yourself. Characters that haven't been defined print as blank spaces. So the

RAM area is like a big blank chalk board waiting for you to fill it up. At this point, because you have only defined an E, that's all you get from RAM.

## Downloading Command

Wouldn't it be nice if you could magically transport some of the ROM characters over to the RAM area so you wouldn't have to switch back and forth or define an entire character set each time you use the RAM area? In plenty of applications you only need to define a few special characters to be used with the standard alphabet and numbers. That's why the FX provides the option of copying (sometimes called downloading) the entire ROM set into the user-defined RAM area.

The downloading command has the format:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27) ":"CHR$(n1)CHR$(n2)CHR$(n3);
```

This command is designed with possible future expansion in mind. For now, set all three numbers to 0:

```
110 LPRINT CHR$(27) ":"CHR$(0)CHR$(0)CHR$(0);
```

**EPSON**

Now you get your custom designed E plus four of the normal characters copied over from ROM. Notice that the E is lower on the page than the other characters even though the high-order bit of the attribute byte is on. In order to save 7-bit users from total frustration, we designed the character to use the bottom seven rows. If you do not have a 7-bit system, you can use the top seven rows for all but lowercase characters with descenders.

**Caution:** Be very careful about using the Reset Code after defining your own characters in RAM. This code wipes out the entire contents of RAM . . . goodbye user-defined characters!

## Defining More Characters

Once the ESCape sequences are in place, adding more characters is a breeze. To see how much of a breeze, simply add more data:

```
1150 DATA 7,8,16,36,64,36,16,8,7,0,0: ' My A  
1160 DATA 127,0,72,0,72,0,76,2,121,0,0: ' My R
```

and make these changes:

```
130 LPRINT CHR$(27) & "CHR$(0)"rt";
140 FOR Y=1 TO 3: LPRINT CHR$(139);
160 NEXT Y
180 LPRINT "rst"
```

A R G

Line 130 controls the reading of the data. It expects data for three characters: r, s, and t. This example uses lowercase characters. If necessary, you can use CHR\$(114) and CHR\$(116) in place of the "rt".

The attribute byte for each character is sent in line 140 and the other 11 bytes are read from DATA lines. This method is nice for quick and easy character definition.

If you intend to print your characters in Proportional Mode, you'll want to add a different attribute byte to the start of each DATA line and adjust the READ routine for 12 numbers. Don't forget the attribute byte or you'll end up with results you won't like.

## Redefining Control Codes

For some of you dedicated users, the range from 32 to 126 and 160 to 254 may not be large enough to accommodate all the characters you want. Perhaps you have a passion for Egyptian hieroglyphics, or maybe you need a complete set of mathematics symbols. And what about the entire Japanese character set (it has some 4000 symbols)?

If you get carried away with user-defined characters, you may end up searching for more storage. Anticipating this need, Epson provides commands that will allow you to define and print certain control codes in the same way that you treat other characters. (Remember that the low-order control codes are the ASCII codes 0 through 31 plus 127, and the high-order control codes are 128 through 159 plus 255.)

These codes do not normally print symbols on paper, rather they cause the printer to change modes. To make them print as normal symbols requires an extra command. For example, the command to "normalize" the high-order control codes is:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27) "6"
```

Let's use this command to see how the ROM control codes can print. Add:

```
2 LPRINT CHR$(27)"6"
4 FOR X=128 TO 159: LPRINT CHR$(X);: NEXT X
6 LPRINT CHR$(27)"7"
8 STOP
```

Àéùòí °£ / ÆÑÑØÑAÀç SØÆØØø " ÅØÙÅØÙÈé ¥

That's where the international characters (Italic version) have been stored. So the CHR\$(27)"6" command without the CHR\$(27)"R" gives you access to the international characters. The CHR\$(27)"7" turns these characters back into control codes. See how the CHR\$(27)"6" and CHR\$(27)"7" commands work with the user-defined characters in RAM by deleting lines 2 through 8, and adding the following (unless yours is a 7-bit system, in which case this won't work):

```
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)"&CHR$(0)CHR$(128)CHR$(131);
140 FOR Y=1 TO 4: LPRINT CHR$(139);
165 LPRINT CHR$(27)"6"
180 LPRINT CHR$(128)CHR$(129)CHR$(130)CHR$(131)
1140 DATA 0,126,1,2,4,8,4,2,1,126,0: ' My W
```

### W A R S

The low-order control codes **can** also be defined, but not all of them can be printed with ease. CHR\$(27)"I1" makes **them** printable, and CHR\$(27)"I0" returns them to normal.

Just as the higher control codes hide the Italic international characters, the lower control codes hide the Roman international characters.

Let's see how the CHR\$(27)"I1" and CHR\$(27)"I0" codes work with user-defined characters. Change:

```
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)"&CHR$(0)CHR$(1)CHR$(3);
140 FOR Y=1 TO 3: LPRINT CHR$(139);
165 LPRINT CHR$(27)"I1"
180 LPRINT CHR$(1)CHR$(2)CHR$(3)
```

And add:

```
1100 DATA 0,121,0,73,0,73,0,73,0,79,0: ' My S  
1110 DATA 0,127,0,65,0,65,0,65,0,127,0: ' My Oh
```

### S O W

The program now contains six DATA lines, but it uses only the first three. The three characters are stored in ASCII codes 1, 2, and 3 in RAM; they are printed by line 180.

Not all of the low-order (0-31) control codes can be changed to print as normal characters-nor would you want them to. Imagine, if you changed code 27 to print as a normal character . . . no more ESCape codes. You would have a hard time getting anything done.

Codes that currently activate special modes or actions by the printer cannot be printed as normal characters. These include 7 to 15, 17 to 20, 24, and 27. It is, however, possible to print the characters stored in these locations with the CHR\$(27) "R" command.

Here's how it works. Suppose you choose to define the ASCII code 8 (normally a backspace). The CHR\$(27)"&" command will work fine, but printing CHR\$(8) still produces a backspace, even after a CHR\$(27)"11". CHR\$(27)"R" to the **rescue**. CHR\$(27)"R" lets you print the character stored in location 8 with another ASCII code. The CHR\$(27)"R" transports the character to an easily printable location. To find out what is stored where, use Table 15-1.

**Table 15-1. International character locations**

Dec. Code	USA	France	Germ.	Eng.	Denm.	Sweden	Italy	Spain	Japan
35				6				12	
36						11			
64		0	16			29			
91		5	23		18	23	5	7	
92		15	24		20	24		9	31
93		16	25		13	13	30	8	
94						25			
96						30	2		
123		30	26		19	26	0	22	
124		2	27		21	27	3	10	
125		1	28		14	14	1		
126		22	17			28	4		

Find 8 in the table; it is in the CHR\$(93) row under the Spain heading. To print the character stored in 8, use CHR\$(27)"R"CHR\$(7) to activate the Spanish character set, and print CHR\$(93). Ole! This same technique can be used to access any of the normally unprintable control codes.

Using an international character set while defining characters can be a two-edged sword. If you are currently using one of the international sets (other than USA), then defining any of the codes 35,36, 64, 91 to 94, 96, or 123 to 126 gets a bit tricky. These codes are merely pointers to the control-code areas in which the international characters are really stored.

To define any of these characters while using an international set, the true location of the character must be used. For instance, if the printer is in the Spanish set and you wish to define character 93, you must use CHR\$(8) in the CHR\$(27)"&" sequence to define the character, but CHR\$(93) to print it.

To make sure you understand this thoroughly try answering this one: how would you redefine the ESCape code? First find 27 on the chart. It occurs in two places, one of which is in the column labelled Sweden and the row labelled 124. So you could store a user-defined character at 27 and print it in the Swedish set as character 124.

## Mode Strings

For some applications, you may wish to use all 256 RAM locations for your own special symbols. In that case, there is no need to download the ROM into RAM. But you will need a quick and easy way to switch back and forth between the two character sets. One easy way to do this is to define two character strings:

```
80  RAM$=CHR$(27)+"%" +CHR$(1)+CHR$(0)
90  ROM$=CHR$(27)+"%" +CHR$(@)+CHR$(0)
```

Add these lines to the current program. To demonstrate their effect, try:

```
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)"&"CHR$(0)"18";
140 FOR Y=1 TO 8: LPRINT CHR$(139);
180 LPRINT ROM$"12345678"RAM$"12345678"
1120 DATA 0,63,64,8,64,8,64,28,64,32,0: ' My F
1130 DATA 0,32,64,0,64,63,64,0,64,32,0: ' My T
```

# 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 S O F T W A R E

If you find yourself defining characters in small groups, the same technique can be used to store part of the CHR\$(27) "&" command:

```
Z$=CHR$(27)+"&"+CHR$(0)
```

Z\$ can be used to define each new string of characters with a simple command such as either of these:

```
LPRINT Z$"AZ";  
LPRINT Z$CHR$(128)CHR$(159);
```

## STRATA

Your current program uses eight user-defined characters, which will be used again in a later chapter. For now, delete lines 80, 90 and 165 and change line 180:

```
180 LPRINT " 147646 12345678"
```

```
S T R A T A   S O F T W A R E
```

Save the current program as STRATA.

## Summary

CHR\$(27) "&"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>3</sub>);

Defines characters, where n<sub>1</sub> selects the RAM buffer (0), n<sub>2</sub> is the starting character, and n<sub>3</sub> is the ending character

For each character in the CHR\$(27) "&" sequence from n<sub>2</sub> to n<sub>3</sub>, the printer expects 12 data numbers. The first number, called the attribute byte, determines the height and width characteristics of the character at print time. The other 11 numbers determine the pin patterns used to print the character

CHR\$(27)"%"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)

Activates a given character set, where n<sub>1</sub> indicates ROM (0) or RAM (1) and n<sub>2</sub> is 0

CHR\$(27)“:”CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>3</sub> )	Downloads ROM characters into RAM. All three numbers are 0
CHR\$(27)“6”	Enables printing of codes 128 to 159 and 255
CHR\$(27)“7”	Disables printing of codes 128 to 159 and 255
CHR\$(27)“I1”	Enables printing of the codes 0 to 31 except those used as control codes. The control codes can be printed with CHR\$(27)“R”
CHR\$(27)“I0”	Disables printing of codes 0 to 31



# **Chapter 16**

## **Combining User-Defined Characters**

In this chapter we'll explore the technique of combining user-defined characters to make large letters and symbols.

### **Large Letters: Double Wide**

We'll start by placing two characters next to each other to form a double-width letter. Enter this new program, being careful to enter the line numbers as written.

```
NEW
20 LPRINT CHR$(27) ":"CHR$(0)CHR$(0)CHR$(0);
25 'Copies ROM to RAM
30 LPRINT CHR$(27)%"CHR$(1)CHR$(0); ' Activates RAM
60 LPRINT CHR$(27)"&"CHR$(0)"AB";
65 ' Defines characters A & B
70 FOR Y=1 TO 2: LPRINT CHR$(139); ' Attribute byte
80 FOR x=1 TO 11: READ N: LPRINT CHR$(N);: NEXT X
90 NEXT Y
180 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@";: END
```

The ESCape sequences in line 20,30, and 60 are the commands from the last chapter. This program, prepares the printer to define the two characters A and B. Enter the DATA lines:

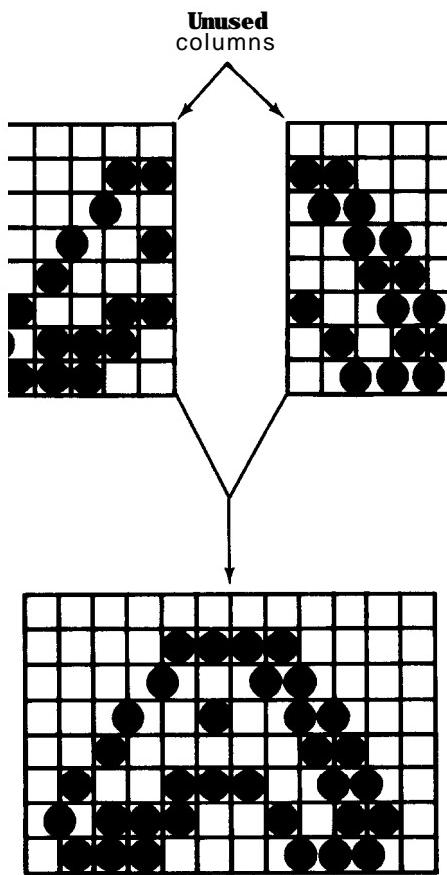
```
200 DATA 0,2,5,0,11,16,3,32,70,0,84
210 DATA 68,32,66,49,8,21,14,5,2,0,0
```

And how do they look side by side? Enter:

```
100 LPRINT "AB"
```



Very nice. Using two characters side by side provides a larger matrix and therefore gives more flexibility in character design. But there is one problem. When two user-defined characters are placed side by side, there is one intermediate column that, unless the first character is printed in Emphasized Mode, cannot contain any dots. As you can see in Figure 16-1, that is the shared intermediate column.



**Figure 16-1. Side-by-side characters**

## Large Letters: Double High

Let's stack two characters, one on top of the other, with these changes:

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"CHR$(27)"U1";
100 LPRINT "A"
110 LPRINT "B"
200 DATA 16,32,95,0,64,0,127,0,63,0,0
210 DATA 14,0,123,0,3,0,123,01127,0,15
```



Line 10 changes the lines spacing to 7-dot and turns on Unidirectional Mode for precise alignment of the two lines. If there are slight gaps between rows, change the line spacing to 6-2/3-dot with CHR\$(27)"3"CHR\$(20).

With a little imagination, you can create some dynamite patterns by combining characters.

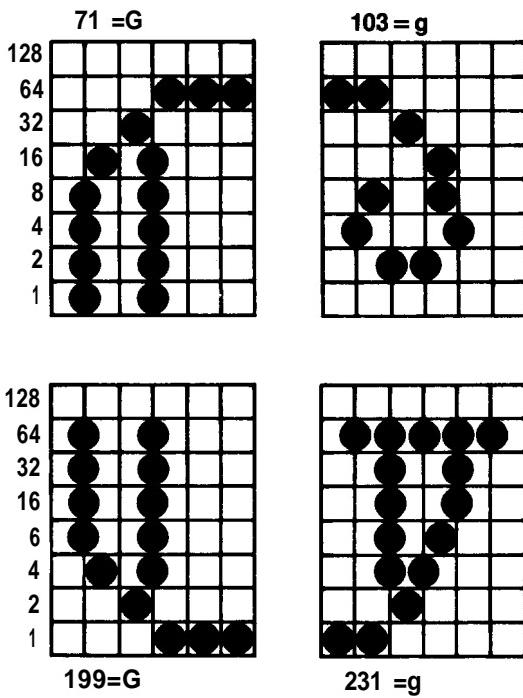
## Giant Letters: Double High and Double Wide

For even larger type styles, you can design letters that are both two characters tall and two characters wide. This gives you an 18 by 22 matrix. If you have a 7-bit system, you will have to skip to "Core Sets," below.

Which ASCII numbers can be used to store the four characters that will make up each letter? A quick glance at the ASCII chart (Appendix A) shows that there are four symbols that readily relate to each letter of the alphabet. They are the upper- and lowercase versions of each letter in its Roman and Italic typefaces. For example, the letter G could be designed using the following four ASCII codes:

CHRS(71) Uppercase Roman G  
CHRS(103) Lowercase Roman g  
CHRS(199) Uppercase Italic G  
CHRS(231) Lowercase Italic g

Such usage is shown in Figure 16-2.



**Figure 16-2 . Double high and wide character**

In order to define letters in groups of four, you'll have to modify the definition process. Fortunately, the ASCII numbers that represent the four versions of each character have a consistent pattern. That pattern is shown in Table 16-1.

**Table 16-1. ASCII pattern**

<b>Pattern</b>	<b>Example</b>
Roman letter = L	G = 72
lowercase letter = L + 32	g = 72 + 32 = 110
Italic letter = L + 128	G = 72 + 128 = 200
Italic lowercase letter = L + 160	g = 72 + 160 = 232

With this in mind, add these lines:

```
40 READ L: PRINT CHR$(L) ' Print to screen
50 FOR Y=0 TO 1: FOR Z=0 TO 1: A=L+128*Y+32*Z
```

and make these changes:

```
60 LPRINT CHR$(27)"&CHR$(0)CHR$(A)CHR$(A);
70 LPRINT CHR$(139);
90 NEXT Z: NEXT Y
```

Line 50 calculates the code (A), to be defined in line 60, by adding the appropriate amount to the base letter L. Line 60 is the CHR\$(27) "&" defining sequence, and line 70 sets the attribute byte to 139.

The code for the letter to be defined and the data for its four components are stored in DATA statements. Delete lines 200-210 and type:

```
250 ' G
260 DATA 71
270 DATA 0,15,16,0,32,31,64,0,64,0,64
280 DATA 64,4,72,2,32,2,24,4,0,0,0
290 DATA 0,120,4,0,2,124,1,0,10,1
300 DATA 1,64,0,124,2,68,8,120,0,64,0
```

Here's the printing routine:

```
100 A$="" : INPUT "ENTER A STRING ",A$:
110 IF A$="" THEN ia0
110 INPUT "ENTER A MASTER PRINT MODE NUMBER ",M
120 LPRINT CHR$(27)"!"CHR$(M);
130 FOR Y=0 TO 1: FOR X=1 TO LEN(A$)
140 A=ASC(MID$(A$,X,1))+128*Y
150 LPRINT CHR$(A)CHR$(A+32);
160 NEXT X: LPRINT: NEXT Y
170 LPRINT
```

Some BASIC systems do not support the MID\$ statement-instead they use subscripts to isolate portions of a string. To designate the

characters in positions 6 and 7 of string A\$, for example, MID\$(A\$,6,2) would be coded as A\$(6,7). If your system uses this scheme, change line 140 to:

```
140 A=ASC(A$(X,X))+128*Y
```

This program automatically prints all four parts of each letter. You type just a single letter; it does the rest. Before you RUN, check it against Figure 16-3.

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"CHR$(27)"U1";
20 LPRINT CHR$(27) ":"CHR$(0)CHR$(0)CHR$(0);
30 LPRINT CHR$(27) "%"CHR$(1)CHR$(0);
40 READ L: PRINT CHR$(L)
50 FOR Y=0 TO 1: FOR Z=0 TO 1: A=L+128*Y+32*Z
60 LPRINT CHR$(27) "&"CHR$(0)CHR$(A)CHR$(A);
70 LPRINT CHR$(139);
80 FOR X=1 TO 11: READ N: LPRINT CHR$(N);: NEXT X
90 NEXT Z: NEXT Y
100 A$="": INPUT "ENTER A STRING ",A$:
    IF A$="" THEN 180
110 INPUT "ENTER A MASTER PRINT MODE NUMBER ",M
120 LPRINT CHR$(27)!"CHR$(M);
130 FOR Y=0 To 1: FOR X=1 TO LEN(A$)
140 A=ASC(MID$(A$,X,1))+128*Y
150 LPRINT CHR$(A)CHR$(A+32);
160 NEXT X: LPRINT: NEXT Y
170 LPRINT
180 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
250 ' G
260 DATA 71
270 DATA 0,15,16,0,32,31,64,0,64,0,64
280 DATA 64,4,72,2,32,2,24,4,0,0,0
290 DATA 0,120,4,0,2,124,1,0,1,0,1
300 DATA 1,64,0,124,2,68,8,120,0,64,0
```

**Figure 16-3. Program for giant G**

When you RUN it, you should see line 100's prompt:

ENTER A STRING

You can respond with any string of letters, but for now type GO, with

no space after the 0 and then press RETURN. The next prompt on the screen is:

### ENTER A MASTER PRINT MODE NUMBER

For now, enter a 24. Remember, all codes from 0 to 255 produce a combination of print modes, but there are only 16 unique combinations. You may want to refer to Figure 5-2 for the other possibilities.



*Figure 76-4. Giant G*

The four characters defined in lines 270 to 300 combine to print a giant G. The 0 is printed as four small characters. Figure 16-4 illustrates the way the program arranges the four versions of each character to make a larger letter.

Line 140 examines the A\$ string, character by character, and determines its ASCII value. Line 150 prints what's now stored in the locations for the Roman upper- and lowercase versions of each character on the first pass of the print head. On the second pass, Y is set to 1 and 128 is added to A in line 140. Thus line 150 then prints what has replaced the Italic versions of the character.

To get a better idea of what this program can do, you'll need to add more data. The DATA lines below supply data for the letters A-M-E-S and for the space character. (It is necessary to redefine the space character since two of its four components print as @ signs.)

Be careful. Although the space character is user-definable, you should avoid using it as anything other than a space character. No matter how it is defined, the space character will never print at the beginning or end of a line.

Enter the data lines as shown in Figure 16-5. Now add a loop to READ the new data by changing these lines:

```
40 FOR W=1 TO 6:READ L: PRINT CHR$(L)  
90 NEXT Z: NEXT Y: NEXT W
```

```

190  ' SPACE
200 DATA 32
210 DATA 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
220 DATA 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
230 DATA 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
240 DATA 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
310 ' A
320 DATA 65
330 DATA 0,0,1,0,1,0,6,24,32,92,0
340 DATA 67,32,24,4,3,0,0,0,0,0,0
350 DATA 0,65,32,7,24,33,64,32,16,0,8
360 DATA 8,97,24,7,0,97,24,7,0,1,0
370 ' M
380 DATA 77
390 DATA 0,64,0,127,0,32,16,7,8,0,4
400 DATA 4,0,8,7,16,32,0,127,0,64,0
410 DATA 0,1,0,127,0,1,0,127,0,1,0
420 DATA 0,1,0,127,0,1,0,127,0,1,0
430 ' E
440 DATA 69
450 DATA 0,64,0,127,0,64,0,62,65,0,65
460 DATA 65,0,67,0,64,0,64,32,0,0,0
470 DATA 0,1,0,127,0,1,0,126,1,0,1
480 DATA 1,0,69,0,11,0,11,0,6,0,0
490 ' S
500 DATA 83
510 DATA 0,0,0,24,36,0,66,16,105,0,68
520 DATA 74,0,69,0,68,0,40,16,0,0,0
530 DATA 0,8,22,0,33,0,33,16,1,0,65
540 DATA 33,0,17,0,75,4,33,0,22,8,0

```

**Figure 16-S. Data for AMES**

And RUN. This time respond to the prompts by typing:

```

GAMES SEEM SAME
49

```



GAMES SEEM SAME

**Figure 16-6. Games seem same**

When characters are printed side by side in any mode **that compresses the matrix columns**, gaps appear at the intermediate column

positions. That includes Elite and Compressed Modes. For a comparison of the three print pitches, RUN the program three more times and enter:

```
MESSAGES, 48  
MESSAGES, 49  
MESSAGES, 52
```



*Figure 16-7. Messages in three pitches*

All three mode combinations include Double-Strike and Expanded print; the only difference between them is the pitch. The first pitch is Pica, the second is Elite, the third is Compressed.

Despite this limitation, you should have a good time adding the rest of the alphabet or defining your own character set. By the way, the Introduction at the beginning of this manual shows a few more of these Double Wide and Double High letters.

You may want to SAVE the current program before proceeding.

## Core Sets

Combining user-defined characters is a great way to create frequently used logos or fancy headings. But as you saw, defining an entire alphabet of oversized letters uses up ASCII codes rather quickly.

Fortunately, there is an alternative. In some cases, you may be able to define a handful of core characters that can be combined to make any letter in the alphabet. This requires a bit of imagination; we present an example here to lubricate those creative gears.

Prepare for the program changes by deleting lines 20, 40, 50, and 100 to 540. Now change:

```
60 LPRINT CHR$(27)""CHR$(0)"16";  
70 FOR Y=1 TO 6: LPRINT CHR$(139);  
90 NEXT Y
```

Deleting line 20 ensures that the printer does not download the ROM characters. That makes your defined characters the only ones around—no funny stuff on the printer. Here is the data:

```
100 ' SIX
110 DATA 7,8,16,0,32,3,68,0,72,0,73
120 DATA 73,0,72,0,68,3,32,0,16,8,7
130 DATA 73,0,9,0,17,96,2,0,4,8,112
140 DATA 112,8,4,0,2,96,17,0,9,0,73
150 DATA 127,0,0,0,0,127,0,0,0,0,127
160 DATA 73,73,73,73,73,73,73,73,73,73
```

That's right, there are only six characters, but it is a very powerful set of characters. With them, you can print an entire alphabet and more. To see the magnificent SIX, type:

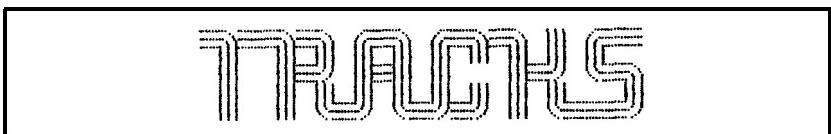
```
180 LPRINT "1 2 3 4 5 6"
200 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
```

© 3 4 5 6 7 8 III =

Now try printing them in a different order. Type:

```
170 FOR Y=1 TO 5
180 READ P$: LPRINT P$
190 NEXT Y
210 ' Tracks
220 DATA "62662620162016262050166"
230 DATA "050050505050505050500"
240 DATA "05005630565050005630462"
250 DATA "05005050505050505050005"
260 DATA "05005046304636305046663"
```

Give it a RUN to get the pattern shown in Figure 16-S.



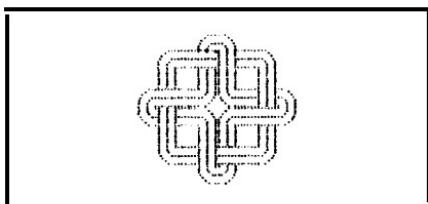
The word "TRACKS" is printed in a bold, blocky font. It is composed of the characters defined in the data section, specifically the 'SIX' character set. The letters are formed by combinations of the characters 1 through 6, creating a unique and artistic representation of the word.

**Figure 26-8. Tracks**

Those little characters can do some amazing tricks. Try another; begin by deleting lines 210 to 260, then change:

```
170 FOR Y=1 TO 8
210 ' Pattern
```

```
210 ' Pattern
220 DATA "00012000, "01665620"
230 DATA "05055050", "16634652"
240 DATA "45621663", "
250 DATA "04656630", "00043000"
```



**Figure 16-9. Interlace**

Have fun creating your own designs with these characters. You may wish to SAVE the program before proceeding.

## Line Graphics

The RX series printers have a set of line-graphics characters stored in ROM. In the following program, we define a similar set.

What are line-graphics characters? They are a set of characters that fit together to make borders and outlines for all kinds of forms. Since they are so useful, we use them again in the next chapter; be sure to save the next program when you are through entering it.

We will add to the program that you built and saved as STRATA in the last chapter. LOAD in the STRATA program and delete lines 180 and 190. Then add these lines:

```
130 LPRINT CHR$(27) & "CHR$(0)"a1";
140 FOR Y=1 TO 12: LPRINT CHR$(139);
170 LPRINT "a b c d e f g h i j k l"
```

Remember, if your computer cannot send lowercase letters, use the ASCII values for the letters you need (See Appendix A). Add:

```
899 ' <<< LINE GRAPHICS AND SHADING >>>
900 DATA 0,0,0,0,15,0,8,0,8,0,8: ' a
910 DATA 8,0,8,0,15,0,0,0,0,0,0: ' b
920 DATA 8,0,8,0,120,0,0,0,0,0,0: ' c
930 DATA 0,0,0,0,120,0,8,0,8,0,8: ' d
940 DATA 8,0,8,0,120,0,8,0,8,0,8: ' e
950 DATA 8,0,8,0,15,0,8,0,8,0,8: ' f
960 DATA 0,0,0,0,127,0,8,0,8,0,8: ' g
```

```
970 DATA 8,0,8,0,127,0,0,0,0,0,0: 'h  
980 DATA 8,0,8,0,127,0,8,0,8,0,8: 'i  
990 DATA 8,0,8,0,8,0,80,8,0,8: 'j  
1000 DATA 0,0,0,0,127,0,0,0,0,0,0: 'k  
1010 DATA 84,0,170,0,84,0,170,0,84,0,170: ' 1
```

r n f l + - + - | ☺

You can put the line-graphics characters to work like this:

```
100 LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"  
170 LPRINT "ajjjjjjfjjjjjjjb"  
175 LPRINT "k NAME k PHONE k"  
180 LPRINT "gjjjjjjiji jjjjjjjh"  
185 LPRINT "k k k"  
190 LPRINT "djjjjjejjjjjjc"
```

RUN the program to produce pair of boxes as shown below.

NAME	PHONE

Note the the text lines use only uppercase letters since you've replaced the lowercase versions with your own characters.

Make sure you SAVE this program as LINE-but before you do, delete lines 170 to 190.

## Summary

In this chapter we've shown you how to combine user-defined characters horizontally, vertically, and both ways at once. We've also given you two core sets of characters, SIX and LINE.

# **Chapter 17**

## **Business Applications**

In this chapter we turn our attention to business applications. First we program a sample barchart. Then we use designs from previous chapters to develop a program that puts the FX through its paces.

The programs pull together many of the programming techniques that you've used in the course of this manual. The second one is considerably longer than the programs in previous chapters, and the length provides two benefits. First, you'll have a chance to really test your own understanding of the FX printer. Second, a longer program shows you how versatile your printer can be.

### **Preparation**

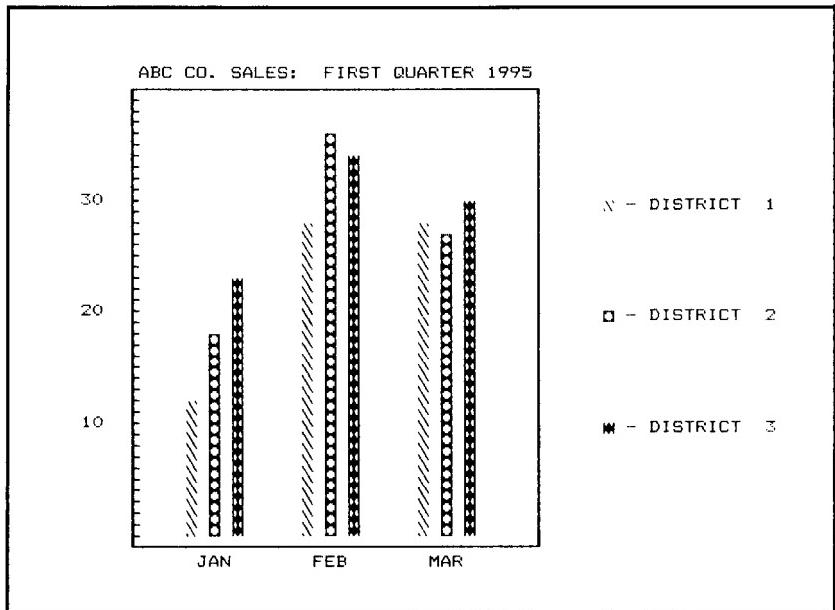
Load the LINE program you saved at the end of Chapter 16 and delete lines 1100-1170. You will use the line graphics characters to print a sales chart in this chapter.

### **Barchart**

This program creates the barchart shown as Figure 17-1. It uses the line graphics characters from the LINE program as well as three new user-defined characters. Change the following lines:

```
100 LPRINT CHR$(27)"3"CHR$(10)CHR$(27)"U1";
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)"&"CHR$(0)CHR$(94)CHR$(107);
140 FOR Y=1 TO 14: LPRINT CHR$(139);
160 NEXT Y: LPRINT CHR$(27)"C"CHR$(33);
```

Line 100 sets up line spacing and Unidirectional print. You print in Unidirectional Mode to be sure the line graphics characters line up precisely.



**Figure 17-1. Barchart**

In line 130 the parameters for "&" specify that our 14 user-defined characters will be stored at positions 94 to 107 (ASCII symbols ^ to k).

Line 140 sets up a READ loop (Y) for the characters and sends the attribute byte--CHR\$(139). Line 160 closes the loop and sets the form length to 33 lines so that, while you are setting the chart up, you can print two charts to a page. When you finish making experimental printouts, you will probably want to change this specification to 66 to conform to the usual page size. Check that you like the positioning of your paper since "C" also sets top of form to the current position of the print head. Now add these lines:

```

10 FOR J=1 TO 3:FOR K=1 TO 3
20      READ MAX(J,K)
30 NEXT K: NEXT J
40 DATA 12,18,23,28,36,34,28,27,30

```

Line 20 READS the maximum heights for the chart's vertical bars from line 40 and stores them in the array MAX. The next data lines define three new characters:

```

70 DATA 2,1,64,32,16,8,4,2,1,64,32
80 DATA 127,0,99,0,65,0,65,0,99,0,12'7
90 DATA 127,0,28,0,62,65,62,0,28,0,127

```

Since you will need to switch two features-line feeds and Emphasized Mode-on and off within the program, you can store their commands as shorter strings:

```
50 B$=CHR$(27)+"E"  
60 D$=CHR$(27)+"J"+CHR$(11): C$=CHR$(27)+"F"
```

If your system won't send an 11, change both instances to either 10 or 12. The next 18 lines print the barchart.

```
190 LPRINT CHR$(27)"D"CHR$(14)CHR$(19)CHR$(24)  
    CHR$(34)CHR$(44)CHR$(54);  
200 LPRINT CHR$(60)CHR$(1);: H$=CHR$(137): Z=1
```

Lines 190 and 200 set horizontal tab stops and store the horizontal tab character in H\$.

```
210 LPRINT H$;H$;" ABC CO. SALES: FIRST QUARTER  
    1995": LPRINT: LPRINT  
220 LPRINT H$;H$;B$;"a";: N=34: A$="j": GOSUB 800:  
    LPRINT "b"  
799 ' *** STRING$ ROUTINE ***  
800 FOR J=1 TO N: LPRINT A$;: NEXT J: RETURN
```

Lines 210 and 220 start the printing, using horizontal tabs and special characters. For systems without a STRING\$ function, the GOSUB in line 220 can print a string of characters.

```
230 LPRINT H$;H$;"k";H$;H$;H$;H$;"k"  
240 FOR R=39 TO 1 STEP -1: LPRINT H$;: F=0  
250 IF R/10=INT(R/10) THEN LPRINT R;: F=1  
260 LPRINT B$;H$;"g";D$;C$;
```

Line 250 prints the value of R every tenth line and sets a flag (F) to print DISTRICT

```
270 FOR M=1 TO 3: LPRINT H$;  
280 FOR P=1 TO 3  
290 IF R>MAX(M,P) THEN LPRINT " "; ELSE LPRINT  
    CHR$(93+P); " ";
```

Line 290 compares the current row (R) with the array (MAX) to determine whether to print a character or a blank space.

```
300 NEXT P: NEXT M: LPRINT B$;H$;"k";C$;: IF F=0  
    THEN LPRINT: GOTO 320  
310 LPRINT H$;CHR$(93+Z)" - DISTRICT ";Z: Z=Z+1  
320 NEXT R: LPRINT H$;H$;B$;"g";H$;H$;H$;H$;"k"  
325 LPRINT H$;H$;B$;"k";H$;H$;H$;H$;"k"
```

```

330 LPRINT H$;H$;"d";: A$="j": GOSUB 800: LPRINT "c"
335 LPRINT: LPRINT
340 LPRINT C$;H$;H$;H$;" JAN";H$;" FEB";H$;" MAR":  
LPRINT
390 LPRINT CHR$(27)@"": END

```

Line 300 closes the P and M loops, prints the right-hand border, and sends control to either 310 or 320. Line 310 prints the districts. Lines 320 through 340 print the bottom portion of the chart.

Check your listing against the one shown as Figure 17-2. Now it's time to RUN your program and see if it looks like the printout near the beginning of this chapter.

You can change the heights of the bars by changing the data in line 40. Go ahead and SAVE the program as BARCHART if you like.

```

10 FOR J=1 TO 3: FOR K=1 TO 3
20 READ MAX (J,K)
30 NEXT K: NEXT J
40 DATA 12,18,23,28,36,34,28,27,30
50 B$=CHR$(27)+"E"
60 D$=CHR$(27)+"J"+CHR$(11): C$=CHR$(27)+"F"
70 DATA 2,1,64,32,16,8,4,2,1,64,32
80 DATA 127,0,99,0,65,0,65,0,99,0,127
90 DATA 127,0,28,0,62,65,62,0,28,0,127
100 LPRINT CHR$(27) "3"CHR$(10) CHR$(27)"U1"j
110 LPRINT CHR$(27) ":"CHR$(0)CHR$(0)CHR$(0);
120 LPRINT CHR$(27) "%"CHR$(1)CHR$(0);
130 LPRINT CHR$(27) "&"CHR$(0)CHR$(94)CHR$(107);
140 FOR Y=1 TO 14: LPRINT CHR$(139);
150 FOR X=1 TO 11: READ C: LPRINT CHR$(C);: NEXT X
160 NEXT Y: LPRINT CHR$(27)"C"CHR$(33);
170 LPRINT CHR$(27)"D"CHR$(14)CHR$(19)CHR$(24)
    CHR$(34)CHR$(44)CHR$(54);
180 LPRINT CHR$(60)CHR$(1);: H$=CHR$(137): Z=1
210 LPRINT H$;H$;" ABC CO. SALES: FIRST QUARTER
    1995": LPRINT: LPRINT
220 LPRINT H$;H$;B$;"a";: N=34: A$="j": GOSUB 800:
    LPRINT "b"
230 LPRINT H$;H$;"k";H$;H$;H$;H$;"k"
240 FOR R=39 TO 1 STEP -1: LPRINT H$;: F=0
250 IF R/10=INT(R/10) THEN LPRINT R;: F=1
260 LPRINT B$;H$;"g";D$;C$;

```

**Figure 77-2. Program for BARCHART**

```

270 FOR M=1 TO 3:LPRINT H$;
280 FOR P=1 TO 3
290 IF R>MAX(M,P) THEN LPRINT " " ;ELSE LPRINT
CHR$(93+P); " ";
300 NEXT P: NEXT M: LPRINT B$;H$;"k";C$:: IF F=0
THEN LPRINT: GOT0 320
310 LPRINT H$;CHR$(93+Z)" - DISTRICT ";Z: Z=Z+1
320 NEXT R: LPRINT H$;H$;B$;"g";H$jH$;H$;H$;"k"
325 LPRINT H$;H$;B$;"k";H$;H$;H$;H$;"k"
330 LPRINT H$;H$;"d": A$="j": GOSUB 800: LPRINT "c"
335 LPRINT: LPRINT
340 LPRINT C$;H$;H$;H$;" JAN";H$;" FEB";H$;" MAR":LPRINT
390 LPRINT CHR$(27) "@": END
799 ' *** STRING$ ROUTINE ***
800 FOR J=1 TO N: LPRINT A$::: NEXT J: RETURN
899 . <<< LINE GRAPHICS AND SHADING >>>
900 DATA 0,0,0,0,15,0,8,0,8,0,8:'a
910 DATA 8,0,8,0,15,0,0,0,0,0,0: 'b
920 DATA 8,0,8,0,120,0,0,0,0,0,0: 'c
930 DATA 0,0,0,0,120,0,8,0,8,0,8:'d
940 DATA 8,0,8,0,120,0,8,0,8,0,8:'e
950 DATA 8,0,8,0,15,0,8,0,8,0,8:'f
960 DATA 0,0,0,0,127,0,8,0,8,0,8: 'g
970 DATA 8,0,8,0,127,0,0,0,0,0,0:'h
980 DATA 8,0,8,0,127,0,8,0,8,0,8:'i
990 DATA 8,0,8,0,8,0,8,0,8,0,8:'j
1000 DATA 0,0,0,0,127,0,0,0,0,0,0,:'k
1010 DATA 84,0,170,0,84,0,170,0,84,0,170:'l

```

**Figure 17-2. Program for BARCHART (concluded)**

## Statement Form

For the last application of this manual, you will produce, for a hypothetical business-Strata Software, the statement form that is shown as Figure 17-3. Feel free to adapt the form or any of its elements to your own purposes.

Do you recognize figures from previous chapters within this form? We have you use the logo we developed in Chapter 12, user-defined characters from Chapter 1.5, and line-graphics characters from Chapter 16. By combining figures from previous chapters with new material, this large program demonstrates the way you can use several of the techniques you have learned within a single application.

Figure 17-3. Statement form

	<b>STRATA SOFTWARE</b> 80 TRACK DRIVE DATA TOWN, U.S.A. 01248 PHONE FX1-0080	<b>STATEMENT</b>				
<table border="1"><tr><td>ACCOUNT NO.</td><td>DATE</td></tr><tr><td> </td><td> </td></tr></table>			ACCOUNT NO.	DATE		
ACCOUNT NO.	DATE					
<p>\$----- AMOUNT REMITTED-----</p>						
<p>PLEASE DETACH AND RETURN WITH YOUR PAYMENT</p>						
DATE	INVOICE NO.	DESCRIPTION	BALANCE	PAYMENTS	BALANCE	
CURRENT	30 DAYS	60 DAYS	90 DAYS	AMOUNT DUE		
<b>STRATA SOFTWARE</b>			<b>THANK YOU</b>			

Since this program uses many of the routines from the BAR-CHART program above, begin by loading that program. Many of its lines need no changes, including:

110, 120, 150 and 799-1010

Delete lines 10 to 90. Make small changes to four lines:

```
100 DIM A(18): LPRINT  
    CHR$(27)"3"CHR$(20)CHR$(27)"U1";  
130 LPRINT CHR$(27)"&"CHR$(0) "at";  
140 FOR Y=1 TO 20: LPRINT CHR$(139);  
160 NEXT Y: LPRINT CHR$(27)"C"CHR$(66);: GOSUB 700
```

Lines 130 and 140 specify the number (20) and locations (ASCII a - t) of user-defined characters. Line 160 sets the form length to 66 lines and top of form to the current position of the print head, and sends the program to line 700, where the logo subroutine begins.

You can check your changes against the complete listing of STATEMENT that appears as Figure 17-4. That listing also gives you the lines that are new; such lines fall into two long sections:

170 to 770  
1099 to 1370

Enter them one at a time, replacing the corresponding lines from the BARCHART program.

If your computer system requires a WIDTH statement to prevent the printer from issuing a carriage return before the graphics line is complete, add it now:

7 WIDTH LPRINT 255

The format for this statement may be different for your BASIC; see your software documentation.

If you are using an FX-100, add this line to set the right margin:

90 LPRINT CHR\$(27)"QP";

```

7 WIDTH LPRINT 255
90 LPRINT CHR$(27)"QP";
100 DIM A(18): LPRINT
    CHR$(27)"3"CHR$(20)CHR$(27)"U1";
110 LPRINT CHR$(27) ":"CHR$(0)CHR$(0)CHR$(0);
120 LPRINT CHR$(27) "%"CHR$(1)CHR$(0);
130 LPRINT CHR$(27) "&"CHR$(0)"at1";
140 FOR Y=1 TO 20: LPRINT CHR$(139);
150 FOR X=1 TO 11: READ C: LPRINT CHR$(C);: NEXT X
160 NEXT Y: LPRINT CHR$(27)"C"CHR$(66);: GOSUB 700
170 LPRINT CHR$(27)"!8";"mpsrepr mnopqrst";
    CHR$(27)"!@";
180 LPRINT CHR$(27)"B"CHR$(18)CHR$(25)CHR$(1);
190 LPRINT CHR$(27)"D"CHR$(13)CHR$(17)CHR$(57)
    CHR$(69)CHR$(1);
200 H$=CHR$(137): LPRINT H$;CHR$(14)" STATEMENT"
210 GOSUB 700: LPRINT: GOSUB 700
220 LPRINT H$;H$;CHR$(27)"!A";"80 TRACK DRIVE":
    GOSUB 700
230 LPRINT: GOSUB 700: LPRINT H$;"DATA TOWN, U.S.A.
    01248": GOSUB 700
240 LPRINT: LPRINT H$;H$;CHR$(27)"!Q";
    "PHONE FX1-0080"
250 LPRINT CHR$(27)"!@";
260 LPRINT CHR$(27)"D"CHR$(57)CHR$(72)CHR$(1);
270 C=2: H=2: F=0: FT=1: GOSUB 500: LPRINT
280 LPRINT CHR$(11);H$;"&"CHR$(8);: A$=CHR$(95):
    N=21: GOSUB 800
290 LPRINT: LPRINT H$;CHR$(27) "S1"; AMOUNT
    REMITTED"
300 LPRINT CHR$(27)"D"CHR$(3)CHR$(13)CHR$(29)
    CHR$(46)CHR$(55)CHR$(68)CHR$(1);
310 LPRINT CHR$(11);H$;H$;CHR$(27)"SO";" PLEASE
    DETACH AND RETURN WITH YOUR PAYMENT"
320 LPRINT CHR$(27)"T";: N=80: A$="-": GOSUB 800:
    LPRINT
330 C=6: H=12: F=1: FT=0: GOSUB 500
340 LPRINT CHR$(27)"D"CHR$(8)CHR$(26)CHR$(38)
    CHR$(50)CHR$(65)CHR$(1);
350 C=5: H=2: F=0: GOSUB 500: LPRINT
360 LPRINT CHR$(27)"D"CHR$(8)CHR$(57)CHR$(0)
370 LPRINT CHR$(27)"!T";H$;"mpsrepr mnopqrst" H$;
380 LPRINT CHR$(27)"!1";CHR$(27)"4";"THANK YOU"
390 LPRINT CHR$(27)"@": END

```

**Figure 17-4. Program for STATEMENT**

```

499 ' *** BOX SUBROUTINE ***
500 FOR K=1 TO 5: READ L$(K),M$(K),N$(K),R$(K):
NEXT K
510 FOR K=1 TO C: READ W(K): NEXT K
520 FOR L=1 TO 5: IF L=4 THEN FOR G=1 TO H
530 IF FT=1 THEN LPRINT H$;
540 LPRINT L$(L);: FOR K=1 TO C-1
550 FOR J=1 TO W(K): LPRINT M$(L);: NEXT J
560 LPRINT N$(L);: NEXT K
570 N=W(C): A$=M$(L): GOSUB 800: LPRINT R$(L);
580 IF L<>2 THEN 640
590 LPRINT CHR$(27)"!H";CHR$(27)"A"CHR$(0)
600 FOR Q=1 TO C: READ T$: LPRINT H$;T$;: NEXT Q
610 LPRINT CHR$(27)"!@";
620 IF F=1 THEN LPRINT CHR$(27)"A"CHR$(0): N=80:
A$="1" : GOSUB 800
640 IF L<5 THEN LPRINT CHR$(27)"1"
650 IF L=4 THEN NEXT G
660 NEXT L: RETURN
699 ' *** DRAW LOGO ***
700 LPRINT CHR$(27)"L"CHR$(60)CHR$(0);
710 READ N: IF N=128 THEN 770
720 IF N>=0 THEN LPRINT CHR$(N);: GOTO 710
730 READ P,R: FOR J=1 TO -N: LPRINT CHR$(P)
CHR$(R);: NEXT J
740 GOTO 710
770 RETURN
799 ' *** STRING$ ROUTINE ***
800 FOR J=1 TO N: LPRINT A$;: NEXT J: RETURN
899 ' <<< LINE GRAPHICS AND SHADING >>>
900 DATA 0,0,0,0,15,0,8,0,8,0,8: 'a
910 DATA 8,0,8,0,15,0,0,0,0,0,0: 'b
920 DATA 8,0,8,0,120,0,0,0,0,0,0: 'c
930 DATA 0,0,0,0,120,0,8,0,8,0,8: 'd
940 DATA 8,0,8,0,120,0,8,0,8,0,8: 'e
950 DATA 8,0,8,0,15,0,8,0,8,0,8: 'f
960 DATA 0,0,0,0,127,0,8,0,8,0,8: 'g
970 DATA 8,0,8,0,127,0,0,0,0,0,0: 'h
980 DATA 8,0,8,0,127,0,8,0,8,0,8: 'i
990 DATA 8,0,8,0,8,0,8,0,8,0,8: "
1000 DATA 0,0,0,0,127,0,0,0,0,0,0:'j:
1010 DATA 84,0,170,0,84,0,170,0,84,0, 170: '1
1099 ' <<< STRATA SOFTWARE >>>

```

**Figure 17-4. Program for STATEMENT (continued)**

```

1100 DATA 0,121,0,73,0,73,0,73,0,79,0: 'm - S
1110 DATA 0,127,0,65,0,65,0,65,0,127,0:'n - 0
1120 DATA 0,63,64,8,64,8,64,28,64,32,0:'o- F
1130 DATA 0,32,64,0,64,63,64,0,64,32,0'p - T
1140 DATA 0,126,1,2,4,1,2,4,8,4,2,1,126,0: 'q - W
1150 DATA 0,7,8,16,36,64,36,16,8,7,0: 'r - A
1160 DATA 0,127,0,72,0,72,0,76,2,121,0:'s - R
1170 DATA 0,62,65,8,65,8,65,28,65,34,0:'t - E
1199 ' <<< LOGO DATA >>>
1200 DATA 0,1,2,4,11,18,36,72,-16,16,64,8,
64,8,32,16,0,-7,0,0,128
1210 DATA 0,126,1,0,126,1,-5,0,0,1,2,4,11,18,36,-16
8,32,4,32,4,16,8,0,128
1220 DATA 0,0,0,64,32,16,72,36,-3,16,4,34,
65,0,0,65,34,-8,16,4,18,11,4,2,1,0,-9,0,0,128
1230 DATA -8,0,0,64,32,16,72,36,16,-7,4,16,36,
67,0,0,1,66,36,-4,16,4,18,11,4,2,1,-290,
0,128
1240 DATA 0,32,16,64,8,64,-15,8,32,72,16,32,64,-6,
0,0,0,127,0,0,127,0,0,0,128
1250 DATA -7,0,0,0,8,4,16,2,16,-15,2,
8,18,36,72,16,32,64,-2,g,0,128
1299 ' <<< BOX DATA >>>
1300 DATA a,j,f,b,k," ",k,k,g,j,i,h,k," ",k,k,
d,j,e,c
1310 DATA 11,8,' ACCOUNT NO.,"DATE"
1320 DATA j,j,f,j," "," ",k," ",d",j,j,i,j,
" "," ",k," ",j,j,e,j
1330 DATA 11,11,20,8,8,15,"DATE","INVOICE NO."
1340 DATA "DESCRIPTION", "CHARGES",
"PAYMENTS", "BALANCE"
1350 DATA j,j,f,j," "," ", " ", " ",j,j,i,j," ",",",k,
" ",j ,j ,e,j
1360 DATA 22,11,11,12,18
1370 DATA "CURRENT", "30 DAYS", "60 DAYS", "90
DAYS", "AMOUNT DUE"

```

*Figure 17-4. Program for STATEMENT (concluded)*

You may prefer to work out what each line does on your own—three cheers if you do. But if you want a little guidance, here is a brief program overview, followed by a line-by-line description of the main portion of the program.

STATEMENT breaks down into several large blocks of routines and data:

<b>Lines</b>	<b>Routine</b>
100-150	Defines characters and does housekeeping
160-390	Prints the statement form
500-660	The box subroutine
700-770	The logo subroutine
800	The STRING\$ subroutine
900-1010	Data for line graphics
1100-1170	Data for the STRATA SOFTWARE letters
1200-1250	Data for the logo
1300-1370	Data for the box routine

Line 170 prints STRATA SOFTWARE using Master Select to define **the mode**.

Lines 180 and 190 set vertical and horizontal tab stops.

Line 200 stores the tab command in H\$ and prints STATEMENT in Expanded print.

Line 210 prints the second and third lines of the logo.

Lines 220-250 print more of the logo and the address in various mode combinations.

Line 260 sets new horizontal tab stops.

Line 270 sets some variables for the box subroutine at 500. That routine prints the box in the upper-right corner of the sheet.

Line 280 does a vertical tab, then prints a string of 21 underline characters (ASCII 95) via subroutine 800.

Line 290 prints **the Subscript AMOUNT REMITTED**.

Line 300 sets new horizontal tab stops.

Line 310 tabs vertically twice, then prints a Superscript message.

Line 320 cancels Scripts and prints 80 hyphens with subroutine 800.

Line 330 calls the box routine.

Line 340 sets new horizontal tabs.

Line 350 calls the box routine.

Line 360 sets new horizontal tabs.

Line 370 prints STRATA SOFTWARE in a different print mode.

Line 380 thanks us in Italic characters.

Line 390 resets all modes and ends the program.

Deciphering the box routine in lines 500 through 660 is left as an exercise for you. The following hints will get you started.

The subroutine at 500 is used to create three boxes of different sizes and characteristics, using the line-graphics characters. The data stored in lines 1300 to 1370 determine which line-graphics characters are used to print the boxes, the width of each cell, and the headings.

The variables sent to **the** subroutine are:

- C      the number of cells
- H      the height of the cells
- F      a flag for shading the headings
- FT     a **flag that** allows a horizontal tab to adjust the left margin of the box.

## **999 REM: The End**

In this chapter we developed a program that uses many of the features of the FX printer. The program demonstrates the tremendous potential of **the** powerful tool you have at your beck and call. We hope it inspires you to use the FX printer in many creative ways to enhance your own programming applications.

# INDEX

Note: Refer to Table of Contents and List of Figures for specific programs. Also, the chapter summaries are not indexed.

## A

Accessories, 16  
American Standard Code for Information Interchange.  
    See ASCII  
Apostrophe. See REMarks  
Apple II computers, 38, 40, 312-313  
    See also Seven-bit systems  
Arrays, 173-176, 189-193  
    DIMensioning, 176  
Arrow. See Exponent character  
ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange), 38,40-42  
    codes listed for all characters, 253-270  
    See also International character set  
Attribute byte. See User-defined characters  
Automatic test. See Test

## B

þ See Blank space  
Backspace, 81-83  
    CHR\$(8) produces it.  
Bail. See Paper bail  
Barchart, 227-231  
BASIC program listings, 322  
Beeper, 41-42, 304-305  
    CHR\$( 7) sounds beeper.  
Bidirectional printing. See Unidirectional Mode  
Bit, high order, 310-311  
    ESCape ">" turns it on; ESCape "=" turns it off; ESCape "#" accepts eighth bit as is from the computer.  
    See also Seven-bit systems  
Blank space, v  
Board, serial and interface. See Interface  
Bold printing. See Double-Strike; Emphasized; Proportional  
Bracket. See Exponent character  
Buffer. See Printer buffer  
Business applications, 227-238  
Byte, Attribute. See User-defined characters

# C

Cable, 16, 35  
CANcel, 46  
Caret symbol. See Exponent character  
Carriage return, 23, 41  
    CHR\$( 13) produces it.  
    See *also* Line feed  
Centronics. See Interface  
Channels. See Tabs, vertical  
Character fonts, shown, 253-270  
    See also User-defined characters  
Character size, 256-270, 327  
    See also specific pitches by name  
Character string function. See CHR\$ function  
CHR\$ function, 39  
    See also ASCII codes  
CHR\$(7). Sounds beeper. See Beeper  
CHR\$(8). Produces backspace. See Backspace  
CHR\$(9). Activates a horizontal tab. See Tabs  
CHR\$(10). Produces a line feed. See Line feed  
CHR\$(11). Activates a vertical tab. See Tabs  
CHR\$(12). Produces a form feed. See Form feed  
CHR\$(13). Produces a carriage return. See Carriage return  
CHR\$(14). Turns One-Line Expanded Mode on. See Expanded Mode  
CHR\$(15). Turns Compressed Mode on. See Compressed Mode  
CHR\$(18). Turns Compressed Mode off. See Compressed Mode  
CHR\$(20). Turns One-Line Expanded Mode off. See Expanded Mode  
CHR!\$(27). ESCape code. See ESCape  
CHR\$(127). Deletes. See DElete  
CHR\$(137). Alternate code to activate horizontal tab. See Tabs  
Circle plotting, 177-184  
Circuit board. See Interface  
Codes. See ASCII codes; Control codes; Escape; CHR\$ function  
Coding solutions, 306-309  
Columns  
    for ROM character set, 50-52  
    for User-defined characters, 201-205, 216, 222-223  
Comparison table for control codes, 287-294  
Compressed Mode, 53-55  
    CHR\$(15) turns it on; CHR\$(18) turns it off.  
    DIP switch adjustment for, 54-55  
    margin settings in, 117  
Concept. See Corvus  
Continuous-feed paper. See Paper

Control codes, 41-42

    Hex dumping and. See Hex dumping  
    for FX compared with those for MX and RX, 287-294  
    listed by function, 283-286  
    listed by number, 271-281  
    See also specific modes and functions

Control panel, 35

Conventions used in this manual, iii-vi

Core sets of user-defined characters, 223-226

Corvus Concept computers, 151

Covers. See lids

## D

DATA statements, 154-156, 166-167

Data transfer sequence, 335-336

DEC microcomputers, 151

Default settings, 44, 295-296

DEFINT, 176

DELETED, 46

    CHR\$(127) deletes.

Density. See Graphics Mode

Designing graphics. See Graphics

DIMensioning. See Arrays

Dimensions of printer, 329

DIP switches, 20-23, 296-299

Dot matrix, 49-52

    in dot graphics, 131-132

    patterns for character fonts, 49-52, 253-270

Double-Strike Mode, 61-62, 63

    ESCape "G" turns it on; ESCape "H" turns it off.

Downloading. See User-defined characters

Dress-up Modes. See Underline Mode; Script Mode; Italic Mode

Driver. See Printer driver

Dumping, hex. See Hex dumping

## E

Elite Mode, 52-53

    ESCape "M" turns it on; ESCape "P" turns it off.

Emphasized Mode, 62-64

    ESCape "E" turns it on; ESCape "F" turns it off.

END, v

Environment, specifications for, 329

Epson computers. See HX-20; QX-10

ESCape = CHR\$(27), 42-43  
format for commands, iv-v, 46-47, 57-58  
listed by function, 283-286  
listed by number, 271-281  
See also specific modes or functions

ESCape “!”. Master Select. See Master Select

ESCape “#”. Accepts eighth bit as is from computer. See Bit, high order

ESCape “%“CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>). Selects a character set. See User-defined characters

ESCape “&“CHR\$(n)“s<sub>1</sub>s<sub>2</sub>“. Selects characters to be defined. See User-defined characters

ESCape “\*“CHR\$(m)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHRS(n<sub>2</sub>). Selects Graphics Mode, density m. See Graphics Mode

ESCape “-0”. Turns Underline Mode off. See Underline Mode

ESCape “-1”. Turns Underline Mode on. See Underline Mode

ESCape “/“CHR\$(n). Selects channel n. See Tabs, vertical

ESCape “0”. Sets line spacing to 1/8”. See Line spacing

ESCape “1”. Sets line spacing to 7/72”. See Line spacing

ESCape “2“. Sets line spacing to 1/6”. See Line spacing

ESCape “3“CHR\$(n). Sets line spacing to n/216”. See Line spacing

ESCape “4”. Turns Italic Mode on. See Italic Mode

ESCape “5”. Turns Italic Mode off. See Italic Mode

ESCape “6”. Enables printing of control codes 128-159. See User-defined characters

ESCape “7”. Returns codes 128-159 to control codes. See User-defined characters

ESCape “8”. Turns paper-out sensor off. See Paper-out sensor

ESCape “9”. Turns paper-out sensor on. See Paper-out sensor

ESCape “:“CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHRS(n<sub>2</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>3</sub>). Copies ROM characters to the RAM area. See User-defined characters

ESCape “<“. Turns on One-line Unidirectional Mode. See Unidirectional Mode

ESCape “=”. Sets high-order bit off. See Bit, high order

ESCape “>”. Sets high-order bit on. See bit, high order

ESCape “?s“CHR\$(n). Reassigns an alternate graphics code, s. See Graphics; Graphics Mode.

ESCape “@”. Reset Code. See Reset Code

ESCape “A“CHR\$(n). Sets line spacing to n/72”. See Line spacing

ESCape “B“CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>) . . . CHR\$(n<sub>k</sub>)CHR\$(O). Sets vertical tabs. See Tabs, vertical

ESCape “C“CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n). Sets the form length in inches. See Forms

ESCape “C“CHR\$(n). Sets the form length in lines. See Forms

ESCape “D“CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>) . . . CHR\$(n<sub>n</sub>)CHR\$(0). Sets horizontal tabs. See Tabs, horizontal

ESCape “E”. Turns Emphasized Mode on. See Emphasized Mode

ESCape “F”. Turns Emphasized Mode off. See Emphasized Mode

ESCape “G”. Turns Double-Strike Mode on. See Double-Strike Mode

ESCape “H”. Turns Double-Strike Mode off. See Double-Strike Mode

ESCape “I0”. Returns codes 0-31 to control codes. See User-defined characters.

ESCape "I1". Enables printing of control codes O-31. See User-defined characters.

ESCape "J'CHR\$(n). Produces an immediate one-time line feed of n/216-inch without a carriage return. See Line feed

ESCape "K"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>). Turns Single-Density Graphics Mode on. See Graphics Mode

ESCape "L"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>). Turns Low-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode on. See Graphics Mode

ESCape "M". Turns Elite Mode on. See Elite Mode

ESCape "N"CHR\$(n). Sets skip-over-perforation. See Skip-over-perforation

ESCape "O". Turns skip-over-perforation off. See Skip-over-perforation

ESCape "P". Turns Elite Mode off. See Elite Mode

ESCape "Q"CHR\$(n). Sets the right margin. See Margins

ESCape "R"CHR\$(n). Selects an international character set. See International character set

ESCape "SO". Turns Superscript Mode on. See Script Mode

ESCape "SI". Turns Subscript Mode on. See Script Mode

ESCape "T". Turns either Script Mode off. See Script Mode

ESCape "U0". Turns Continuous Unidirectional Mode off. See Unidirectional Mode

ESCape "U1". Turns Continuous Unidirectional Mode on. See Unidirectional Mode

ESCape "W0". Turns Expanded Mode off. See Expanded Mode

ESCape "W1". Turns Continuous Expanded Mode on. See Expanded Mode

ESCape "Y"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>). Turns High-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode on. See Graphics Mode

ESCape "Z"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>). Turns Quadruple-Density Graphics Mode on. See Graphics Mode

ESCape "A"CHR\$(d)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>). Enters Nine-Pin Graphics Mode. See Graphics Mode.

ESCape "b"CHR\$(N)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>) . . . CHR\$(n<sub>k</sub>)CHR\$(0). Stores channels of vertical tab stops. See Tabs, vertical

ESCape "i0". Turns Immediate-Print Mode off. See Immediate-Print Mode.

ESCape "i1". Turns Immediate-Print Mode on. See Immediate-Print Mode.

ESCape "j"CHR\$(n). Turns reverse feed on. See Line feed

ESCape "l"CHR\$(n). Sets left margin. See Margins

ESCape "p0". Turns Proportional Mode off. See Proportional Mode.

ESCape "p1". Turns Proportional Mode on. See Proportional Mode.

ESCape "so". Returns to normal after Half-Speed Mode. See Half-Speed Mode

ESCape "s1". Turns Half-Speed Mode on. See Half-Speed Mode

Expanded Mode, 56-59

    ESCape "W1" turns Continuous Expanded Mode on; ESCape "W0" turns it off. CHR\$(14) turns one-line Expanded Mode on; CHR\$(20) turns it off.

        compared with Emphasized Mode, 63

Exponent character, vi

## F

Firing of pins. See pins  
FE See Form feed  
Foreign language characters. See International character set  
Form feed, 103-105  
    CHR\$(12) produces one.  
    button, 35  
    See also Top of form  
Forms  
    length of, 103-107  
        ESCape "C"CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n) sets length to n inches; ESCape "C"CHR\$(n) sets to n lines; ESCape "@" resets to default and sets top of form to current line.  
    non-standard, 105-107  
    See also Form feed; Top of form  
Friction-control lever, 26, 28, 30  
Friction feed, 28-29  
Function switches. See DIP switches

## G

Graphics  
    densities in. See Graphics Mode  
    designing, 154-155, 159-171, 189-196  
    line, 225-226  
    plotter, 173-187  
    problem codes with, 144-145  
    Reset Code with, 144  
    troubleshooting, 302-303  
    with seven-bit systems, 311  
    width of, 134-135, 193  
    See also Graphics Mode  
Graphics Mode, 134-135  
    density command, 145,149-150  
        ESCape "\*CHR\$(m)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) selects one of six graphics densities. See also densities below  
    Single-Density, 134-135, 145-146  
        ESCape "\*CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) or ESCape "K"  
            CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) turns Single-Density Graphics on.  
    Double-Density, 146-148  
        ESCape "\*CHR\$(1)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) or ESCape "L"  
            CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) turns Low-Speed on.  
        ESCape "\*CHR\$(2)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) or ESCape "Y"  
            CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) turns High-Speed on.  
    Quadruple-Density, 149  
        ESCape "\*CHR\$(3)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) or ESCape "Z"  
            CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) turns Quadruple-Density on.

Nine-Pin, 152-154

ESCape "A"CHR\$(d)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) enters Nine-Pin Graphics Mode.

reassigning code, 150-152

ESCape "?s"CHR\$(n) reassigns an alternate code to Graphics Mode n.

summary table, 151

Grid. See dot matrix

## H

Half-Speed Mode, 89, 322

ESCape "s1" turns it on; ESCape "s0" returns it to normal.

Head. See Print head

Hex dumping, 305-306

Humidity, 329

Horizontal tabs. See Tabs, horizontal

HX-20 and printer commands, 38, 40

## I

IBM Personal Computer, 38, 40, 313-314

Immediate-Print Mode, 89-90

ESCape "i1" turns it on; ESCape "i0" turns it off.

Installation. See Set-up operations

Interface, 329, 333-336

Intermediate positions. See columns

International characters, 85-88, 255-258, 263-265

A DIP switch setting and/or ESCape "R"CHR\$(n) selects one.

See also ASCII codes

Italic Mode, 72-73

ESCape "4" turns it on; ESCape "5" turns it off.

## K

Knob. See Manual-feed knob

## L

Labels, 101

Left bracket. See Exponent character

Left margin. See Margins

Length of forms. See Forms

Lever. See Friction-control; Paper-thickness; Pin-feed

LF. See Line feed

Lids, removal and replacement, 18-19

Line feed, 98-101  
  CHR!\$(IO) produces it.  
button, 35-36  
computer interface and. See Interface  
DIP switch for, 23  
one-time immediate, 99-100  
  ESCape "J"CHR\$(n) produces it.  
reverse, 99, 101  
  ESCape "j"CHR\$(n) produces it.  
Line spacing, 93-98  
  ESCape "A"CHR\$(n) sets to n/72"; ESCape "0" sets at 1/8";  
  ESCape "1" sets at 7/72"; ESCape "2" sets at 1/6" (default);  
  ESCape "3"CHR\$(n) sets at n/216".  
in graphics, 133-134, 140-141, 154  
form feed and, 107  
summary table for, 102  
See also Skip-over-perforation; Top of form; Graphics  
LIST commands, 37-38  
Location of printer, 16-17  
LPRINT. See PRINT  
Lubrication, 323-324

## M

Mailing labels. See Labels  
Maintenance, 323-324  
Manual-feed knob, 19-20  
Margins, 113-118  
  effect of pitch on, 114-116  
  with horizontal tab setting, 118, 122  
  left, 113-116, 118  
    ESCape "l"CHR\$(n) sets left margin.  
  right, 116-118  
    ESCape "Q" CHR\$(n) sets right margin.  
    printing width in Compressed and, 117  
Master Select, 73-78  
  Quick reference chart for, 76, 318  
Mathematical symbols, 81-82  
Matrix. See Dot matrix  
Memory. See RAM; ROM  
Microscopic spacing. See Line spacing  
Modes  
  mixing, 56-59, 65-66, 317-319  
  priorities, 55-56, 58-59, 66, 318-319  
  summary table of, 67, 317  
    See also specific modes by name  
Monospacing. See Proportional Mode

## N

NEC, 151  
Nine-pin graphics. See Graphics Mode  
Noise reduction. See Half-Speed Mode

## O

Offsets, 82-83  
ON LINE light and button, 35  
Overstrikes, 81-82

## P

Page, top of. See Top of form  
Paper  
    bail, 15, 24, 26, 29  
    loading, 24-32, 304  
    length. See Forms  
    separator, 17-18  
    thickness adjustment, 32, 34  
    types of, 16, 24, 328  
Paper-out sensor, 110, 304  
    ESCape "9" turns it on; ESCape "8" turns it off.  
    DIP switch control of, 297-298  
Parallel interface. See Interface  
Pattern design. See Graphics  
PEEK. See POKEing codes  
Perforation. See Skip-over-perforation; Top of form  
Pica Mode, 52-53  
Pin feed paper. See paper  
Pin feeder and pin-feed lever, 26-28, 30, 32  
Pins  
    firing, 135-141  
    numbering of, 135-137  
Pitch, summary table of, 60  
    See also specific pitches by name  
Platen, 28, 29, 30  
Plotting. See Graphics, plotter  
POKEing codes, 307-308  
Preparation. See Set-up operations  
PRINT command, iv, 39-41

Print head  
and dot graphics, 132-133  
and dot matrix printing, 50  
life of, 16, 324, 328  
replacement, 324-325  
Print modes. See Modes  
Print pitch summary table, 60  
    See **also** specific pitches by name  
Print quality, 61-66  
Print speed. See Half-Speed Mode  
Print type chart, 78  
Print width, See specific pitches by name: Width  
Printer buffer, 44  
Printer driver for problem codes, 308-309  
Priorities. See Modes.  
Proportional Mode, 64-65  
    ESCape "pl" turns it on; ESCape "p0" turns it off.  
    attribute byte with, 203-204, 206  
Protective lids. See lids

## Q

Quadruple-Density. See Graphics Mode  
Quiet printing. See Half-Speed Mode  
QX-10, 38, 40, 314-315

## R

RAM (Random Access Memory), 2  
    DIP switch control of, 23, 200  
    See **also** Printer buffer; User-defined characters  
READ statement. See DATA statement  
RERemarks in program lines, v-vi  
Reset Code, 45  
Resetting. See Reset Code  
RESTORE statement, 155-156  
Reverse line feed. See Line feed  
Ribbon  
    installation and replacement, 23-25  
    life, 16, 65, 328  
Right margin. See Margins  
Roll paper. See Paper  
ROM (Read Only Memory), 2  
Rows. See Columns

## S

Schematic, 331  
Script Mode, 71-72  
ESCAPE "SO" turns Superscript Mode on. ESCAPE "S1" turns Subscript Mode on. ESCAPE "T" turns either Script Mode off.  
Self test for printer. See Test  
Semicolons, iv, 45  
Sensor. See Paper-out sensor  
Separator, paper. See paper  
Serial board. See Interface  
Set-up operations for printer, 13-36  
Seven-bit systems, 309-311  
    graphics with, 311  
    limitations of, 132, 137, 309-310  
    test for computer's type, 309  
    user-defined characters with, 202, 205, 207, 209  
Single-sheet printing, 109-110  
Skip-over-perforation, 107-109  
    ESCAPE "N" or DIP switch 2-4 turns it on. ESCAPE "O" turns it off.  
Space. See Blank space.  
Spacing. See Line spacing; Proportional spacing  
Special characters, 85  
Specifications. See Technical specifications  
Spread-sheet printing, 321  
Statement program, 231-238  
STOP. See END  
Subscript. See Script Mode  
Superscript. See Script Mode  
Switches. See DIP switches

## T

Tabs  
    effect of pitch on, 122  
    margin settings with. See Margins  
        horizontal, 119-122  
            CHR\$(9) or CHR\$(137) activates.  
            ESCAPE "D"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) . . . CHR\$(n<sub>k</sub>)CHR\$(0)  
                sets horizontal tabs.  
        vertical, 122-128  
            CHR\$(11) activates. ESCAPE "B"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) . . .  
            CHR\$(n<sub>i</sub>)CHR\$(0) sets vertical tabs.  
            ESCAPE "b"CHR\$(N)CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>) . . . CHR\$(n<sub>k</sub>)CHR\$(1)  
                sets the vertical channel to N. ESCAPE "/CHR\$(n) selects  
                channel n.  
            channels, 126-128  
Technical specifications, 327-331

Temperature, 329

Test

    automatic, 35-36

    for seven-bit system, 309

Top of form, 31-33, 103-104

    CHR\$(12) sends the paper to top of form. ESCape “C” resets it to current paper position. ESCape “@” resets form length to default and sets top of form to current line.

    with skip-over-perforation, 109

    See also Reset Code

Tractor

    built-in, 24-28

    cover, 14, 19

    removable, 14-15, 28-31

Troubleshooting, 301-315

TRS-80, 38, 40, 307-309, 313

Type style chart, 317

## U

Up arrow. See Exponent character

Underline Mode, 70-72

    ESCape “-1” turns underline on; ESCape “-0” turns it off.

Unidirectional Mode, 83-85

    ESCape “U1” activates it; ESCape “U0” turns it off.

    ESCape "<" turns it on for one line only.

User-defined characters, 199-213

    ESCape “&“CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>3</sub>) defines characters.

    ESCape “;“CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>3</sub>) downloads ROM characters into RAM.

    attribute byte, 203-205

    compared to ROM characters, 199

    control codes as characters, 208-211

    DIP switch setting for, 200

    double-high and double-wide, 215-223

    downloading, 207

    Reset code with, 207

    troubleshooting, 303

## V

Vertical tabs. See Tabs, vertical

*W*

Width  
of characters, 256-270  
statements, 313-314  
Word processing, 36, 321-322

*Z*

Zero, slashed, 23

**EPSON®**  
**FX SERIES PRINTER**  
**User's Manual**

**VOLUME 2 REFERENCE**

By  
**David A. Kater**  
**EduKater**

## FCC COMPLIANCE STATEMENT FOR AMERICAN USERS

This equipment generates and uses radio frequency energy and if not installed and used properly, that is, in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, may cause interference to radio and television reception. It has been type tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B computing device in accordance with the specifications in Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC rules, which are designed to provide reasonable protection against such interference in a residential installation. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient the receiving antenna
- Relocate the computer with respect to the receiver
- Move the computer into a different outlet so that computer and receiver are on different branch circuits.

If necessary, the user should consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for additional suggestions. The user may find the following booklet prepared by the Federal Communications Commission helpful:

"How to Identify and Resolve Radio-TV Interference Problems."

This booklet is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington DC 20402. Stock No. 004-000-00345-4.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Epson America, Inc. No patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, Epson America, Inc. and the author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

Baby printout on cover reprinted with permission of Apple Computer Inc., copyright 1984

Apple is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.

Centronics is a registered trademark of Data Computer Corporation.

Concept is a trademark of Corvus Systems, Inc.

DEC is a registered trademark of Digital Equipment Corporation.

FX-80, FX-100, RX-80, and RX-100 are trademarks of Epson America, Inc.

I-IX-20 Notebook Computer is a trademark of Epson America, Inc.

IBM-PC is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

Microsoft is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

NEC is the NEC Information Systems, Inc., a subsidiary of Nippon Electronic Company, Ltd.

QX-10 is a trademark of Epson America, Inc.

TRS-80 is a registered trademark of Radio Shack, a division of Tandy Corporation.

80 Micro is published by Wayne Green Publishers.

Copyright© 1984 by Epson America, Inc.

Torrance, California 90505

P8390097

# Preface

The User's Manual for the FX Series Printers consists of two volumes: Tutorial and Reference. This volume is the Reference, which contains the appendixes to Volume 1.

These appendixes are organized as follows:

Appendix A deals with the characters: it gives ASCII codes and displays the dot matrix characters.

Appendices B through D cover control codes. Appendix B shows the codes in their ASCII numerical order, while C provides a list of the same codes organized by usage groups. Appendix D provides a chart of control codes as they are implemented on three Epson printers, the MX III, the FX, and the RX; a discussion of the differences follows the chart.

Appendices E through H provide information on other printing needs: E covers defaults and DIP switches, F gives troubleshooting advice, G summarizes how to combine print modes, and H gives ideas for customizing your printer and its programs.

Appendices I through K concentrate on technical aspects of the hardware: maintenance, specifications, and the parallel interface.

A complete table of contents for this volume begins on the next page.

For your convenience, there is an index at the end of each volume covering the complete two-volume set. You can therefore find all the references to any topic in either one.



# FX Series Printer User's Manual

## Volume 2 Contents

<b>P r e f a c e .....</b>	iii
<b>L i s t o f F i g u r e s .....</b>	vii
<b>L i s t o f T a b l e s .....</b>	vii
<b>A    A S C I I   C o d e s   a n d   C h a r a c t e r   F o n t s .....</b>	2.53
A S C I I   C o d e s   a n d   I n t e r n a t i o n a l   C h a r a c t e r s .....	253
A S C I I   C o d e   S u m m a r y .....	254
I n t e r n a t i o n a l   C h a r a c t e r s   S u m m a r y .....	255
A S C I I   C h a r a c t e r   M a t r i x e s .....	256
<b>B    C o n t r o l   C o d e s   i n   N u m e r i c   O r d e r .....</b>	271
<b>C    C o n t r o l   C o d e s   b y   F u n c t i o n .....</b>	283
<b>D    C o n t r o l - C o d e   C o m p a r i s o n .....</b>	287
C o n t r o l - C o d e   C h a r t .....	287
E p s o n   M o d e l   D i f f e r e n c e s .....	289
<b>E    D e f a u l t s   a n d   D I P   S w i t c h e s .....</b>	295
D e f a u l t   S e t t i n g s .....	295
D I P   S w i t c h e s .....	296
E x a m i n i n g   t h e   S w i t c h e s .....	297

<b>F</b>	<b>Troubleshooting</b>	301
	Problem/Solution Summary	301
	Beeper Error Warnings	304
	Hex Diagnosis	305
	Coding Solutions	306
	POKEing codes	307
	Special printer drivers	308
	Solutions for Seven-Bit Systems	309
	High-order bit control	310
	Seven-bit graphics	311
	Solutions for Specific Systems	312
	Apple II solutions	312
	TRS-80 solutions	313
	IBM-PC solutions	313
	QX-10 solutions	314
<b>G</b>	<b>Mixing Print Modes</b>	317
	Methods for Mixing	317
	Mode Conflicts and Priorities	318
	Summary Notes	319
<b>H</b>	<b>Customizing the FX</b>	321
	Spread-Sheet Programs	321
	Word Processing	321
	BASIC Program Listings	322
	Quiet Printing	322
	Graphics and User-Defined Characters	322
<b>I</b>	<b>Printer Maintenance</b>	323
	Always	323
	Now and Then	323
	Rarely	323
	Changing the Print Head	324
<b>J</b>	<b>Technical Specifications</b>	327
	Printing	327
	Paper	328
	Printer	328
	Environment	329
	Interface	329
	Schematic	330

<b>K</b>	<b>Parallel Interface .....</b>	333
	Data Transfer Sequence .....	335
	Interface timing .....	335
	Signal relationships .....	335
	<b>Index .....</b>	337

## List of Figures

E-1	Factory setting of the DIP switches .....	297
F-1	Best-case hex dump .....	306
F-2	TRS-80 Model III hex dump .....	306
I-1	Print head replacement .....	324
K-1	Parallel interface timing .....	335

## List of Tables

E-1	DIP switch functions .....	297
E-2	International DIP switch settings .....	298
G-1	Arriving at 128 type styles .....	317
G-2	Master Select quick reference chart .....	318
G-3	Mode priorities .....	319
K-1	Pins and signals .....	333
K-2	Signal interrelations .....	336

## Appendix A

# ASCII Codes and Character Fonts

This appendix provides information about the way the ASCII codes are employed on the FX printers and about the character fonts associated with those codes. The first section summarizes the codes. The second section displays, in ASCII order, the decimal number, the hexadecimal number, a printout, and an enlarged dot matrix for each character in the two fonts that you can access directly:

1. the Roman font for the USA character set (decimal 32-126)
2. the Italic font for the USA character set (decimal X0-254) Also included here is the pair of fonts for the international characters, which you access indirectly:
3. the Roman font for international characters (decimal 0-31)
4. the Italic font for international characters (decimal 128-159)

### ASCII Codes and International Characters

To use a character or one of the control codes specified in the third column, you use the BASIC character-string command, CHR\$(n), where n represents the decimal number shown in the first column. You cause the code to be sent to a device by using another command; the most common command for sending a code to the printer is LPRINT. For more on this subject, see Chapter 2.

## ASCII Code summary

Dec	Hex	CHR	Dec	Hex	CHR	Dec	Hex	CHR	Dec	Hex	CHR
0	00	none	64	40	@	128	80	none	192	C0	@
1	01	none	65	41	A	129	81	none	193	C1	A
2	02	none	66	42	B	130	82	none	194	C2	B
3	03	none	67	43	C	131	83	none	195	C3	C
4	04	none	68	44	D	132	84	none	196	C4	D
5	05	none	69	45	E	133	85	none	197	C5	E
6	06	none	70	46	F	134	86	none	198	C6	F
7	07	BEL	71	47	G	135	87	BEL	199	C7	G
8	08	BS	72	48	H	136	88	BS	200	C8	H
9	09	HT	73	49	I	137	89	HT	201	C9	I
10	0A	LF	74	4A	J	138	8A	LF	202	CA	J
11	0B	VT	75	4B	K	139	8B	VT	203	CB	k
12	0C	FF	76	4C	L	140	8C	FF	204	CC	L
13	0D	CR	77	4D	M	141	8D	CR	205	CD	M
14	0E	SO	78	4E	N	142	8E	SO	206	CE	N
15	0F	SI	79	4F	O	143	8F	SI	207	CF	O
16	10	none	80	50	P	144	90	none	208	DO	P
17	11	DC1	81	51	Q	145	91	DC1	209	DI	Q
18	12	DC2	82	52	R	146	92	DC2	210	D2	R
19	13	DC3	83	53	S	147	93	DC3	211	D3	S
20	14	DC4	84	54	T	148	94	DC4	212	D4	T
21	15	none	85	55	U	149	95	none	213	D5	U
22	16	none	86	56	V	150	96	none	214	D6	V
23	17	none	87	57	W	151	97	none	215	D7	W
24	18	CAN	88	58	X	152	98	CAN	216	D8	X
25	19	none	89	59	Y	153	99	none	217	D9	Y
26	1A	none	90	5A	Z	154	9A	none	218	DA	Z
27	1B	ESC	91	5B	[	155	9B	ESC	219	DB	[
28	1C	none	92	5C	\	156	9C	none	220	DC	\
29	1D	none	93	5D	l	157	9D	none	221	DD	l
30	1E	none	94	5E	^	158	9E	none	222	DE	^
31	1F	none	95	5F	-	159	9F	none	223	DF	-
32	20	þ	96	60	.	160	A0	þ	224	E0	.
33	21	!	97	61	a	161	A1	/	225	E1	a
34	22	"	98	62	b	162	A2	"	226	E2	b
35	23	#	99	63	c	163	A3	#	227	E3	c
36	24	\$	100	64	d	164	A4	\$	228	E4	d
37	25	%	101	65	e	165	A5	%	229	E5	e
38	26	&	102	66	f	166	A6	&	230	E6	f
39	27	,	103	67	g	167	A7	(	231	E7	g
40	28	(	104	68	h	168	A8	)	232	E8	h
41	29	)	105	69	i	169	A9	.	233	E9	i
42	2A	*	106	6A	j	170	AA	+	234	EA	j
43	2B	+	107	6B	k	171	AB	,	235	EB	k
44	2C	,	108	6C	l	172	AC	-	236	EC	l
45	2D	-	109	6D	m	173	AD	-	237	ED	m
46	2E	.	110	6E	n	174	AE	.	238	EE	n
47	2F	/	111	6F	o	175	AF	/	239	EF	o
48	30	0	112	70	p	176	80	0	240	FO	0
49	31	1	113	71	q	177	B1	1	241	F1	1
50	32	2	114	72	r	178	B2	2	242	F2	2
51	33	3	115	73	s	179	B3	3	243	F3	3
52	34	4	116	74	t	180	B4	4	244	F4	4
53	35	5	117	75	u	181	B5	5	245	F5	5
54	36	6	118	76	v	182	B6	6	246	F6	6
55	37	7	119	77	w	183	B7	7	247	F7	7
56	38	8	120	78	x	184	B8	8	248	F8	8
57	39	9	121	79	y	185	B9	9	249	F9	9
58	3A	:	122	7A	z	186	BA		250	FA	:
59	3B	:	123	7B	{	187	BB		251	FB	{
60	3C	<	124	7C		188	BC		252	FC	:
61	3D	=	125	7D	}	189	BD		253	FD	~
62	3E	>	126	7E	~	190	BE		254	FE	~
63	3F	?	127	7F	DEL	191	BF		255	FF	DEL

## International characters summary

ASCII locations 0 to 31 and 128 to 159 store the international characters that are needed for sets other than the one for the USA. These characters are printable only with the CHR\$(27) "6", CHR\$(27) "I", or CHR\$(27) "R" sequences.

Dec	Hex	CHR	Dec	Hex	CHR
0	00	à	128	80	à
1	01	è	129	81	è
2	02	ù	130	82	ù
3	03	ò	131	83	ò
4	04	ì	132	84	ì
5	05	º	133	85	º
6	06	£	134	86	£
7	07		135	87	/
8	08	ç	136	88	ç
9	09	ñ	137	89	ñ
10	0A	ñ	138	8A	ñ
11	0B	ø	139	8B	ø
12	0C	å	140	8C	å
13	0D	À	141	8D	À
14	0E	à	142	8E	à
15	0F	ç	143	8F	ç
16	10	§	144	90	§
17	11	ß	145	91	ß
18	12	Œ	146	92	Œ
19	13	œ	147	93	œ
20	14	Ø	148	94	Ø
21	15	ø	149	95	ø
22	16	..	150	96	..
23	17	Ã	151	97	Ã
24	18	Ö	152	98	Ö
25	19	Ü	153	99	Ü
26	1A	ä	154	9A	ä
27	1B	ö	155	9B	ö
28	1C	ü	156	9C	ü
29	1D	š	157	9D	š
30	1E	é	158	9E	é
31	1F	¥	159	9F	¥

## ASCII Character Matrixes

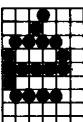
As in the summaries above, this section follows the ASCII code arrangement, but this time we show the codes only as they are associated with characters—0 through 255. The characters for the Roman and Italic USA fonts, which together make up the USA character set, occupy ASCII positions 32 through 126 and 160 through 254, respectively. The international characters use ASCII positions 0 through 31 and 128 through 159. We show enlarged dot matrixes for both pairs of fonts.

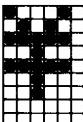
The width column shows the number of units used to print each character in Proportional Mode. A unit is the width of one of the 12 columns in a character matrix (about half a dot).

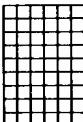
Dec	Hex	Character	Width	Dec	Hex	Character	Width
0	00	À	12	6	06	£	12
1	01	Ѐ	12	7	07	і	5
2	02	Ӯ	11	8	08	Ը	12
3	03	Ӱ	10	9	09	Ӳ	12
4	04	Ӵ	6	10	0A	ӵ	11
5	05	Ӷ	8	11	0B	ӷ	12

Dec	Hex	Character	Width	Dec	Hex	Character	Width
12	0C	€	12	21	15	¤	12
13	0D	฿	12	22	16	„	8
14	0E	߱	12	23	17	߳	12
15	0F	ߴ	11	24	18	߶	12
16	10	߸	10	25	19	߹	12
17	11	ߺ	11	26	1A	߻	12
18	12	߼	12	27	1B	߽	10
19	13	߾	12	28	1C	߿	11
20	14	߿	12	29	1D	߿	12

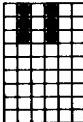
**Dec Hex Character Width**

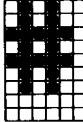
**30 1E ☽**  12

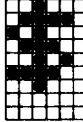
**31 1F ☾**  12

**32 20 ☿**  12

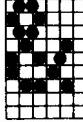
**33 21 !**  5

**34 22 "**  8

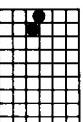
**35 23 #**  12

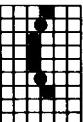
**36 24 \$**  12

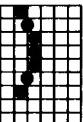
**37 25 %**  12

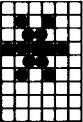
**38 26 &**  12

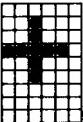
**Dec Hex Character Width**

**39 27 ☀**  5

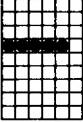
**40 28 (**  6

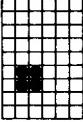
**41 29 )**  6

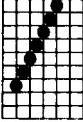
**42 2A \***  12

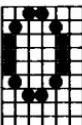
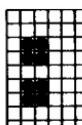
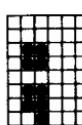
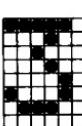
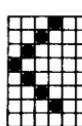
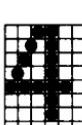
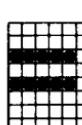
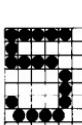
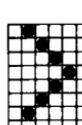
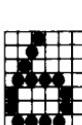
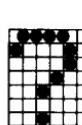
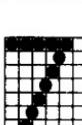
**43 2B +**  12

**44 2C ,**  7

**45 2D -**  12

**46 2E .**  6

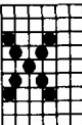
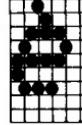
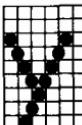
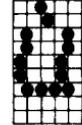
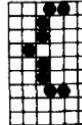
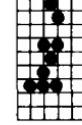
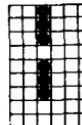
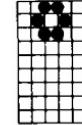
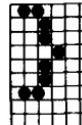
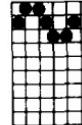
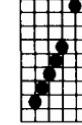
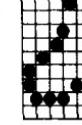
**47 2F /**  10

Dec	Hex	Character	Width	Dec	Hex	Character	Width		
48	30		12	57	39	♀		12	
49	31		8	58	3A	:		6	
50	32	2		12	59	3B	;		6
51	33	3		12	60	3C	<		10
52	34	4		12	61	3D	=		12
53	35	5		12	62	3E	>		10
54	36	6		12	63	3F	?		12
55	37	7		12	64	40	@		
56	38	8		12	65	41	^		12

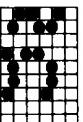
Dec	Hex	Character	Width	Dec	Hex	Character	Width
66	42	B	12	75	4B	K	12
67	43	C	12	76	4C	L	12
68	44	D	12	77	4D	M	12
69	45	E	12	78	4E	N	12
70	46	F	12	79	4F	O	12
71	47	G	12	80	50	P	12
72	48	H	12	81	51	Q	12
73	49	I	8	82	52	R	12
74	4A	J	11	83	53	S	12

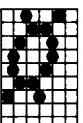
Dec	Hex	Character	Width	Dec	Hex	Character	Width
84	54	T	12	93	5D	ঃ	a
85	55	ঁ	12	94	5E	^	12
86	56	ঁ	12	95	5F	-	12
87	57	ঁ	12	96	60	'	5
88	58	ঁ	10	97	61	a	12
89	59	ঁ	12	98	62	b	11
90	5A	ঁ	10	99	63	c	11
91	5B	ঁ	a	100	64	d	11
92	5C	ঁ	10	101	65	e	12

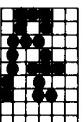
Dec	Hex	Character	Width	Dec	Hex	Character	Width
<b>102</b>	<b>66</b>	f	10	111	6F	o	12
<b>103</b>	<b>67</b>	g	11	112	70	p	11
<b>104</b>	<b>68</b>	h	11	113	71	q	11
<b>105</b>	<b>69</b>	i	a	114	72	r	11
<b>106</b>	<b>6A</b>	j	9	115	73	s	12
<b>107</b>	<b>6B</b>	k	10	116	74	t	11
<b>108</b>	<b>6C</b>	l	a	117	75	u	12
<b>109</b>	<b>6D</b>	m	12	118	76	v	12
<b>110</b>	<b>6E</b>	n	11	119	77	w	12

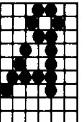
Dec	Hex	Character	Width	Dec	Hex	Character	Width
120	78	×	10	129	81	Ѐ	11
							
121	79	Ӧ	12	130	82	Ӯ	11
							
122	7A	Ӧ	10	131	83	Ӯ	11
							
123	7B	Ӯ	9	132	84	Ӯ	8
							
124	7C	Ӯ	5	133	85	Ӯ	8
							
125	7D	Ӯ	9	134	86	Ӯ	12
							
126	7E	Ӯ	12	135	87	Ӯ	10
							
127	7F	Ӯ	12	136	88	Ӯ	11
							
128	80	Ӯ	11	137	89	Ӯ	12
							

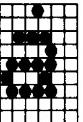
**Dec Hex Character Width**

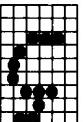
138 8A  12

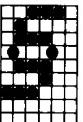
139 8B  12

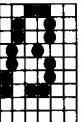
140 8C  12

141 8D  12

142 8E  11

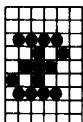
143 8F  11

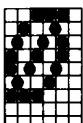
144 90  12

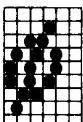
145 91  11

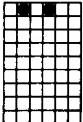
146 92  12

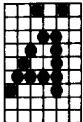
**Dec Hex Character Width**

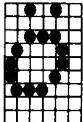
147 93  12

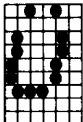
148 94  12

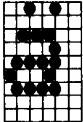
149 95  11

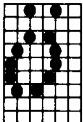
150 96  9

151 97  12

152 98  12

153 99  11

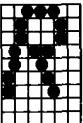
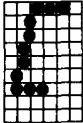
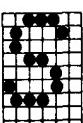
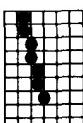
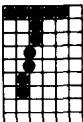
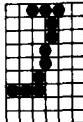
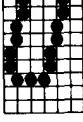
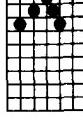
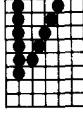
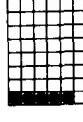
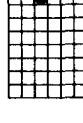
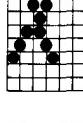
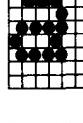
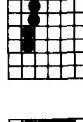
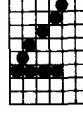
154 9A  11

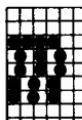
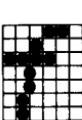
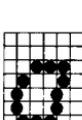
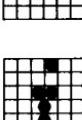
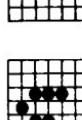
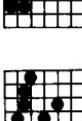
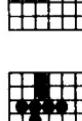
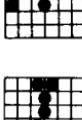
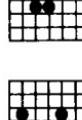
155 9B  11

Dec	Hex	Character	Width	Dec	Hex	Character	Width
156	9C	ü	12	165	A5	%	12
157	9D	£	12	166	A6	&	12
158	9E	€	11	167	A7	'	5
159	9F	¥	12	168	A8	(	a
160	A0	¤	12	169	A9	)	a
161	A1	/	10	170	AA	*	12
162	A2	"	10	171	AB	†	12
163	A3	#	12	172	AC	,	a
164	A4	\$	11	173	AD	-	12

Dec	Hex	Character	Width	Dec	Hex	Character	Width
174	AE	-	7	183	B7	7	12
175	AF	/	10	184	B8	8	12
176	B0	o	12	185	B9	9	11
177	B1	i	9	186	BA	z	8
178	B2	2	12	187	BB	,	9
179	B3	3	12	188	BC	<	10
180	B4	4	12	189	BD	=	11
181	B5	5	12	190	BE	>	9
182	B6	6	11	191	BF	?	11

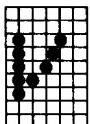
<b>Dec</b>	<b>Hex</b>	<b>Character</b>	<b>Width</b>	<b>Dec</b>	<b>Hex</b>	<b>Character</b>	<b>Width</b>
192	C0		12	201	C9		10
193	C1		12	202	CA		12
194	C2		12	203	CB		12
195	C3		12	204	CC		10
196	C4		12	205	CD		12
197	C5		12	206	CE		12
198	C6		12	207	CF		12
199	C7		12	208	D0		12
200	C8		12	209	D1		12

Dec	Hex	Character	Width	Dec	Hex	Character	Width
210	D2	R	12	219	DB	C	11
							
211	D3	S	12	220	DC	\	7
							
212	D4	T	12	221	DD	J	11
							
213	D5	U	12	222	DE	^	10
							
214	D6	V	11	223	DF	_	12
							
215	D7	W	12	224	E0	'	5
							
216	D8	X	12	225	E1	a	11
							
217	D9	Y	12	226	E2	b	11
							
218	DA	Z	12	227	E3	c	11
							

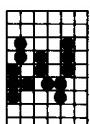
Dec	Hex	Character	Width	Dec	Hex	Character	Width		
<b>228</b>	<b>E4</b>	<i>d</i>		12	<b>237</b>	<b>ED</b>	<i>m</i>		11
<b>229</b>	<b>E5</b>	<i>e</i>		11	<b>238</b>	<b>EE</b>	<i>n</i>		10
<b>230</b>	<b>E6</b>	<i>f</i>		12	<b>239</b>	<b>EF</b>	<i>o</i>		11
<b>231</b>	<b>E7</b>	<i>g</i>		11	<b>240</b>	<b>F0</b>	<i>p</i>		11
<b>232</b>	<b>E8</b>	<i>h</i>		11	<b>241</b>	<b>F1</b>	<i>q</i>		11
<b>233</b>	<b>E9</b>	<i>i</i>		9	<b>242</b>	<b>F2</b>	<i>r</i>		10
<b>234</b>	<b>EA</b>	<i>j</i>		10	<b>243</b>	<b>F3</b>	<i>s</i>		11
<b>235</b>	<b>EB</b>	<i>k</i>		11	<b>244</b>	<b>F4</b>	<i>t</i>		10
<b>236</b>	<b>EC</b>	<i>l</i>		9	<b>245</b>	<b>F5</b>	<i>u</i>		11

**Dec Hex Character Width**

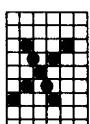
**246 F6 ν 10**



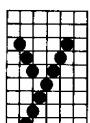
**247 F7 ω 12**



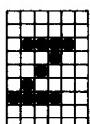
**248 F8 ρ 12**



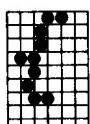
**249 F9 γ 11**



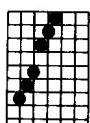
**250 FA z 12**



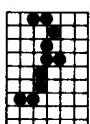
**251 FB ε 10**



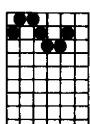
**252 FC ∕ 9**



**253 FD ∫ 10**

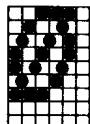


**254 FE ~ 12**



**Dec Hex Character Width**

**255 FF ∞ 12**



## Appendix B

# Control Codes in Numeric Order

You activate an FX control code by using LPRINT CHR\$(n), where n is the number in the decimal column below. When the ESC column contains a dash, you use only CHR\$(n) but when ESC is written in this ESC column, you must precede the CHR\$(n) with CHR\$(27). With this ESCape sequence you may use a shortened form, the ESCape code followed by the character in the symbol column in quotation marks, as shown in the example below, the command that turns Emphasized ON:

LPRINT CHR\$(27) "E".

Abbreviations:    cpi = characters per inch  
                      cps = characters per second

<b>ESC</b>	<b>Dec</b>	<b>Hex</b>	<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Function</b>
—	0	00	NUL	Terminates horizontal and vertical tab setting.
—	7	07	BEL	Sounds beeper.
—	<b>a</b>	<b>08</b>	<b>BS</b>	Backspace. Empties the printer buffer, then moves the print head left <b>1</b> space in the current pitch.
—	<b>9</b>	<b>09</b>	<b>HT</b>	Horizontal tab. Empties the printer buffer, then moves the print head to the next tab stop.
—	10	0A	LF	Line feed. Empties the printer buffer, performs a line feed at the current line spacing, and resets the buffer character count to 0.

**ESC Dec Hex Symbol Function**

- 11 0B VT Vertical tab. Empties the printer buffer, then advances the paper to the next vertical tab stop.
- 12 0C FF Form feed. Empties the printer buffer, then advances the paper to the next logical top of form.
- 13 0D CR Carriage return. Prints the contents of the buffer and resets the buffer character count to 0. Restores the print head to the left margin. You turn the automatic line feed on or off with DIP switch 2-4.
- 14 0E SO Shift out. Turns Expanded Mode ON for the length of the line unless cancelled by CHR\$(20) or CHR\$(27)"WO". Works with Pica, Elite, or Compressed Mode.
- 15 0F SI Shift in. Empties the buffer and turns Compressed Mode (17.16 cpi) ON. Cannot work with Emphasized, Elite, Pica, or Proportional Mode. Stays on until cancelled by CHR\$(18).
- 17 11 DC1 Device control 1. When 2-1 is OFF places the printer in the active state: printer receives all data sent to it.
- 18 12 DC2 Device control 2. Turns Compressed Mode OFF
- 19 13 DC3 Device control 3. When DIP switch 2-1 is OFF places the printer in the inactive state until a DC1 code is received.
- 20 14 DC4 Device control 4. Turns the Expanded Mode set by CHR\$(14) OFF
- 24 18 CAN Cancels all text in the print buffer.
- 27 1B ESC Escape. Prepares the printer to receive control codes.

**ESC Dec Hex Symbol Function**

ESC 33 21 !	Master Print Mode Select (Master Select). Selects 16 unique print mode combinations. Format: CHR\$(27)"!" "CHR\$(n) where n = 0 - 255. See Appendix D.
ESC 35 23 #	Accepts the eighth bit "as is" from the computer.
ESC 37 25 %	Activates a character set. DIP switch 1-4 must be off. Format: CHR\$(27)"%" "CHR\$(0)CHR\$(0) selects the ROM set; and CHR\$(27)"%" "CHR\$(1)CHR\$(0) selects the RAM set.
ESC 38 26 &	Defines characters in user RAM. Format: CHR\$(27)"&"CHR\$(0)CHR\$(c <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(c <sub>2</sub> ); CHR\$(a)CHR\$(d <sub>1</sub> ) . . . CHR\$(d <sub>n</sub> ); where CHR\$(0) is for future use, c <sub>1</sub> is the starting character, and c <sub>2</sub> is the ending character. Each character in the range c <sub>1</sub> - c <sub>2</sub> requires an attribute byte (a) and 11 data bytes (d <sub>1</sub> - d <sub>n</sub> ).
ESC 42 2A *	Turns Graphics Mode ON. Format: CHR\$(27)"*" "CHR\$(m)CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> ); followed by n data numbers, where n = n <sub>1</sub> + 256*n <sub>2</sub> , n <sub>1</sub> = 0 - 255, n <sub>2</sub> = 0 - 255, m selects mode 0 - 6. See Table 1 1-1 for modes.
ESC 45 2D -	Turns Underline Mode ON. Format: CHR\$(27)"-" "CHR\$(n) where n toggles Underline on and off: 0 turns it OFF 1 turns it ON.

<b>ESC</b>	<b>Dec</b>	<b>Hex</b>	<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Function</b>
ESC 47	2F	/		Selects a vertical tab channel. Format: CHR\$(27)"/"CHR\$(n) where n = 0 - 7.
ESC 48	30	0		Sets line spacing to 1/8-inch (g-dot).
ESC 49	31	1		Sets line spacing to 7/72-inch (7-dot).
ESC 50	32	2		Returns line spacing to the default of 1/6 inch (12-dot).
ESC 51	33	3		Sets line spacing to n/216-inch (1/216-inch is 1/3 dot). Stays on until changed. Format: CHR\$(27)"3"CHR\$(n) where n = 0 - 255.
ESC 52	34	4		Turns Italic Mode ON.
ESC 53	35	5		Turns Italic Mode OFF
ESC 54	36	6		Enables the printing of the Italic international characters, which are stored in locations 128 - 159 and 255.
ESC 55	37	7		Turns off CHR\$(27)"6". Restores 126 - 159 and 255 to function as control codes.
ESC 56	38	8		Disables the paper-out sensor.
ESC 57	39	9		Enables the paper-out sensor
ESC 58	3A	:		Copies the ROM user-defined character set to RAM. Format: CHR\$(27)":"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>3</sub> ); where n <sub>1</sub> , n <sub>2</sub> , and n <sub>3</sub> are all 0. (They are included for future expansion.) The RAM character set must be activated with CHR\$(27) "% ", and DIP switch 1-4 must be off.
ESC 60	3C	<		Turns 1-line Unidirectional Mode ON. Prints each line from left to right.

**ESC Dec Hex Symbol Function**

ESC 61 3D =	Sets the eighth bit to 0 (limits the range to 0 - 127).
ESC 62 3E >	Sets the eighth bit to 1 (limits the range to 128 - 255).
ESC 63 3F ?	Redefines one of the 4 alternate graphics codes -- "K", "L", "Y", or "Z" - as one of the seven graphics density numbers used with the ESCape "*" command. Format: CHR\$(27)"?s";CHR\$(n); where s is K,L,Y, or Z and n is 0 - 6.
ESC 64 40 @	Reset Code, which resets the printer to its power-up state, including resetting top of form. Clears all text and control codes from the print buffer.
ESC 65 41 A	Sets line spacing to n/72 inch (n-dot). Format: CHR\$(27)"A"CHR\$(n) where n = 0 - 85.
ESC 66 42 B	Sets up to 16 vertical tabs in the current line spacing. Tab settings are not affected by subsequent changes in line spacing. Format: CHR\$(27)"B"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> )... <b>CHR\$(n<sub>k</sub>)CHR\$(0)</b> where n <sub>k</sub> = 1 - 255. Terminate this tab sequence with CHR\$(0) or a number less than that of the last tab (n <sub>i</sub> ).
ESC 67 43 C	Sets the form length to n <b>lines</b> in the current line spacing. The default is 66 lines. Also resets top of form. Format: CHR\$(27)"C"CHR\$(n) where n = 1 - 127.
ESC 67 43 C	Sets the form length to n <b>inches</b> , regardless of the current line spacing. The default is 11 inches. Also resets top of form. Format: CHR\$(27)"C"CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n) where n = 1 - 22.

**ESC Dec Hex Symbol Function**

ESC 68 44 D	Resets the current tabs and sets up to 32 horizontal tabs in the current pitch. Tabs may range up to the maximum width for the character and printer size. For example, the maximum tab for Pica characters on an 8-inch line is 79. Tab settings are not affected by subsequent changes in pitch. Format: <b>CHR\$(27)"D"CHR\$(n,)CHR\$(n,)... CHR\$(n,)CHR\$(0)</b>
	Terminate a tab sequence with CHR\$(0) or a number less than that of the last tab (n,).
ESC 69 45 E	Turns Emphasized Mode ON. Cannot mix with Elite or Compressed Modes.
ESC 70 46 F	Turns Emphasized Mode OFF
ESC 71 47 G	Turns Double-Strike Mode ON.
ESC 72 48 H	Turns Double-Strike Mode OFF
ESC 73 49 I	Enables printing of the characters stored in the ASCII locations 0 - 31 that are not reserved for control codes. Symbols stored in control-code locations must be printed with CHR\$(27)"R". Format: CHR\$(27)"I"CHR\$(n) where n toggles the codes; 1 prints characters, 0 prints control codes.
ESC 74 4A J	Forces an immediate line feed of n/21.6 inches without changing the current line spacing. Prints the contents of the buffer without a carriage return. Format: CHR\$(27)"J"CHR\$(n) where n = 0 - 255.

**ESC Dec Hex Symbol Function**

ESC 75 4B K	Turns Single-Density Graphics Mode ON. Prints 480 dots per 8-inch line. Format: CHR\$(27)"K"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> ); followed by n data numbers, where $n = n_1 + 256 * n_2,$ $n_1 = 0 - 255,$ $n_2 = 0 - 255.$ For example, to print 480 dots, n <sub>1</sub> = 224, n <sub>2</sub> = 1.
ESC 76 4C L	Turns Low-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode ON. Prints 960 dots per 8-inch line. Format: CHR\$(27)"L"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> ); followed by n data numbers, where $n = n_1 + 256 * n_2,$ $n_1 = 0 - 255,$ $n_2 = 0 - 255.$ For example, to print 960 dots, n <sub>1</sub> = 192, n <sub>2</sub> = 3.
ESC 77 4D M	Turns Elite Mode (12 cpi) ON. Cannot mix with Pica, Proportional, Emphasized, or Compressed Mode.
ESC 78 4E N	Sets skip-over-perforation to n lines. Format: CHR\$(27)"N"CHR\$(n) where n = 1 - 127.
ESC 79 4F O	Turns skip-over-perforation OFF
ESC 80 50 P	Turns Elite Mode OFF Returns to Pica unless Compressed Mode is active.

**ESC Dec Hex Symbol Function**

ESC 81 51 Q	Sets the right margin. Also cancels all text that is in the print buffer. Format: CHR\$(27)"Q"CHR\$(n) where n = 1 - maximum number of characters per line in the current pitch: FX-80            FX-100 2-80            2-136 in Pica 3-96            3-163 in Elite 4-137            4-233 in Compressed
ESC 82 52 R	Selects an international character set by its country's number. See Tables 6-2 and 6-3. Format: CHR\$(27)"R"CHR\$(n) where n = 0 - 8.
ESC 83 53 S	Turns Script Mode ON. Either type of Script is printed in Double-Strike; neither can mix with Proportional Mode. Format: CHR\$(27)"S"CHR\$(n) where n = 0 produces Superscript, and 1 produces Subscript.
ESC 84 54 T	Turns Script Mode OFF
ESC 85 55 U	Turns Unidirectional Mode ON. Prints each line from left to right. Format: CHR\$(27)"U"CHR\$(n) where n toggles the mode on and off: 0 turns it OFF 1 turns it ON.
ESC 87 57 W	Turns Expanded Mode ON; stays ON until turned OFF Cannot be turned off with CHR\$(20). Format: CHR\$(27)"W"CHR\$(n) where n toggles the mode on and off: 0 turns it OFF 1 turns it ON.

**ESC Dec Hex Symbol Function**

ESC 89 59 Y	Turns High-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode ON; gives the same density as CHR\$(27)"L", but cannot print two adjacent dots in the same row.
ESC 90 5A Z	Turns Quadruple-Density Graphics Mode ON. Prints 1920 dots per 8-inch line. Format:  CHR\$(27)"Z"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> ) followed by n data numbers, where $n = n_1 + 256 * n_2$ , $n_1 = 0 - 255$ , $n_2 = 0 - 255$ .  For example, to print 1920 dots on the FX-80 $n_1 = 128$ , $n_2 = 7$ . On the FX-100, to print 3264 dots, $n_1 = 192$ , $n_2 = 12$ .
ESC 94 5E ^	Turns Nine-Pin Graphics ON. Format:  CHR\$(27)“^”CHR\$(d)CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> ); followed by 2 times n data numbers where $n = n_1 + 255 * n_2$ $n_1 = 0 - 255$ . $n_2 = 0 - 255$ .  The printer expects 2 data numbers for each column of print. The d selects the density, where 0 produces Single-Density and 1 produces Double-Density
ESC 98 62 b	Sets the vertical tab for channel n. Format:  CHR\$(27)"b"CHR\$(n); where n = 0 - 7, and n = 0 is the same as CHR\$(27)"B".
ESC 105 69 i	On the FX-80 only, turns Immediate Mode ON. Prints each character immediately as it is received by the printer. Format:  CHR\$(27)"i"CHR\$(n) where n toggles Immediate on and off: 0 turns it OFF; and 1 turns it ON.

**ESC Dec Hex Symbol Function**

ESC 106 6A j	On the FX-80 only, causes an immediate reverse line feed in an increment of 1/216-inch without a carriage return. Similar to CHR\$(27)“J”. Format: CHR\$(27)“j”CHR\$(n) where n = 0 - 255.								
ESC 108 6C I	Sets the left margin. Format: CHR\$(27)“I”CHR\$(n) where n ranges from: <table><tr><td>FX-80</td><td>FX-100</td></tr><tr><td>0 - 78</td><td>0-134</td></tr><tr><td>0 - 93</td><td>0-160</td></tr><tr><td>0-133</td><td>0-229</td></tr></table> in Pica in Elite in Compressed	FX-80	FX-100	0 - 78	0-134	0 - 93	0-160	0-133	0-229
FX-80	FX-100								
0 - 78	0-134								
0 - 93	0-160								
0-133	0-229								
ESC 112 70 p	Turns Proportional Mode ON. Cannot mix with Elite, Emphasized, Compressed, Script, or Double-Strike Mode. Format: CHR\$(27)“p”CHR\$(n) where n toggles Proportional on and off: 0 turns it OFF and 1 turns it ON.								
ESC 115 73 s	Selects the print speed. Half-Speed Mode can be employed to reduce noise. Format: CHR\$(27)“s”CHR\$(n) where n toggles Half-Speed on and off, so that 1 produces 80 cps, while 0 produces 160 cps.								
- 127 7F DEL	Deletes the last text character in the print buffer.								

The printer's high-order control codes from 128 to 155 and 255 mirror their low-order counterparts (0 - 27 and 127). For ready reference, both sets are listed here:

<b>Low Dec</b>	<b>High Dec</b>	<b>High Hex</b>	<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Function</b>
<b>0</b>	128	80	NUL	Terminates horizontal and vertical tab setting.
7	135	87	BEL	Sounds beeper.
8	136	88	BS	Backspace.
9	137	89	HT	Horizontal tab.
10	138	8A	LF	Line feed.
11	139	8B	VT	Vertical tab.
12	140	8C	FF	Form feed.
13	141	8D	CR	Carriage return.
14	142	8E	SO	Shift out; turns Expanded Mode ON.
15	143	8F	SI	Shift in; turns Compressed Mode ON.
17	145	91	DC1	Device control 1; activates printer.
18	146	92	DC2	Device control 2; turns Compressed Mode OFF.
19	147	93	DC3	Device control 3; deactivates printer.
20	148	93	DC4	Device control 4; turns the Expanded Mode set by (CHR\$(14) OFF.
24	152	97	CAN	Cancels all text in the print buffer.
27	155	9B	ESC	Escape code.
127	255	FF	DEL	Deletes the last text character in the print buffer.



## Appendix C

# Control Codes by Function

This Appendix shows the same control codes as Appendix B, but this time arranged by categories before ASCII order. If your computer cannot generate lowercase letters, use the equivalent decimal ASCII values. See Appendix B or refer to the pages suggested by the Index for usage instructions.

### Character Width (Pitch)

CHR\$(27) "M"	Turns Elite Mode ON.
CHR\$(27) "P"	Turns Elite Mode OFF.
<b>CHR\$(15)</b>	Turns Compressed Mode ON.
CHR\$(18)	Turns Compressed Mode OFF.
<b>CHR\$(14)</b>	Turns one-Line Expanded Mode ON.
<b>CHR\$(20)</b>	Turns one-Line Expanded Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27) "W0"	Turns Expanded Mode OFF.
<b>CHR\$(27) "W1"</b>	Turns continuous Expanded Mode ON.
CHR\$(27) "p0"	Turns Proportional Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27) "p1"	Turns Proportional Mode ON.

### Character Weight

CHR\$(27) "E"	Turns Emphasized Mode ON.
CHR\$(27) "F"	Turns Emphasized Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27) "G"	Turns Double-Strike Mode ON.
CHR\$(27) "H"	Turns Double-Strike Mode OFF.

## **Print Enhancement**

CHR\$(27)“S0”	Turns Superscript Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)“S1”	Turns Subscript Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)“T”	Turns either Script Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27)“-0”	Turns Underline Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27)“-1”	Turns Underline Mode ON.

## **Mode and Character-Set Selection**

CHR\$(27)“!“CHR\$(n)	Master Select.
CHR\$(27)“%“CHR\$(n,)CHR\$(n, <sub>2</sub> )	Selects a character set by source: ROM (factory) or RAM (user-defined).
CHR\$(27)“&“CHR\$(n)CHR\$(c, <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(c, <sub>2</sub> )CHR\$(A)CHR\$(d, <sub>1</sub> )...CHR\$(d, <sub>11</sub> )	Defines characters c, <sub>1</sub> to c, <sub>2</sub> in RAM area; n is 0. Each character requires an attribute byte (A), followed by 11 data numbers (d, <sub>1</sub> to d, <sub>11</sub> ).
CHR\$(27)“4”	Turns Italic Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)“5”	Turns Italic Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27)“6”	Enables printing of characters stored at ASCII 128 - 159.
CHR\$(27)“7”	Causes codes 128 - 159 to print as control codes.
CHR\$(27)“:“CHR\$(n,)CHR\$(n, <sub>2</sub> )CHR\$(n, <sub>3</sub> )	Copies ROM characters to the user RAM area.
CHR\$(27)“@”	Reset Code.
CHR\$(27)“I0”	Causes codes 0 - 31 to print as control codes.
CHR\$(27)“I1”	Enables printing of characters stored at ASCII 0 - 31 that are not used as control codes.
CHR\$(27)“R” CHR\$(n)	Selects an international character set.

## **Special Printer Features**

CHR\$(7)	Sounds the beeper.
CHR\$(8)	Backspaces.
CHR\$(17)	Enables the printer to receive data.
CHR\$(19)	Disables the printer from receiving data.
<b>CHR\$(24)</b>	Cancels the text in the print buffer.
CHR\$(27)“#”	Accepts the high-order bit “as is” from the computer.

<code>CHR\$(27)"&lt;"</code>	Turns One-Line Unidirectional Mode ON.
<code>CHR\$(27)"="</code>	Sets the high-order bit OFF.
<code>CHR\$(27)"&gt;"</code>	Sets the high-order bit ON.
<code>CHR\$(27)"U0"</code>	Turns Continuous Unidirectional Mode OFF.
<code>CHR\$(27)"Ul"</code>	Turns Continuous Unidirectional Mode ON.
<code>CHR\$(27)"i0"</code>	Turns Immediate Mode OFF.
<code>CHR\$(27)"il"</code>	Turns Immediate Mode ON.
<code>CHR\$(27)"s0"</code>	Returns to normal speed.
<code>CHR\$(27)"sl"</code>	Turns Half-Speed Mode ON.
<code>CHR\$(127)</code>	Deletes the most recent text character in the print buffer.

## Line Spacing

### **CHR\$(10)**

<code>CHR\$(27)"0"</code>	Produces a line feed.
<code>CHR\$(27)"1"</code>	Sets line spacing to 1/8-inch.
<code>CHR\$(27)"2"</code>	Sets line spacing to 7/72-inch.
<code>CHR\$(27)"A"CHR\$(n)</code>	Sets line spacing to 1/6-inch (default).
<code>CHR\$(27)"3"CHR\$(n)</code>	Sets line spacing to n/72-inch.
<code>CHR\$(27)"J"CHR\$(n)</code>	Sets line spacing to n/216-inch.
<code>CHR\$(27)"C"CHR\$(n)</code>	Produces an immediate one-time line feed of n/216-inch without a carriage return.
<code>CHR\$(27)"j"CHR\$(n)</code>	Produces an immediate one-time reverse feed of n/216-inch without a carriage return.

## Forms Control

<code>CHR\$(27)"8"</code>	Turns the paper-out sensor OFF.
<code>CHR\$(27)"9"</code>	Turns the paper-out sensor ON.
<code>CHR\$(12)</code>	Produces a form feed.
<code>CHR\$(13)</code>	Produces a carriage return.
<code>CHR\$(27)"C"CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n)</code>	Sets the form length in inches.
<code>CHR\$(27)"C"CHR\$(n)</code>	Sets the form length in lines.
<code>CHR\$(27)"N"CHR\$(n)</code>	Turns a variable skip-over-perforation ON.
<code>CHR\$(27)"O"</code>	Turns skip-over-perforation OFF.

## Page Format

CHR\$(9) or CHR\$(137)	Activates a horizontal tab.
CHR\$(1l)	Activates a vertical tab.
CHR\$(27)" / " CHR\$(n)	Selects a vertical tab channel.
CHR\$(27)"B"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> ) . . . CHR\$(n <sub>k</sub> )CHR\$(0)	Sets vertical tab stops.
CHR\$(27)"D"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> ) . . . CHR\$(n <sub>k</sub> )CHR\$(0)	Sets horizontal tab stops.
CHR\$(27)"Q"CHR\$(n)	Sets the right margin.
CHR\$(27)"b"CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> ) . . . CHR\$(n <sub>k</sub> )CHR\$(0)	Stores vertical tab stops in a channel.
CHR\$(27)"1"CHR\$(n)	Sets the left margin.

## Dot Graphics

CHR\$(2^X)	When sent as graphics data fires pin X, where x = 0 - 7.
CHR\$(27)"*CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Selects one of six graphics densities.
CHR\$(27)"?s"CHR\$(n)	Reassigns a code letter s to a graphics density n, where s = K, L, Y, or Z and n = 0 - 6.
CHR\$(27)"K"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Turns Single-Density Graphics Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"L"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Turns Double-Density Graphics Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"Y"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Turns High-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"Z"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Turns Quadruple-Density Graphics Mode
CHR\$(27)"^"CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n1)CHR\$(n2);	Turns Single-Density Nine-Pin Graphics Mode
CHR\$(27)"^"CHR\$(l)CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Turns Double-Density Nine-Pin Graphics Mode ON.

## Appendix D

### Control Code Comparison

The first part of this appendix consists of a chart of the commands used on Epson printers. It shows similarities and differences between the MX III, the FX, and the RX. Unless otherwise specified, the FX column applies to both the FX-80 and the FX-100, and the RX column applies to both the RX-80 and the RX-100.

In the second part of this chapter, we summarize the differences in software and then cover variations in hardware features. The commands, both in the chart and in the prose summary, are arranged in ASCII order.

### Control Code Chart

ASCII Dec symbol	ASCII Dec symbol	Function	MXIII	FX	RX
7	BEL	Sounds beeper	*	*	*
8	BS	Backspace	*	*	*
9	HT	Horizontal Tabulation	*	*	*
10	LF	Line Feed	*	*	*
11	VT	Vertical Tabulation	*	*	*
12	F F	Form Feed	*	*	*
13	CR	Carriage Return	*	*	*
14	SO	Shift Out; Expanded (1-line) on	*	*	*
15	SI	Shift In; Compressed on	*	*	*
17	DC1	Activates the printer	*		
18	DC2	Compressed Mode off	*	*	*
19	DC3	Deactivates the printer	*		
20	DC4	Expanded Mode (1 -line) off	*	*	*
24	CAN	CANCels text in print buffer	*		RX-100
27	ESC	Escape code	*	*	*
33	ESC !	Selects mode combinations	*		
35	ESC #	Cancels MSB function	*	*	

<b>ASCII Dec</b>	<b>ASCII symbol</b>	<b>Function</b>	<b>MX III</b>	<b>FX</b>	<b>RX</b>
37	ESC %	Selects active character set (internal ROM or user RAM)		*	
38	ESC &	Defines user characters		*	
42	ESC *	Selects dot Graphics Modes		*	*
45	ESC -	Underline Mode	*	*	*
47	ESC /	Selects active vertical tab channel		*	RX-100
48	ESC 0	1/8" line spacing	*	*	*
49	ESC 1	7/72" line spacing	*	*	*
50	ESC 2	1/6" line spacing	*	*	*
51	ESC 3	n/216" line spacing	*	*	*
52	ESC 4	Italic Mode on	*	*	*
53	ESC 5	Italic Mode off	*	*	*
54	ESC 6	Deactivates high-order control codes		*	
55	ESC 7	Restores high-order control codes		*	
56	ESC 8	Paper-end detector off	*	*	*
57	ESC 9	Paper-end detector on	*	*	*
58	ESC :	Copies from ROM to user RAM		*	
60	ESC <	One-line Unidirectional Mode	*	*	*
61	ESC =	Resets MSB Function	*	*	
62	ESC >	Sets MSB Function	*	*	
63	ESC ?	Reassigns alternate graphics codes		*	RX-100
64	ESC @	Reset Code	*	*	*
65	ESC A	n/72" line spacing	*	*	*
66	ESC B	Vertical tab setting		*	RX-100
67	ESC C	Page length	*	*	*
68	ESC D	Horizontal tab setting	*	*	RX-100
69	ESC E	Emphasized Mode on	*	*	*
70	ESC F	Emphasized Mode off	*	*	*
71	ESC G	Double-Strike Mode on	*	*	*
72	ESC H	Double-Strike Mode off	*	*	*
73	ESC I	Control code select		*	
74	ESC J	Immediate temporary line feed	*	*	*
75	ESC K	Single-Density Graphics Mode	*	*	*
76	ESC L	Double-Density Graphics Mode	*	*	*
77	ESC M	Elite Mode on		*	*
78	ESC N	Skip-over-perforation on	*	*	*
79	ESC O	Skip-over-perforation off	*	*	*
80	ESC P	Elite Mode off		*	*
81	ESC Q	Sets right margin	*	*	*
82	ESC R	International characters		*	*
83	ESC S	Super/Subscript Mode on	*	*	*

ASCII Dec	ASCII symbol	Function	MX III	FX	RX
84	ESC T	Super/Subscript Mode off	*	*	*
85	ESC U	Unidirectional printing on/off	*	*	*
87	ESC W	Expanded Mode (continuous) on/off	*	*	*
89	ESC Y	High-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode		*	*
90	ESC Z	Quadruple-Density Graphics Mode		*	*
94	ESC ^	Nine-Pin Graphics Mode		*	RX-100
98	ESC b	Sets vertical tab channel		*	RX-100
101	ESC e	Sets horizontal/vertical tab increments			RX-80
102	ESC f	Sets horizontal/vertical position			RX-80
105	ESC i	Immediate print (typewriter mode)		FX-80	
106	ESC j	Immediate temporary reverse paper feed		FX-80	
108	ESC l	Sets left margin		*	*
109	ESC m	Selects graphics character set			*
112	ESC p	Proportional Mode on/off		*	
115	ESC s	Half-Speed on/off		*	*
127	DEL	Delete last text character in print buffer	*	*	*

## Epson Model Differences

In this discussion of software and hardware differences between the MX III, the FX and the RX, the command name (backspace, vertical tab, etc.) is that of the most recent model which carries it.

### CHR\$(8) - Backspacing

On the MX III in Expanded Mode, moves the print head to the left one Pica position.

On the FX and RX in all six pitches, moves the print head to the left one position in the current pitch.

### CHR\$(9) or CHR\$(137) - Default horizontal tabbing

See CHR\$(27)"D" and CHR\$(27)"e".

### CHR\$(11) - Vertical tabbing

On the MX III, prints a line feed.

On the FX and RX, activates a vertical tab. See also ESCape "e".

### **CHR\$(15) - Compressed Mode selection**

On the MX III, prints 132 characters per 8-inch line.

On the FX-80 and RX-80, prints 132 characters per 8-inch line, but can print 137 characters if the right margin is changed. On the FX-100 and RX-100 prints 233 characters per 13.6-inch line.

### **CHR\$(17) and CHR\$(19) - Printer selection**

On the FX only and only with DIP switch 2-1 off, turns printing on and off. When CHR\$(19) is in effect, the printer ignores all output.

### **CHR\$(24) - Cancelling text**

On the FX and RX-100 only erases all text from the buffer; does not erase control codes from the buffer.

### **ESCAPE "!" - Master Print Mode selection**

On the FX only, selects one of 16 print mode combinations. Any one of these may also be combined with other print modes.

### **Escape "#", ">" and "=" - MSB control**

On the MX III and the FX, these three codes allow 7-bit system users to print high-order control codes by manipulating the most significant bit.

### **ESCAPE "%", ":" and "&" - Custom character definition**

On the FX only, lets you design your own characters and store them in RAM. You can use them alone or in combination with the standard FX characters.

### **Escape "\*" - Special Graphics Mode selection**

On all three models, ESCAPE "K" and "L" provide two Graphics Modes.

On both the FX and the RX, Escape "\*" adds four more graphics densities: 80, 90, 120, and 140 dots per inch.

On the FX only, adds a fifth, 72 dots per inch.

### **ESCAPE "-" - Underlining**

On all three models, the underline character is five dots wide.

On the MX-III, this code dumps the buffer and, when a space is placed at the beginning or end of a line, the printer ignores it.

On the FX, the underline code does not empty the buffer and spaces can occur (and thus be underlined) at the beginning or end of a line.

On the RX, the underline code does dump the buffer and spaces can occur (and thus be underlined) at the beginning or end of a line.

## **Escape"/" , "B", and "b" - Vertical tabbing**

On the FX and RX-100 only lets you set up to 16 vertical tabs and store up to eight vertical tab channels in memory.

## **ESCape "3" - Special line spacing**

On all three models, you can set and reset the line feed function by changing hardware (DIP switch and/or cable wiring).

On the FX and RX, this code provides  $n/216$ -inch line spacing and incidentally controls the automatic line feed function.

## **ESCape"4" - Italic Mode selection**

On all three models, prints in the Italic version of the current pitch.

On the FX only, also empties the buffer.

## **ESCape "6" and "7" - Special character selection**

On the FX only, lets you print the characters that are stored behind control codes 128 to 159 and 255.

## **Escape"??" - Graphics code reassignment.**

On the FX reassgns alternate graphics codes to one of seven density settings.

On the RX-100 only, reassgns alternate graphics codes to one of six density settings.

## **ESCape"A" - Special line spacing**

On all three models, you can set and reset the line feed function by changing hardware (DIP switch and/or cable wiring).

On the FX and RX, this code provides  $n/72$ -inch line spacing and incidentally controls the automatic line feed function.

## **ESCape"B" - Vertical tabbing. See Escape"/" .**

## **ESCape"D" - Horizontal tabbing**

On the MX III, you set horizontal tabs in the current pitch when that is Pica, Elite, or Compressed (Emphasized does not affect the settings). The positions of horizontal tabs change with subsequent changes in pitch, and zero is the terminator character.

On the FX and RX-100 only, you set horizontal tabs in the current pitch. Horizontal tab stops remain located at the positions that you set regardless of any subsequent changes in pitch, and you can terminate them with any value less than or equal to that of the last tab stop. Default tab settings do change when Expanded Mode is in effect.

For the RX-80, see ESCape"e".

### **Escape "G" - Double-Strike Mode selection**

On the MX III, FX-100, and RX, moving in and out of Double-Strike Mode on one line produces a descent of one-third dot per change.

### **ESCAPE "H" - Double-Strike Mode selection**

On the MX III, this code also cancels Script Mode.

### **ESCAPE "I" - Special character selection**

On the FX only, you can use this code as a toggle (with 0 and 1) which allows you to print the characters stored behind control codes 0 to 31. ESCAPE "I" will not work on those codes needed by the printer.

### **ESCAPE "K" - Graphics Mode selection with the format ESCAPE "K" CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)**

On the MX III, this code is invalid when the high-order bit is set, and n<sub>2</sub> works modulo 8.

On the FX, users of 7-bit systems can use this code with the high-order bit set, but n<sub>2</sub> will not work modulo 8.

On the RX, this code works with the high-order bit set, and n<sub>2</sub> does work modulo 8.

### **ESCAPE "M" and "P" - Elite Mode selection**

On the FX and RX, prints in Elite (12 characters per inch), which matches the pitch used on many typewriters. ESCAPE "M" selects Elite and "P" returns the printer to the default mode.

### **ESCAPE "R" - International character set selection**

On the RX, lets you select from 11 international character sets.

On the FX only, lets you select from 9 international character sets; also prints the contents of the buffer.

### **Escape "S" and "T" - Script Mode selection**

On the MX III, Script characters cannot be printed in Expanded or Emphasized Mode; ESCAPE "H" cancels not only Double-Strike Mode but also both Script Modes; and ESCAPE "T" returns the printer to Double-Strike.

On the FX and RX, Script characters can be printed in Expanded or Emphasized; Escape "H" cancels only Double-Strike; and ESCAPE "T" returns the printer to the previous mode, whether it was Single- or Double-Strike.

See also ESCAPE "G".

**ESCape "Y" - High-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode selection**

On the FX and RX, prints ESCape "L" graphics at twice the usual speed. There is one limitation: it will not print adjacent dots in the same row.

**ESCape "Z" - Quadruple-Density Graphics Mode selection**

On the FX and RX, prints 1920 dots per B-inch line; on the FX-100 and RX-100, prints 3264 dots per 13.6-inch line.

**Escape "^" - Nine-pin Graphics Mode selection**

On the FX and RX-100 only, speeds up screen dumps.

**ESCape "b" - Vertical tabbing. See Escape "/" .**

**ESCape "e" - Horizontal and vertical tabbing**

On the RX-80 only, lets you set an increment to be used by CHR\$(9), CHR\$(137), or CHR\$(11). Regardless of the current pitch, you set horizontal tabs in Pica pitch. After a tab is set, subsequent changes in line spacing or pitch do not affect its position.

**Escape "f" - Special horizontal and vertical spacing**

On the RX-80 only, lets you print up to 127 horizontal spaces or vertical line feeds.

**ESCape "i" - Immediate printing**

On the FX-80 only, causes character-by-character printing, as on a typewriter.

**Escape "j" - Reverse line-feed selection**

On the FX-80 only, causes a reverse line feed of n/216-inch in the current column.

**ESCape "1" - Left margin selection**

On the FX-80 and RX-80, lets you set the left margin for an B-inch line at 0 to 78 in Pica, 0 to 93 in Elite, and 0 to 133 in Compressed. On the RX-100 and FX-100, lets you set the left margin for a 13.6-inch line at 0 to 134 in Pica, 0 to 160 in Elite, and 0 to 229 in Compressed.

**ESCape "m" - Graphics character selection**

On the RX only, lets you print the graphics characters which are stored behind control codes 128 to 159.

**ESCape "p" - Proportional Mode selection**

On the FX only, prints characters proportionally, without excess space, in Emphasized Mode.

## **ESCape"s" - Half-speed printing**

On the FX, prints at half the normal speed, which results in 80 characters per second.

On the RX, prints at half the normal speed, which results in 50 characters per second.

## **Dumping programs in hexadecimal**

On the FX and RX, you can use the hex dumping facility to aid you in debugging. All codes sent to the printer are dumped onto the paper in their hex format, which lets you see exactly what the printer is receiving from the computer.

You turn this facility on as you turn the printer on. As you turn on the FX, hold down the FF button. As you turn on the RX, hold down both the FF and LF buttons. For either model, you stop dumping in hex by turning off the printer.

The FX-80 prints the hex dump at 20 numbers per line; this leaves 2 spaces between each pair of numbers. The FX-100 prints the hex dump at 34 numbers per line; this leaves 2 spaces between each pair of numbers.

The RX-80 prints the hex dump at 26 numbers per line; this leaves 1 space between each number.

## **Alarms**

The FX and RX have different alarms for the various error conditions. See Appendix F.

## **Typestyles**

On the FX and RX, you can print in 128 typestyles.

## **DIP switches**

Each model has its own arrangement of DIP switches. See Appendix E.

## **Pin feeder**

Only the FX-80 has a built-in pin feeder.

## Appendix E

# Defaults and DIP Switches

In this Appendix we list the default settings for your printer, showing which settings you can change and the way you can change them. Some of the defaults can be changed by using DIP switches; the second section illustrates and discusses those defaults.

### Default Settings

When your FX comes from the factory, it is set to the following defaults. An asterisk (\*) means that you can change the default for this setting by changing a DIP switch, while a bullet (•) means that you can change this setting in a program, by using an ESCape code.

- \* • Printer activated
  - Roman character font
- \* • Pica pitch
  - Margins set at maximums: left margin at 0, and, since the default is Pica, the right margin at 80 on the FX-80 and at 136 on the FX-100
    - 12-dot line spacing
    - 66 lines (11 inches of default line spacing)
    - Vertical tabs set at every two lines
    - Vertical tab channel 0 selected
    - Horizontal tabs set at every eight spaces
- \* • USA character set

- \*     2K buffer available for user-defined characters
- \* • Paper-out sensor on
- \*     Non-slash zero (although there's no code for "turning on" slash zero, you can slash one zero at a time with backspace)
- \*     Carriage return issued at the end of a line without an automatic line feed
- Bidirectional movement of the print head
- \* • Skip-over-perforation feature off
- \*     Beeper on (turning off the paper-out sensor deactivates the beeper for this function but not for others)

Top of form occurs at the position of the print head when you reset the printer-by turning power on or by issuing an ESCape "@"-or when you change the form length with either format of ESCape "C".

## DIP Switches

The FX printers have two sets of internal switches which are used by the printer to determine the default mode on power-up. The switches are under the upper right vent. As outlined in Chapter 1, the vent screw must be removed with a Phillips-head screwdriver in order to take the cover off.

Since switch settings are only checked by the printer on power-up, all switch setting should be done with the power off. The printer will not recognize changes made in switch settings when the power is on until the printer is turned off and then on again.

The factory sets and numbers the switches in the following way:

Table E-1. DIP switch functions

**Switch 1**

No.	ON	Function	OFF
1-8	ON	International character	OFF
1-7	ON	International character	OFF
1-6	ON	International character	OFF
1-5	Emphasized	Print weight	Single-strike
1-4	2K buffer	RAM memory	User-defined characters
1-3	Inactive	Paper-out sensor	Active
1-2	Ø (slashed)	Zero character	Ø
1-1	Compressed	Print pitch	Pica

**Switch 2**

No.	ON	Function	OFF
2-4	CR + LF	Automatic line feed	CR only
2-3	ON	Skip-over-perforation feature	OFF
2-2	Sound	Beeper	Mute
2-1	Active	Printer select	Inactive

Note: The shaded boxes show the factory settings.

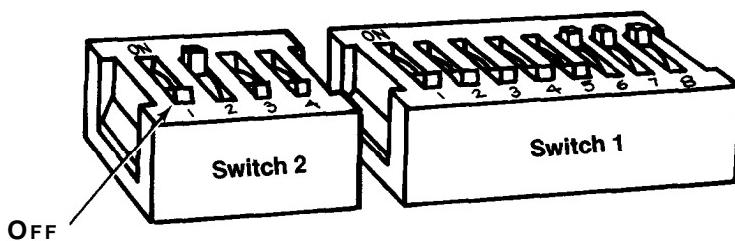


Figure E-Z. Factory setting of the DIP switches

**Examining the Switches**

Switches 1-6, 1-7, and 1-8 determine the active international character set as shown on the next page:

*Table E-2. International DIP switch settings*

<b>Country</b>	<b>Switch 1-6</b>	<b>Switch 1-7</b>	<b>Switch 1-8</b>
USA	On	On	On
France	On	On	Off
Germany	On	Off	On
United Kingdom	On	Off	Off
Denmark	Off	On	On
Sweden	Off	On	Off
Italy	Off	Off	On
Spain	Off	Off	Off

See Chapter 6 for a discussion of the international sets.

*Switch 1-5:* selects a default print weight. When it is ON, Emphasized is the default. When it is OFF, Single-Strike is the default.

*Switch 7-4:* controls the RAM memory. When it is ON, makes a 2K buffer available. When it is OFF, that memory can be used for user-defined characters.

*Switch 1-3:* controls the paper-out sensor. When it is ON, the sensor is deactivated, and printing will continue even when paper is out (printer stays on-line). When it is OFF, printing stops when the printer runs out of paper. The printer goes off-line (and the beeper sounds if switch 2-2 is on).

*Switch 1-2:* controls the printing of zeroes. When it is ON, the FX prints a slashed zero (0). When it is OFF, a normal zero is printed.

*Switch 1-1:* selects a default pitch. When it is ON Compressed Mode becomes the default. When it is OFF, Pica is the default. If both switch 1-5 and switch 1-1 are ON, Emphasized Mode takes priority over Compressed.

*Switch 2-4:* controls the line feed. When it is ON, the printer produces an automatic line feed with every carriage return. When it is OFF no line feed is added (line feed must be provided by computer).

*Switch 2-3:* controls the skip-over perforation feature. When it is ON, a form feed is produced one inch from the bottom of every form. Note that the top of form is set when the printer is turned ON. This switch is used primarily to skip automatically over the paper perforation of fanfold paper. When it is OFF, no skip is made. See chapter 8 for details.

*Switch 2-2:* controls the beeper. When it is ON, the beeper sounds when it receives a CHR\$(7) or to indicate the paper has run out. When it is OFF, CHR\$(7) or paper-out doesn't sound beeper.

For printer detected error other than paper-out sensing (for which switch 1-3 must also be set), the beeper will sound regardless of the setting of switch 2-2.

*Switch 2-1:* selects the printer. When it is ON, it activates the SLCT IN signal and the printer actively processes commands sent from the computer; it cannot be deactivated with software codes. When it is OFF, the printer can be activated and deactivated by external software codes. CHR\$(17) (DCL) activates or turns on printing, and CHR\$(19) (DC3) deactivates or turns off printing. While the printer is inactive, all input data is ignored (until the printer is reactivated by CHR\$(17)).

---



# Appendix F

## Troubleshooting

This appendix approaches troubleshooting from several directions. The first section uses a columnar format to match solutions with problems. Other sections cover beeper error warnings, hexadecimal code dumping, coding and seven-bit solutions, and specific solutions for several popular personal computer systems.

### **Problem/Solution Summary**

The left column below will help you in identifying the source of your problem and start you on the way to finding a solution.

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Solution</b>
<b>Setting print styles</b>	Can't get Compressed print.  Cancel Emphasized, Elite and/or Proportional Modes. They have priority over Compressed. Be sure that DIP switch 1-5 is not set for Emphasized.
Doesn't go back to Pica print when Proportional Mode is cancelled.	Proportional print masks other modes. When it is cancelled, the printer returns to the mode that it was in prior to Proportional. To get back to Pica, cancel all other modes.

## **Changing form measurements**

The ESCape "C" command is not working properly.

Don't set, form lengths of 0 or 128.

The ESCape "N" skip-over-perforation doesn't work.

Don't set the skip larger than the form length.

## **Tabbing**

Vertical tabs don't work correctly.

Can't set vertical tabs greater than the form length. Each tab sequence must be terminated by a CHR\$(0) or a number less than the last tab value.

Horizontal tabs don't work correctly.

Each tab sequence must be terminated by a CHR\$(0) or a number less than the last tab value.

Horizontal tabs are incorrect when changing pitch.

Tabs are set according to current print pitch. Changes in pitch do not affect the position of the tabs on the page.

## **Graphics**

Strange things print.

Some systems require a WIDTH statement. See your system documentation.

Many computers have problems sending one or more of the codes 0 and 8 - 13. Avoid any that affect your system if possible. Alternatively, you can substitute the high-order versions, or you can POKE the problem codes directly to the printer.

Seven-bit computers cannot use the eighth pin (128). If you have a 7-bit computer and your pin sequence is larger than 127, change it.

Printer "freezes" in Graphics Mode.

The printer expects a certain number of pin patterns, determined by  $n_1$  and  $n_2$ . It will wait patiently until the quota is full. Note that 9-Pin Graphics Mode requires two bytes for each column of graphics.

Can't get a full page in width.

Some systems require a WIDTH statement. See your system documentation.

Seven-bit computers are limited to widths of 0 - 127, 256 - 383, 512 - 639, etc. See below.

Having trouble getting into Graphics Mode.

Make sure the high-order bit is OFF. For 7-bit computers, that means sending the code: ESCape " = "

## User-Defined Characters

The last character is swallowed by the printer . . . nothing gets printed.

Make sure the attribute byte is sent before the 11-pin patterns for EACH character.

Characters are one dot too high or low.

Use the correct setting for the attribute byte. An attribute byte less than 128 makes the bottom 8 pins active (good for descenders). An attribute byte of 128 or greater activates the top 8 (matching ROM characters without descenders).

Characters are running too close **together**.

You must reserve space between characters within the character design. Typically, the last 2 columns are defined as 0. See the matrixes for ROM characters in Appendix A.

Some of the dots are being ignored by the printer.

Two dots in the same row cannot be printed in adjacent columns.

## **Loading paper**

Paper goes crooked as it rolls down.

It may be running against the ribbon guide. Move the printhead to the middle of its path.

Paper crunches up.

The paper guides are set incorrectly. Move them to fit this paper.

If your paper is thin, doubling the first page may give enough rigidity to ease it through the guides.

For subsequent loading, tape the first page of a new batch of paper to the last page of an old batch, thus avoiding reloading.

Top edge of paper sticks under the roller.

There may be bits of paper caught under the roller. Stop inserting paper; turn the roller and extract any paper bits with fingers or tweezers.

## **Paper-out sensor**

Can't deactivate paper-out sensor with DIP switch 1-3 or ESCape "8".

Computer systems that monitor printer cable pin 12 will ignore both ESCape "8" and the setting of switch 1-3. These systems will stop the printing when no paper is in contact with the paper-out sensor (a reed switch located on the paper guide). Certain printer cables are designed to overcome this problem, or you can tape a business card over the switch.

## **Beeper Error Warnings**

The FX will warn you of certain error conditions by sounding the internal beeper. Each of the four error conditions has a unique sound. Listen closely . . .

1. A short circuit between the collector and the emitter of a head transistor along with a shorted dot driver winding produces:  
PI, PI, PI . . . PI, PI, PI  
on power-up or self-test, and  
PI, PI, PI, PI  
when on-line and printing.
2. Detection of high voltage produces:  
PI, PI, PI, PEE
3. Errors detected by slave CPU (restricted printhead motion or PTS sensor failure) produce:  
PI, PI, PI . . . PI, PI, PI
4. The paper running out produces:  
PI, PI, PI, PI (repeated five times)

Note: Except for paper-out sensing, the beeper will sound regardless of switch setting.

## Hex Diagnosis

Some computer systems change one or more codes when sending them from BASIC to the printer. The FX's ability to dump in hexadecimal lets you determine which codes are creating problems for your system.

The hex dump facility prints each code that is being received by the FX onto the paper as a string of hexadecimal values. You turn the hex dump on by holding down the FF button while you turn the printer on.

A hex printout of a program shows you exactly what the printer is receiving, regardless of what the computer is sending. The following program lets you check to see what codes, if any, make problems for your computer system.

```
10 FOR X=0 TO 255
20 LPRINT CHR$(X);
30 NEXT X
```

Put the printer in hex dump status and then RUN the program.

If your system passes the codes directly to the printer without changing them, your output looks like Figure F-1 (take your printer off-line to make it print the final line).

00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0A	0B	0C	0D	0E	0F	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D	1E	1F	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	2A	2B	2C	2D	2E	2F	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	3A	3B
3C	3D	3E	3F	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	4B	49	4A	4B	4C	4D	4E	4F
50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	5A	5B	5C	5D	5E	5F	60	61	62	63
64	65	66	67	68	69	6A	6B	6C	6D	6E	6F	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77
78	79	7A	7B	7C	7D	7E	7F	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	8A	8B
8C	8D	8E	8F	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	9A	9B	9C	9D	9E	9F
A0	A1	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	A8	A9	AA	AB	AC	AD	AE	AF	B0	B1	B2	B3
B4	B5	B6	B7	B8	B9	BA	BB	BC	BD	BE	BF	C0	C1	C2	C3	C4	C5	C6	C7
C8	C9	CA	CB	CC	CD	CE	CF	D0	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	D7	D8	D9	DA	DB
DC	DD	DE	DF	E0	E1	E2	E3	E4	E5	E6	E7	E8	E9	EA	EB	EC	ED	EE	EF
F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7	F8	F9	FA	FB	FC	FD	FE	FF	OD			

*Figure F-1. Best-case hex dump*

Most BASICs, however, are not quite that straightforward. For example, the TRS-80 Model III prints Figure F-2:

00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	0D	0B	0A							
0A																			
0A																			
0A																			
10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D	1E	1F	20	21	22	23
24	25	26	27	28	29	2A	2B	2C	2D	2E	2F	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37
38	39	3A	3B	3C	3D	3E	3F	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	4B	49	4A	4F
4C	4D	4E	4F	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	5A	5B	5C	5D	5E	5F
60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	6A	6B	6C	6D	6E	6F	70	71	72	73
74	75	76	77	78	79	7A	7B	7C	7D	7E	7F	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87
88	89	8A	8B	8C	8D	8E	8F	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	9A	9B
9C	9D	9E	9F	A0	A1	A2	A3	A4	A5	A6	A7	A8	A9	AA	AB	AC	AD	AE	AF
B0	B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7	B8	B9	BA	BB	BC	BD	BE	BF	C0	C1	C2	C3
C4	C5	C6	C7	CB	CC	CD	CE	CF	DD	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	D7			
DB	D9	DA	DB	DC	DD	DE	DF	E0	E1	E2	E3	E4	E5	E6	E7	E8	E9	EA	EB
EC	ED	EE	EF	F0	F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7	FB	F9	FA	FB	FC	FD	FE	FF
OD																			

*Figure F-2. TRS-80 Model III hex dump*

Notice that the FX is receiving decimal code 10 as hex 0D, which is decimal 13. In addition, decimal code 12 (hex 0C) is coming across as a series of line feeds, hex 0A (decimal 10).

The hex mode prints 20 numbers per line on the FX-80 and 34 numbers per line on the FX-100. If it receives fewer than it expects in a line, it sits in a holding pattern, awaiting more data. Take the printer off-line to dump the characters to the paper.

To debug a program quickly, just use the hex dumping capability. Appendix A will help you translate the hex codes to ASCII equivalents.

## Coding Solutions

Once you've determined that a code creates problems for your

printing, either by trial and error or by using the hex dumping capability of the FX, you can start overcoming them.

Because each computer system deals with ASCII codes differently, it is impossible to provide solutions for all potential problems in one appendix. We can, however, point out generic problems and suggest ways to handle them.

There are four common approaches. First, you may be able to buy an alternative printer interface card for your system. This is the best solution for 7-bit system problems. See your computer dealer for advice about this.

The second approach is to use commercially available software that is specifically designed to overcome these coding problems. Consult your computer dealer or computer publications to see if a program for your computer system is available.

The third approach consists of avoiding the software that is changing the codes. On most computers you can send each code directly to the printer. This bypasses the BASIC interpreter and avoids the interface.

Unfortunately, this process is also different for each computer system. We'll give the procedure for a couple of systems here; if your system is not either of them, use the procedure as a model. Consult your computer's manual to determine if you can do the same on your system.

A fourth approach is to change the printer driver program in your system. This requires a knowledge of machine language and of the way your computer works. If you don't have this knowledge, your computer dealer may be able to help you or suggest someone who can.

We show a sample printer driver below (following the examples of POKEing codes). The idea is to pass the codes as issued by a BASIC program directly to the FX.

## **POKEing codes**

The TRS-80 Model I version of the CHR\$ function does not correctly pass on the values of 0, 10, 11, and 12. Zero is a particular problem as it is very important to the ESCape codes of the FX printers.

These codes can be sent directly to the printer by POKEing them to a special memory location where they are immediately forwarded to the printer. The format is:

```
POKE 14312, N
```

where N is the decimal value of the code you wish to send to the printer. This works fine as long as the printer is ready to receive the data when you are ready to send it. On the Model I, the printer's readiness is assured if location 14312 contains a decimal 63.

It is best to first test to see if the printer is ready with:

```
100 IF PEEK(14312)<>63 THEN 100
```

This puts the program into a continuous loop until the printer is ready to receive data. If data is sent while the printer is "out to lunch," it will be lost.

To show how similar these commands can be from system to system, here is the same concept implemented on the Apple II Plus:

```
100 IF PEEK(49601)>127 THEN 100  
200 POKE 49296,N
```

The printer's status is stored in location 49601 and the outgoing values are sent to 49296.

## Special printer drivers

An even better (but more difficult) way to overcome these problems is to modify the printer driver so that the codes are passed correctly to the printer without any PEEKs or POKEs. If you do not want to write such a driver yourself, your computer dealer may be able to help you. Or you may find aid in the pages of a trade journal.

The following printer driver, for instance, was written for the TRS-80 Model I by Bob Boothe and reprinted with the kind permission of *80 Micro* (Wayne Green Publishers). The program POKEs a machine-language printer driver program (stored in line 10) into memory, then tells the system where its new driver is located. Once you RUN the program, all codes sent by any BASIC program are sent directly to the printer-including 0s, 10s, and 12s.

```
10 DATA 21E837CB7E20FC211100397E32E837C9  
20 READ B$: A=16571  
30 FOR P=1 TO LEN (B$) STEP 2  
40 B=ASC(MID$(B$,P,1)) - 48
```

```
50 IF B>9 THEN B=B - 7
60 T=ASC(MID$(B$,P + 1, 1)) - 48
70 IF T>9 THEN T=T-7
80 POKE A,B*16 + T
90 A=A+1
100 NEXT P
110 POKE 16422, 187
120 POKE 16423, 64
```

This driver will also work on the TRS-80 Model III-with one change in line 10: change 32E837 to D3FB. That's all there is to it. If you use this program, you can kiss problems with radical codes good-bye.

## Solutions for Seven-Bit Systems

The BASIC language on some computers can only send seven bits to the printer at one time, even though the machine language may be able to send eight. (The Apple II Plus is a case in point.) On such computers, the CHR\$ function cannot send the entire range of ASCII codes (0 - 255) to the printer; it can send only the lower half (0 - 127).

To find out whether your system is an 8-bit system, capable of generating all 256 ASCII codes, enter this simple test:

```
10 FOR X=160 TO 254
20 LPRINT CHR$(X);
30 NEXT X
```

If you get Italic characters when you RUN this, you are using an 8-bit system.

If you have a 7-bit system, you need to understand what happens to the control codes you send. The FX automatically interprets these codes the way your system sends them-as the lower half of the range. There is something you can do when you want to send the upper half (128 - 255): have your program convert all codes outside of the active range to their equivalent in the upper half by adding 128 to them.

The problems that are associated with 7-bit systems include:

Tabs can't be set in both code ranges (to avoid problem codes).

Limitations on width in Graphics Mode.

Inability to use the top pin for Graphics Mode.

User-defined characters can't be printed with the top 8 pins (the standard position for most characters). Eight pins can't be used in defining characters. Here we suggest some ways to work around these types of problems.

## High-order bit control

If you own a seven-bit system, the FX can help you. It gives you three instructions to let you control the high-order (eighth) bit:

- ESCape ">" turns the high-order control and the high-order bit ON
- ESCape "=" turns the high-order bit OFF
- ESCape "#" returns the system to normal by turning the high-order control OFF

Note that the eighth bit does not change state automatically-it remains in the state that you have set until you change it with one of the other two bit-control codes.

The FX also helps you 7-bit system users by letting you leave the eighth bit turned on through changes in the ESCape codes. In other words, adding 128 to any ESCape code will not change its effect. This means that the low-order sequence for Emphasized print:

CHR\$(27)CHR\$(69)

and the high-order sequence:

CHR\$(27)CHR\$">"CHR\$(27)CHR\$(69)

produce the same result even though for the high-order sequence, 128 is added to each of the second pair of character-string codes. This means that when you turn the high-order bit on to handle numbers between 128 and 255, you do not have to worry about changing any ESCape code sequences.

Here's an example of how you can use the three codes:

```
NEW
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)" 'Sets eighth bit
20 FOR X=65 TO 90: LPRINT CHR$(X);: NEXT X
30 LPRINT CHR$(27)"=" 'Supresses eighth bit
40 FOR X=193 TO 218: LPRINT CHR$(X);: NEXT X
50 LPRINT CHR$(27)"#" ' Returns eighth bit to normal
```

*ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPQRSTUVWXYZ*  
*ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPQRSTUVWXYZ*

Setting the eighth bit on in line 10 adds 128 to each of the number in line 20; thus it prints Italic characters. The ESCape "=" in line 30 effectively subtracts 128 from each of the numbers in line 40, so the second line prints as the characters from 65 through 90. Line 50 returns your system to its usual state.

## Seven-bit graphics

The 7-bit limitation affects graphics in two ways. First, 7-bit computer programs are limited in the widths they can specify for graphics. When you enter a Graphics Mode from a 7-bit system, the first number ( $n_1$ ) you send can only range as high as 127. Even by changing  $n_2$  from 0 to 1, 2, 3, etc., you can only set specific figure widths: 0 to 127, 256 to 383, 512 to 639, etc.

Let's look at an example. The usual way you reserve the entire width of an 8-inch page for graphics is:

```
LPRINT CHR$(27)"K"CHR$(224)CHR$(11);
```

This gives 224 dots plus 1 times 256 dots, or 480 total. But a 7-bit system cannot send the 224; the largest number it can send is 127. So the maximum number attainable with  $n_2 = 1$  is  $127 + 1 \times 256 = 383$ , which is still less than Single-Density's page width. If you change  $n_1$  to a 0 and  $n_2$  to a 2 you get  $0 + 2 \times 256 = 512$ . Now it's too high.

So, what can you 7-bit users do? First, do not get discouraged. You can do a lot in 383 columns of dots and where you really need more than 383 columns graphics, there is a solution. Just enter Single-Density Graphics Mode twice on the same line, first for 383 columns and then for 97 columns.

```
10 LPRINT CHR$(27)"K"CHR$(127)CHR$(1):  
20 FOR X=1 TO 383: LPRINT CHR$(1);: NEXT X  
30 LPRINT CHR$(27)"K"CHR$(97)CHR$(0);  
40 FOR X=1 TO 97: LPRINT CHR$(1);: NEXT X  
50 LPRINT
```

This gives coverage of the full 480 columns. It's not elegant, but it gets the job done.

## Solutions for Specific Systems

The next four sections illustrate dealing with interface puzzles on four types of computers: the Apple II, the TRS-80, the IBM-PC, and the QX-10.

### Apple II solutions

There are two types of problems that you who own Apple II computers will need to address. The first is that the Apple II is an 8-bit computer, but its printer interface only handles seven bits. The second is that there is one problem code number: nine.

The printer interface card furnished with the Apple II computer only passes seven bits to the FX, which means that you have a 7-bit system. Should you need an 8-bit system, the simplest solution is to purchase a new printer interface card from your computer dealer. Such a card is available for the Apple II.

Or you can use software to solve any problems that arise from the limitation to seven bits. You can POKE codes to memory as discussed above, you can write your own printer driver, or you can avoid the types of programs that require eight bits.

A routine to POKE codes to the memory of an Apple II Plus is given above.

The Apple II uses CHR\$(9) to “initialize” the printer. This code and the following character or characters are intercepted by the printer interface card and used to change modes (in somewhat the same way that the printer uses ESCape codes). You can divert all output to the printer instead of to the screen by sending the following line to the printer interface card:

```
PR#1  
PRINT CHR$(9)"80N"
```

Then type anything, followed by RETURN.

The CHR\$(9)“80N” code directs all subsequent output to the printer, up to 80 characters per row. You can cancel this by typing:

```
PRINT CHR$(9)"1" or PR#0
```

The problem is that the FX uses CHR\$(9) to activate horizontal tabulation and can also use it in graphics programs. When you send this code, however, your system will interpret it as a printer initialization

code and the program will not work properly. The programs in this manual do not use CHR\$(9), but some do use its high-order version - CHR\$(137) - which your system will change to CHR\$(9). In these **cases** use the following method to change your printer initialization code to a number that is not used in the program. For example, you can change your initialization code to one by typing:

```
PR#1  
PRINT CHR$(9); CHR$(1)
```

## TRS-80 solutions

A routine to POKE codes to the memory of a Model I is given above. A special printer driver for either the Model I or the Model III is also shown above. One of those methods should solve any problems with the programs in this manual.

## IBM-PC solutions

There are two problems in using the IBM Personal Computer BASIC to drive a printer. First, the IBM-PC BASIC inserts a carriage-return/line-feed (CR-LF) after each 80 characters you send it. Second, it adds an LF to each CR in an LPRINT statement.

Here is the way to adjust the width when it is the only problem. Tell the computer that the print line is wider than 80 characters with this WIDTH statement:

```
WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
```

The 255 is a special number that prevents the computer system from inserting a CR-LF into the line. Unless, of course, there's one in your program.

The extra line feed-CHR\$(10)-that accompanies each carriage return-CHR\$(13) - is no problem except when you need to use CHR\$(13) in a graphics program. Getting rid of the extra CHR\$(10) is rather complicated. First you open the printer as a random file:

```
OPEN "LPT1:" AS #1
```

Although this allows you to send any code to the printer, you can no longer use the LPRINT command. Instead, you must use a PRINT #1 command:

```
PRINT #1, "Now I can print anything"
```

This does allow you to print anything, but it ignores any previous WIDTH statements.

If you want to print more than 80 characters per line in a graphics program, you must therefore change your opening statement to include the appropriate WIDTH statement:

```
OPEN "LPT1:" AS #1 : WIDTH #1, 255
```

And for the programs in this manual, don't forget to use PRINT #1 wherever we use LPRINT.

This won't work for those of you who have the original release of the Disk Operating System (DOS 1.0). It can't run a printer like a file. Last year, however, IBM issued a free update (DOS 1.05); take a disk to your dealer to get your copy.

Another printer problem with DOS 1.0 is that it doesn't send CHR\$(7) to the printer; it just rings the computer's bell. This has also been corrected in subsequent versions.

For Programmer's Easy Lesson make the following modifications in the program. In line 10 change the 29 to 28 and the 137 to 9; in line 20 change the 26 to 25; in lines 110 and 250 change the 25s to 24s; in line 330 change the 11s to 9s; add one line:

```
7 WIDTH "LPT1:", 255
```

## **QX-10 solutions**

There are two types of computer-printer interface problems that you owners of Epson QX-10s may need to address. The first is making a width statement when a line is to be more than 80 characters wide. The second is changing any occurrence of the number nine to some other number.

Any time you want to print more than 80 characters (which is the same as 480 dots) on one line, you need to reserve the extra room by putting the WIDTH statement:

```
WIDTH LPRINT 255
```

in one of the first lines of the program.

The only problem code for the QX-10 is 9. One way to get around this is to use the ASCII high-order equivalent (137) whenever you would normally use 9.

Sometimes it may be easier to use another low-order value. For example:

```
FOR X=1 TO 10  
IF X=9 THEN X=10
```

When DATA numbers include 9, you can sometimes simply double each of them or change each 9 to 8 or 11. The best number to substitute for 9 in pin patterns is usually 11.



## Appendix G

### Mixing Print Modes

One of the most pleasing aspects of your FX printer is its wide variety of print modes. By mixing modes as shown in Table G-1, you can print characters in 128 different type styles. The details are in Chapter 5; a short summary is provided here.

*Table G-1, Arriving at 128 type styles.*

<b>4 type modes</b>	<b>2 strike modes</b>	<b>3 combining modes</b>	<b>2 script modes</b> <small>(Double-Strike only)</small>
Elite or Emphasized Pica or Compressed or Pica	Single-Strike or Double-Strike	Expanded (E) and/or Italics (I) and/or Underline (U)	Superscript or Subscript
4 pitches  = 4	x 2 strikes  = 8	x 8 combinations E,I,U,EI,EU,IU, EIU (all) or none  = 64	+ 2 Script Modes x 32 Double-Strike combinations  = 64 64 + 64 = 128

### Methods for Mixing

The Master Select code can be used to select 16 popular print modes. The format is

`CHR$(27)!"CHR$(n)`

where n ranges from 0 to 255.

By using the character form of some of the numbers, you can shorten the command string. Table G-2 shows some convenient characters to be used for the various combinations. You can find the Master Select code for any valid combination of pitch and weight by reading across in the row for the pitch you have selected and down in the column for the weight you want. Where the two intersect you will find the ASCII symbol to use in the simplified format. For example, to combine Compressed with Double-Strike, use LPRINT CHR\$(27) "IT". N/A indicates that the two modes cannot be combined.

*Table G-2. Master Select quick reference chart*

		WEIGHT			
PITCH	Single Strike	Emphasized	Double Strike	Double Strike Emphasized	
Pica	@	H	P	X	
Elite	A	N/A	Q	N/A	
Compressed	D	N/A	T	N/A	
Expanded		*	O	8	
Pica	b				
Expanded		N/A	I	N/A	
Expanded					
Compressed	\$	N/A	4	N/A	

The rest of the 128 unique mode combinations can be achieved by using one of the selections from Table G-2 with the code for one or more of the following modes:

Superscript  
Subscript

Italic  
Underline

Only two constraints must be observed when combining these four modes with the others: 1) the two script modes cannot be used at the same time; 2) the script modes are always printed in Double-Strike. Other than that, anything goes. The upshot is that 128 unique modes are available on your FX printer. The print sample at the end of Chapter 5 shows the full array.

## Mode Conflicts and Priorities

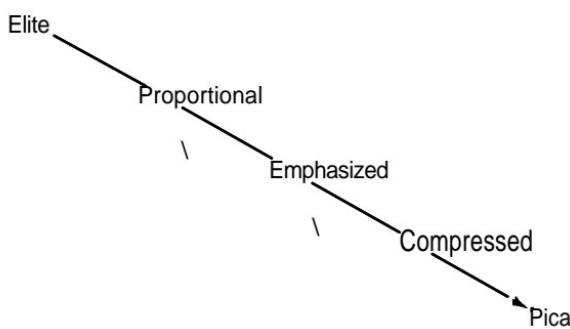
To better understand the way the FX print modes work, consider that each mode except Pica (Pica is the default) has a separate switch that can be turned on and off via software. Once the switch is on,

it stays on until turned off. When two modes that conflict are turned on at the same time, the printer must choose which one to use.

For example, suppose you turn on both Elite and Compressed Pitches. Since the printer can only print one pitch at a time, it must make a choice; in this case, the printer chooses Elite. The Compressed switch, however, is still on even though it doesn't show on your print-out. When the Elite switch is turned off, the Compressed switch will take charge-unless some other mode that has priority over Compressed Mode is active.

Table G-3 shows the internal priority list maintained by the printer.

*Table G-3. Mode priorities*



## **Summary Notes:**

- (1) Pica is the default pitch when Elite and Compressed are turned off.
- (2) When two modes conflict, the one of lesser priority is masked (not cancelled). For example, Compressed and Emphasized cannot be printed at the same time. The chart shows that when both are active, printing is in Emphasized. When Emphasized is cancelled, printing is in Compressed.
- (3) Italic, Underline, and Expanded Modes combine with all the above print modes.
- (4) Proportional characters are always printed in Emphasized.
- (5) Script characters are always printed in Double-Strike.



## Appendix H

# Customizing the FX

You can adapt your FX to fit a variety of needs. You can alter the print capability both by hardware switches that change default conditions and by software codes that activate or deactivate different print modes. In this Appendix we show you a few typical applications and a few adjustments that you may want to make to your printer.

### **Spread-Sheet Programs**

Three changes in the standard configuration of the printer may be of some use to those who make heavy use of spread-sheet programs. Changing switch 1-2 to ON will print all zeros with slashes, making it easy to distinguish between zeros and ohs. Switch 1-4 ON makes the 2K buffer available so that you can work with the computer while the sheet finishes printing. Also, Switch 1-1 ON changes the power-up pitch to Compressed so that you can squeeze more characters into a line.

For software that allows you to insert printer codes during the set-up or operation of the program, see the Quick Reference card for the appropriate codes.

### **Word Processing**

If your FX is used primarily for word processing, you will need to do little more than install the printer according to the instructions for your word processing program. Since most of these programs have their own page formatting controls, leave switch 2-3 (automatic skip-over-perforation) OFF.

If you want to use Emphasized Mode (See Chapter 4) to enhance your printing all the time, you can activate it with DIP switch 1-5.

Keep in mind that this puts extra wear on your ribbon and slows your printing speed.

A few word processing programs support the FX's Proportional Mode. Since there is no DIP switch for this mode, consult your program's manual for instructions on activating Proportional printing. If you wish to use right-justification with Proportional, be sure that your program can do so.

Another option-for those who use foreign characters in their correspondence-is to select the appropriate country with switches **1-6**, 1-7, and **1-8**. Eight of the 9 countries can be selected (all except Japan) according to the chart in Appendix E. This will work as long as your word processor can send out the required codes. See Chapter 6.

For software that allows you to insert printer codes during **the set-up** or operation of the program, see the Quick Reference card for **the appropriate codes**.

## **BASIC Program Listings**

Set switch 1-2 ON to print all zeros with slashes. Set switch 2-3 ON or use CHR\$(27)"N"CHR\$(n) to activate the skip-over-perforation feature.

## **Quiet Printing**

The protective lid dampens the noise output. The Half-Speed Mode, activated with CHR\$(27)"s1", also cuts down on the noise level. And for those late night sessions, you may **want to** turn the beeper off by turning switch 2-2 OFF.

## **Graphics and User-Defined Characters**

Set switch 1-4 OFF to enable you to define characters.

## Appendix I

### Printer Maintenance

#### Always

Always keep your printer in a safe and clean location. Keep it away from:

Dust and grease

Heaters and furnaces. Safe temperature range is 5°C (41°F) to 35°C(95°F)

Base unit for cordless telephone systems

Large electrical machines

Crowded areas (the paper needs room to flow freely)

Leaky ceilings

Rambunctious children or pets.

#### Now and Then

Clean particles and dust from the printer every so often with a soft cloth or brush. Use a mild cleanser for the outside framework and, after removing the ribbon cartridge, denatured alcohol for the inside.

The ribbon cartridge prints about 3 million characters. See your Epson dealer for replacements.

#### Rarely

Once in a great while your printer should be lubricated. Epson recommends two lubricants: O-2 (Epson Part No. B710200001) and G-2 (Epson Part No. B70020001). Every 6 months or one million lines, use

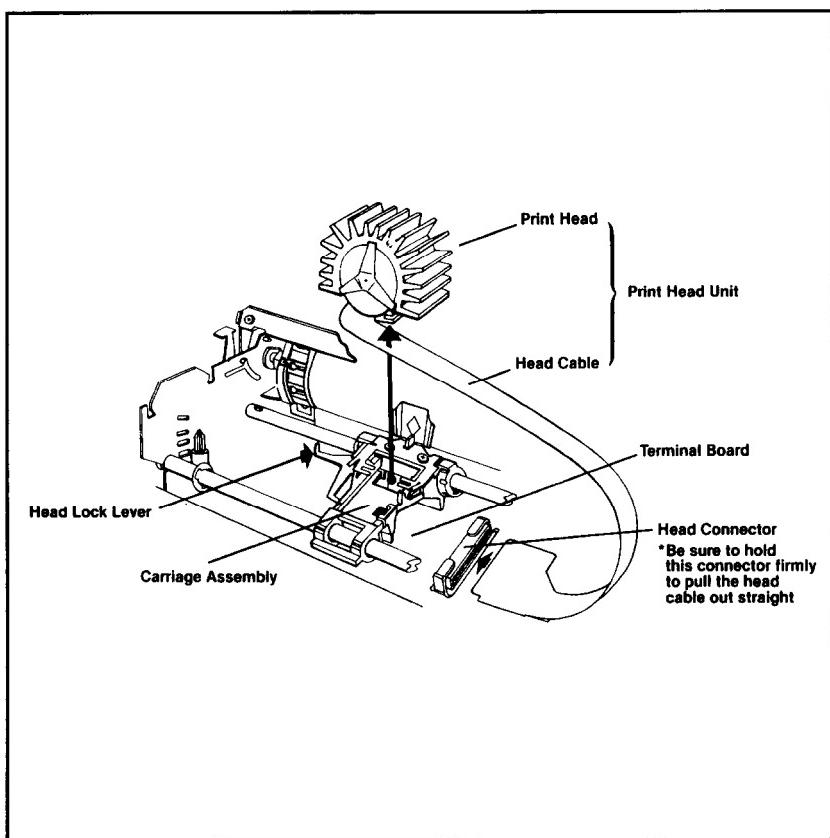
O-2 lubricant on the shafts and platen bearings, wiping off excess with cloth. Use G-2 sparingly on ribbon feed, line feed, and carriage return drive gears, every five million lines.

## Changing the Print Head

The expected life of an FX print head is about 100,000,000 characters (assuming an average of 14 dots per character). See your Epson dealer for FX print head replacements.

### To remove the old print head:

If you have been printing, turn the printer OFF for about 15 minutes to allow the print head to cool. Next, remove the protective lid and ribbon cartridge. Flip the head lock lever shown in Figure I-1 toward the back of the printer.



*Figure I-1. Print head replacement*

Now pull the cable from the connector block. Hold the block firmly because it has to stay put. Pull the print head straight up and off.

### **To install the new print head:**

Place the new print head onto the head mount and flip the locking lever back toward the front of the printer. Connect the cable to the block. That's all there is to it!



## Appendix J

### Technical Specifications

#### Printing

Printing method ..... Impact dot matrix  
Printing speed ..... **160** characters per second  
Paper feed speed ..... Approximately 150 ms/line (at 1/6 inch/line)  
Printing direction ..... Bidirectional, logic seeking  
Unidirectional (left to right) in Graphics Mode  
Character set ..... 96 Roman characters  
96 Italic characters  
32 special international characters  
(8 international character sets)

#### Character sizes:

Mode	Width (mm)	Height (mm)
Pica	2.1	3.1
Pica Emphasized	2.1	3.1
Pica Expanded	4.2	3.1
Elite	1.4	3.1
Elite Expanded	2.8	3.1
Compressed Pica	1.05	3.1
Compressed Expanded	2.1	3.1
Super/Subscript		1.6

Line spacing ..... Default is 1/6 inch. Programmable in increments of 1/72 inch and 1/216 inch

### **Column width:**

	Maximum characters per line	
	FX-80	FX-100
Pica	80	136
Pica Expanded	40	68
Elite	96	163
Elite Expanded	48	81
Compressed	132*	233
Compressed Expanded	68	116

\*137 if right margin is changed (See Chapter 9).

## **Paper**

### **FX-80**

#### **Paper width**

Pin-feed.....	9.5" to 10"	Adjustable sprocket pin-feed
	4" to 9"	Tractor feed with optional tractor unit
Cut Sheet .....	7.25" to 8.5"	Friction Feed
Roll Paper .....	8.5"	Friction Feed with optional roll paper holder

### **FX-100**

#### **Paper width**

Pin-feed Paper .....	4" to 16"	Tractor feed
Cut Sheet .....	7.25" to 8.5"	Friction feed
Number of copies .....	One original plus two carbon copies (total thickness not to exceed 0.3 mm (0.012"))	

## **Printer**

Ribbon .....	Cartridge ribbon, black
Ribbon life expectancy....	3,000,000 characters
M T B F .....	5,000,000 lines (excluding print-head life)
Print head life .....	100,000,000 characters

## **Dimensions and weight**

	<b>FX-80</b>	<b>FX-100</b>
Height .....	100 mm	150 mm
Width (without paper feed knob) .....	420 mm	594 mm
Depth .....	347 mm	354 mm
Weight .....	7.5 kg	10.5 kg
Power .....	120 AC ± 10%	
Power capacity .....	70 volt-amperes maximum	
Frequency .....	49.5 to 60.5 Hz	

## **Environment**

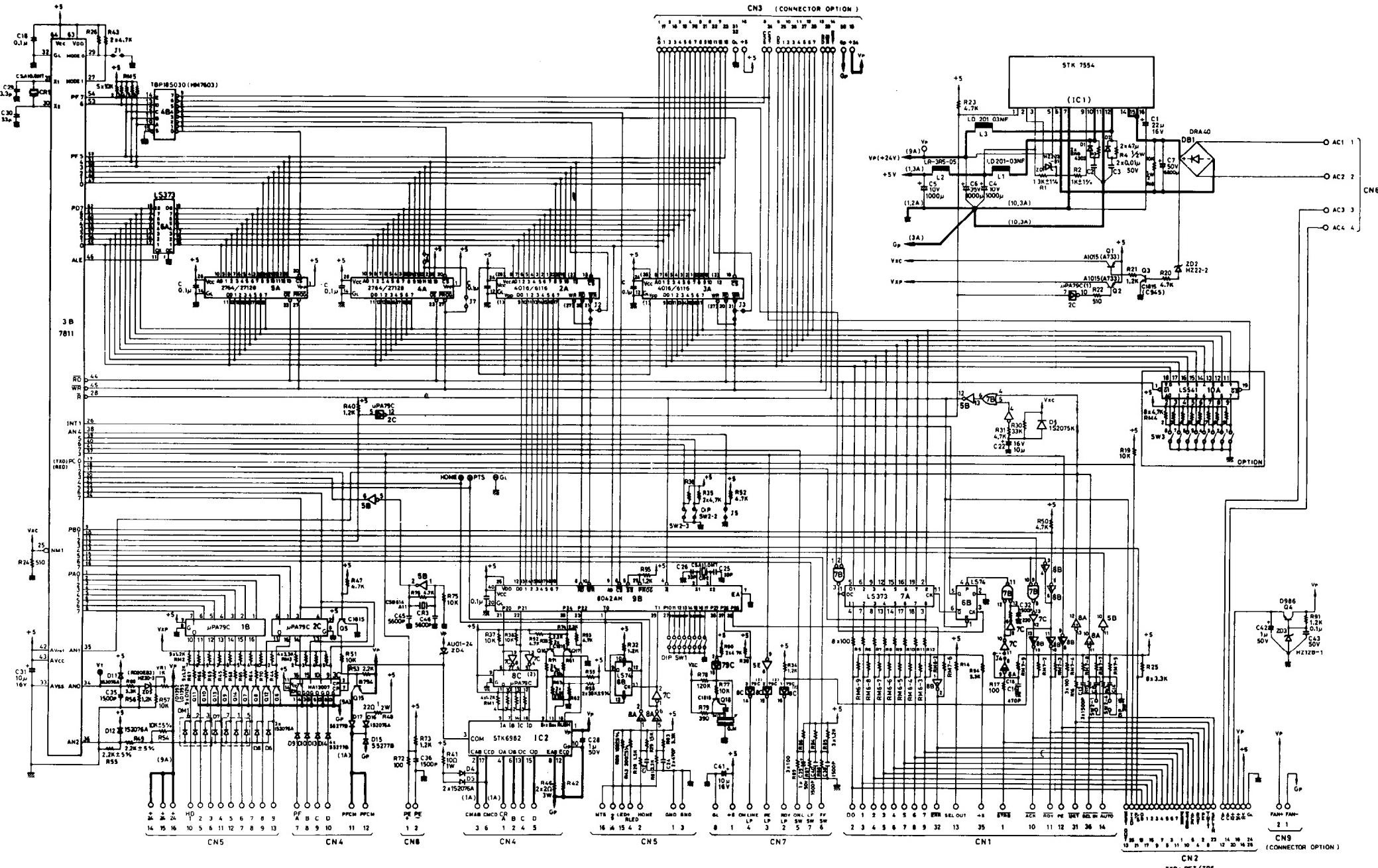
Temperature .....	Operating 5°C to 35°C (41°F to 95°F) Storage — 30°C to 70°C (— 22°F to 158°F)
Humidity .....	Operating 10% to 80% (no condensation) Storage 5% to 85% (no condensation)
Shock .....	Operating 1 G (less than 1 millisecond) Storage 2 G (less than 1 millisecond)
Vibration .....	Operating 0.25 G, 55Hz (maximum) Storage 0.50 G, 55Hz (maximum)
Insulation resistance .....	10 megaohms between AC power line and chassis
Dielectric strength .....	No trouble when 1 kilovolt (R.M.S.) 50 or 60 Hz is applied for more than 1 minute between AC power line and chassis

## **Interface**

Interface .....	Centronics® compatible, 8-bit parallel (compatible with Epson MX series)
Synchronization .....	By externally supplied <u>STROBE</u> pulses
Handshaking .....	By ACKNLG or BUSY signals
Logic level .....	Input data and all interface control signals are compatible with the TTL level



# Schematic



EPSON FX 2839 2-3

FMBD BOARD UNIT NO. Y440205000

## Appendix K

### The Parallel Interface

The FX printer uses a parallel interface to communicate with the computer; this appendix describes it.

Connector pin assignments and a description of respective interface signals are shown in Table K-1.

*Table K-1. Pins and signals*

Signal Pin	Return Pin	Signal	Direction	Description
1	19	STROBE	IN	<u>STROBE</u> pulse to read data in. Pulse width must be more than 0.5 microseconds at the receiving terminal.
2	20	DATA 1	IN	These signals represent information of
3	21	DATA 2	IN	the 1st to 8th bits of parallel data,
4	22	DATA 3	IN	respectively Each signal is at HIGH
5	23	DATA 4	IN	level when data is logical 1 and LOW
6	24	DATA 5	IN	when it is logical 0.
7	25	DATA 6	IN	
8	26	DATA 7	IN	
9	27	DATA 8	IN	
10	28	ACKNLG	OUT	Approximately, 12-microsecond pulse. LOW indicates that data has been received and that the printer is ready to accept more data.
11	29	BUSY	OUT	A HIGH signal indicates that the printer cannot receive data. The signal goes HIGH in the following cases: 1) During data entry 2) During printing. 3) When Off-Line. 4) During printer-error state.
12	30	PE	OUT	A HIGH signal indicates that the printer is out of paper.

**Table K-1, continued**

Signal	Return	Signal	Direction	Description
13	—	—	—	Pulled up to + 5 volts through 3.3K ohm resistance.
14	—	AUTO FEED XT	IN	When this signal is LOW, the paper is automatically fed 1 line after printing. (The signal level can be fixed to this by setting DIP switch 2-4 to ON.)
15	—	N C	—	Unused.
16	—	OV	—	Logic ground level.
17	—	CHASSIS GND	—	Printer's chassis ground, which is isolated from the logic ground.
18	—	N C	—	Unused.
19 - 30	—	GND	—	Twisted-pair return signal ground level.
31	—	INIT	IN	When this level becomes LOW, the printer controller is reset to its power-up state and the print buffer is cleared. This level is usually High; its pulse width must be more than 50 microseconds at the receiving terminal.
32	—	ERROR	OUT	This level becomes LOW when the printer is in: 1) Paper-end state. 2) Off-line. 3) Error state.
33	—	GND	—	Same as for Pins 19 - 30.
34	—	NC	—	Unused.
35	—	—	—	Pulled up to + 5V through 3.3K ohm resistance.
36	—	SLCT IN	IN	Data entry to the printer is possible only when this level is LOW; DIP switch 2-1 is set for this at the factory

## Notes:

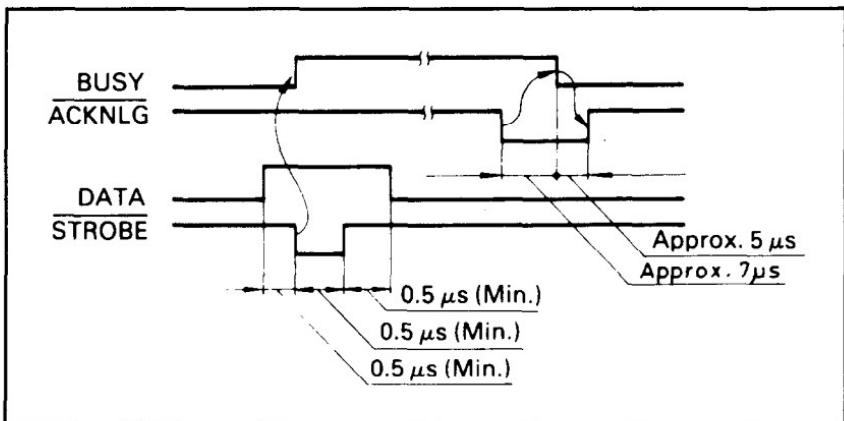
1. The column heading "Direction" refers to the direction of signal flow as viewed from the printer.
2. "Return" denotes the twisted-pair return, to be connected at signal ground level. For the interface wiring, be sure to use a twisted-pair cable for each signal and to complete the connection on the return side. To prevent noise, these cables should be shielded and connected to the chassis of the host computer or the printer.
3. All interface conditions are based on TTL level. Both the rise and the fall times of each signal must be less than 0.2 microseconds.

4. Data transfer must be carried out by observing the ACKNLG or BUSY signal. (Data transfer to this printer can be carried out only after receipt of the ACKNLG signal or when the level of the BUSY signal is LOW.)
5. Under normal conditions, printer cable pins 11, 12, and 32 are activated when the paper-out condition is detected. The ESCape"8" code disables pins 11 and 32, but not pin 12. Those computers that monitor pin 12 halt printing when the paper is out, making ESCape"8" ineffective.

## Data Transfer Sequence

### Interface timing

Figure K-1 shows the timing for the parallel interface.



*Figure K-1. Parallel interface timing*

### Signal relationships

Table K-2 shows the way data entry is handled in the On-Line and Off-Line states by showing the relationships between seven signal sets.

*Table K-2. Signal interrelations*

On-Line	SLCT IN	DC1/DC3	ERROR	BUSY	ACKNLG	DATA ENTRY
OFF	HIGH/LOW	DC1/DC3	LOW	HIGH	Not generated	Disabled
ON	HIGH	DC1	HIGH	LOW/HIGH	Generated after data entry	Enabled (normal entry)
ON		DC3	HIGH	same	same	Enabled*
ON	LOW	DC1//DC3	HIGH	same	same	Enabled (normal entry)

\*Data entry will be acknowledged, but the input data will be lost until DC1 is input.

Note: \_\_\_\_\_ status is assumed to result only in Off-Line state, and the \_\_\_\_\_ status does not always mean SLCT IN.

# INDEX

Note: Refer to Table of Contents and List of Figures for specific programs. Also, the chapter summaries are not indexed.

## A

Accessories, 16  
American Standard Code for Information Interchange.  
    *See ASCII*  
Apostrophe. *See REMarks*  
Apple II computers, 38, 40, 312-313  
    *See also Seven-bit systems*  
Arrays, 173-176, 189-193  
    DIMensioning, 176  
Arrow. *See Exponent character*  
ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange), 38, 40-42  
    codes listed for all characters, 253-270  
    *See also International character set*  
Attribute byte. *See User-defined characters*  
Automatic test. *See Test*

## B

↳ *See Blank space*  
Backspace, 81-83  
    CHRS(8) produces it.  
Bail. *See Paper bail*  
Barchart, 227-231  
BASIC program listings, 322  
Beeper, 41-42, 304-305  
    CHRS(7) sounds beeper.  
Bidirectional printing. *See Unidirectional Mode*  
Bit, high order, 310-311  
    ESCape ">" turns it on; ESCape "=" turns it off; ESCape "#" accepts eighth bit as is from the computer.  
    *See also even-bit systems*  
Blank space, v  
Board, serial and interface. *See Interface*  
Bold printing. *See Double-Strike; Emphasized; Proportional*  
Bracket. *See Exponent character*  
Buffer. *See Printer buffer*  
Business applications, 227-238  
Byte, Attribute. *See User-defined characters*

# C

Cable, 16, 35  
CANcel, 46  
Caret symbol. *See* Exponent character  
Carriage return, 23, 41  
    CHR\$(13) produces it.  
    *See also* Line feed  
Centronics. *See* Interface  
Channels. *See* Tabs, vertical  
Character fonts, shown, 253-270  
    *See also* User-defined characters  
Character size, 256-270, 327  
    *See also* specific pitches by name  
Character string function. *See* CHR\$ function  
CHR\$ function, 39  
    *See also* ASCII codes  
CHR\$(7). Sounds beeper. *See* Beeper  
CHR\$(8). Produces backspace. *See* Backspace  
CHR\$(9). Activates a horizontal tab. *See* Tabs  
CHR\$(10). Produces a line feed. *See* Line feed  
CHR\$(11). Activates a vertical tab. *See* Tabs  
CHR\$(12). Produces a form feed. *See* Form feed  
CHR\$(13). Produces a carriage return. *See* Carriage return  
CHR\$(14). Turns One-Line Expanded Mode on. *See* Expanded Mode  
CHR\$(15). Turns Compressed Mode on. *See* Compressed Mode  
CHR\$(18). Turns Compressed Mode off. *See* Compressed Mode  
CHR\$(20). Turns One-Line Expanded Mode off. *See* Expanded Mode  
CHR\$(27). ESCape code. *See* ESCape  
CHR\$(127). Deletes. *See* DElete  
CHR\$(137). Alternate code to activate horizontal tab. *See* Tabs  
Circle plotting, 177-184  
Circuit board. *See* Interface  
Codes. *See* ASCII codes; Control codes; Escape; CHR\$ function  
Coding solutions, 306-309  
Columns  
    for ROM character set, 50-52  
    for User-defined characters, 201-205, 216, 222-223  
Comparison table for control codes, 287-294  
Compressed Mode, 53-55  
    CHR\$(15) turns it on; CHR\$(18) turns it off.  
    DIP switch adjustment for, 54-55  
    margin settings in, 117  
Concept. *See* Corvus  
Continuous-feed paper: *See* Paper

Control codes, 41-42  
Hex dumping and. *See* Hex dumping  
for FX compared with those for MX and RX, 287-294  
listed by function, 283-286  
listed by number, 271-281  
*See also* specific modes and functions  
Control panel, 35  
Conventions used in this manual, iii-vi  
Core sets of user-defined characters, 223-226  
Corvus Concept computers, 151  
Covers. *See* lids

## D

DATA statements, 154-156, 166-167  
Data transfer sequence, 335-336  
DEC microcomputers, 151  
Default settings, 44, 295-296  
DEFINT, 176  
DELETE, 46  
  CHRS(127) deletes.  
Density. *See* Graphics Mode  
Designing graphics. *See* Graphics  
DIMensioning. *See* Arrays  
Dimensions of printer, 329  
DIP switches, 20-23, 296-299  
Dot matrix, 49-52  
  in dot graphics, 131-132  
  patterns for character fonts, 49-52, 253-270  
Double-Strike Mode, 61-62, 63  
  ESCape "G" turns it on; ESCape "H" turns it off.  
Downloading. *See* User-defined characters  
Dress-up Modes. *See* Underline Mode; Script Mode; Italic Mode  
Driver. *See* Printer driver  
Dumping, hex. *See* Hex dumping

## E

Elite Mode, 52-53  
  ESCape "M" turns it on; ESCape "P" turns it off.  
Emphasized Mode, 62-64  
  ESCape "E" turns it on; ESCape "F" turns it off.  
END, v  
Environment, specifications for, 329  
Epson computers. *See* HX-20; QX-10

ESCape = CHR\$(27), 42-43  
format for commands, iv-v, 46-47, 57-58  
listed by function, 283-286  
listed by number, 271-281  
*See also* specific modes or functions

ESCape "!". Master Select. See Master Select

ESCape "#". Accepts eighth bit as is from computer. See Bit, high order

ESCape "%" CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>). Selects a character set. See User-defined characters

ESCape "&" CHR\$(n) "s<sub>1</sub>s<sub>2</sub>". Selects characters to be defined. See User-defined characters

ESCape "\*" CHR\$(m)CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>). Selects Graphics Mode, density m. See Graphics Mode

ESCape "-0". Turns Underline Mode off. See Underline Mode

ESCape "-1". Turns Underline Mode on. See Underline Mode

ESCape "/\" CHR\$(n). Selects channel n. See Tabs, vertical

ESCape "0". Sets line spacing to 1/8". See Line spacing

ESCape "1". Sets line spacing to 7/72". See Line spacing

ESCape "2". Sets line spacing to 1/6". See Line spacing

ESCape "3" CHR\$(n). Sets line spacing to n/216". See Line spacing

ESCape "4". Turns Italic Mode on. See Italic Mode

ESCape "5". Turns Italic Mode off. See Italic Mode

ESCape "6". Enables printing of control codes 128-159. See User-defined characters

ESCape "7". Returns codes 128-159 to control codes. See User-defined characters

ESCape "8". Turns paper-out sensor off. See Paper-out sensor

ESCape "9". Turns paper-out sensor on. See Paper-out sensor

ESCape ":" CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>3</sub>). Copies ROM characters to the RAM area. See User-defined characters

ESCape "<". Turns on One-line Unidirectional Mode. See Unidirectional Mode

ESCape "= ". Sets high-order bit off. See Bit, high order

ESCape "> ". Sets high-order bit on. See bit, high order

ESCape "?s" CHR\$(n). Reassigns an alternate graphics code, s. See Graphics; Graphics Mode.

ESCape "@". Reset Code. See Reset Code

ESCape "A" CHR\$(n). Sets line spacing to n/72". See Line spacing

ESCape "B" CHR\$(n) ... CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(0). Sets vertical tabs. See Tabs, vertical

ESCape "C" CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n). Sets the form length in inches. See Forms

ESCape "C" CHR\$(n). Sets the form length in lines. See Forms

ESCape "D" CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>) ... CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)CHR\$(0). Sets horizontal tabs. See Tabs, horizontal

ESCape "E". Turns Emphasized Mode on. See Emphasized Mode

ESCape "F". Turns Emphasized Mode off. See Emphasized Mode

ESCape "G". Turns Double-Strike Mode on. See Double-Strike Mode

ESCape "H". Turns Double-Strike Mode off. See Double-Strike Mode

ESCape "I0". Returns codes 0-31 to control codes. See User-defined characters.

ESCape "I1". Enables printing of control codes 0-31. See User-defined characters.

ESCape "J" CHR\$(n). Produces an immediate one-time line feed of n/216-inch without a carriage return. See Line feed

ESCape "K" CHR\$(n,)CHR\$(n,). Turns Single-Density Graphics Mode on. See Graphics Mode

ESCape "L" CHR\$(n,)CHR\$(n,). Turns Low-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode on. See Graphics Mode

ESCape "M". Turns Elite Mode on. See Elite Mode

ESCape "N" CHR\$(n). Sets skip-over-perforation. See Skip-over-perforation

ESCape "O". Turns skip-over-perforation off. See Skip-over-perforation

ESCape "P". Turns Elite Mode off. See Elite Mode

ESCape "Q" CHR\$(n). Sets the right margin. See Margins

ESCape "R" CHR\$(n). Selects an international character set. See International character set

ESCape "S0". Turns Superscript Mode on. See Script Mode

ESCape "S1". Turns Subscript Mode on. See Script Mode

ESCape "T". Turns either Script Mode off. See Script Mode

ESCape "U0". Turns Continuous Unidirectional Mode off. See Unidirectional Mode

ESCape "U1". Turns Continuous Unidirectional Mode on. See Unidirectional Mode

ESCape "W0". Turns Expanded Mode off. See Expanded Mode

ESCape "W1". Turns Continuous Expanded Mode on. See Expanded Mode

ESCape "Y" CHR\$(n,)CHR\$(n,). Turns High-Speed Double-Density Graphics Mode on. See Graphics Mode

ESCape "Z" CHR\$(n,)CHR\$(n,). Turns Quadruple-Density Graphics Mode on. See Graphics Mode

ESCape "^" CHR\$(d)CHR\$(n,)CHR\$(n,). Enters Nine-Pin Graphics Mode. See Graphics Mode.

ESCape "b" CHR\$(N)CHR\$(n,...CHR\$(n,)CHR\$(0). Stores channels of vertical tab stops. See Tabs, vertical

ESCape "i0". Turns Immediate-Print Mode off. See Immediate-Print Mode.

ESCape "i1". Turns Immediate-Print Mode on. See Immediate-Print Mode.

ESCape "j" CHR\$(n). Turns reverse feed on. See Line feed

ESCape "l" CHR\$(n). Sets left margin. See Margins

ESCape "p0". Turns Proportional Mode off. See Proportional Mode.

ESCape "p1". Turns Proportional Mode on. See Proportional Mode.

ESCape "so". Returns to normal after Half-Speed Mode. See Half-Speed Mode

ESCape "s1". Turns Half-Speed Mode on. See Half-Speed Mode

Expanded Mode, 56-59

    ESCape "W1" turns Continuous Expanded Mode on; ESCape "WO" turns it off. CHR\$(14) turns one-line Expanded Mode on; CHRS(20) turns it off.

    compared with Emphasized Mode, 63

Exponent character, vi

## F

Firing of pins. *See* pins

FF. *See* Form feed

Foreign language characters. *See* International character set

Form feed, 103-105

  CHR\$(12) produces one.

  button, 35

*See also* Top of form

Forms

  length of, 103-107

    ESCape "C" CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n) sets length to n inches; ESCape  
    "C" CHR\$(n) sets to n lines; ESCape "@" resets to default and sets  
    top of form to current line.

  non-standard, 105-107

*See also* Form feed; Top of form

Friction-control lever, 26, 28, 30

Friction feed, 28-29

Function switches. *See* DIP switches

## G

Graphics

  densities in. *See* Graphics Mode

  designing, 154-155, 159-171, 189-196

  line, 225-226

  plotter, 173-187

  problem codes with, 144-145

  Reset Code with, 144

  troubleshooting, 302-303

  with seven-bit systems, 311

  width of, 134-135, 193

*See also* Graphics Mode

Graphics Mode, 134-135

  density command, 145, 149-150

    ESCape "\*" CHR\$(m)CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n<sub>z</sub>) selects one of six graphics  
    densities. *See also* densities below

  Single-Density, 134-135, 145-146

    ESCape "\*" CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n<sub>z</sub>) or ESCape "K"  
    CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n<sub>z</sub>) turns Single-Density Graphics on.

  Double-Density, 146-148

    ESCape "\*" CHR\$(1)CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n<sub>z</sub>) or ESCape "L"  
    CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n<sub>z</sub>) turns Low-Speed on.

    ESCape "\*" CHR\$(2)CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n<sub>z</sub>) or ESCape "Y"  
    CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n<sub>z</sub>) turns High-Speed on.

  Quadruple-Density, 149

    ESCape "\*" CHR\$(3)CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n<sub>z</sub>) or ESCape "Z"  
    CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n<sub>z</sub>) turns Quadruple-Density on.

Nine-Pin, 152-154  
  Escape "^" CHR\$(d)CHR\$(n,)CHR\$(n,) enters Nine-Pin Graphics Mode.  
reassigning code, 150-152  
  Escape "?s" CHR\$(n) reassigns an alternate code to Graphics Mode n.  
summary table, 151  
Grid. *See* dot matrix

## H

Half-Speed Mode, 89, 322  
  ESCape "s1" turns it on; ESCape "s0" returns it to normal.  
Head. *See* Print head  
Hex dumping, 305-306  
Humidity, 329  
Horizontal tabs. *See* Tabs, horizontal  
HX-20 and printer commands, 38, 40

## I

IBM Personal Computer, 38, 40, 313-314  
Immediate-Print Mode, 89-90  
  ESCape "i1" turns it on; ESCape "i0" turns it off.  
Installation. *See* Set-up operations  
Interface, 329, 333-336  
Intermediate positions. *See* columns  
International characters, 85-88, 255-258, 263-265  
  A DIP switch setting and/or ESCape "R" CHR\$(n) selects one.  
  *See also* ASCII codes  
Italic Mode, 72-73  
  ESCape "4" turns it on; ESCape "5" turns it off.

## K

Knob. *See* Manual-feed knob

## L

Labels, 101  
Left bracket. *See* Exponent character  
Left margin. *See* Margins  
Length of forms. *See* Forms  
Lever. *See* Friction-control; Paper-thickness; Pin-feed  
LF. *See* Line feed  
Lids, removal and replacement, 18-19

Line feed, 98-101  
  CHR\$(10) produces it.  
button, 35-36  
computer interface and. *See* Interface  
DIP switch for, 23  
one-time immediate, 99-100  
  ESCape "J"CHR\$(n) produces it.  
reverse, 99, 101  
  ESCape "j"CHR\$(n) produces it.  
Line spacing, 93-98  
  ESCape "A"CHR\$(n) sets to n/72"; ESCape "0" sets at 1/8";  
  ESCape "1" sets at 7/72"; ESCape "2" sets at 1/6" (default);  
  ESCape "3"CHR\$(n) sets at n/216".  
in graphics, 133-134, 140-141, 154  
form feed and, 107  
summary table for, 102  
  *See also* Skip-over-perforation; Top of form; Graphics  
LIST commands, 37-38  
Location of printer, 16-17  
LPRINT. *See* PRINT  
Lubrication, 323-324

## M

Mailing labels. *See* Labels  
Maintenance, 323-324  
Manual-feed knob, 19-20  
Margins, 113-118  
  effect of pitch on, 114-116  
  with horizontal tab setting, 118, 122  
  left, 113-116, 118  
    ESCape "l"CHR\$(n) sets left margin.  
  right, 116-118  
    ESCape "Q"CHR\$(n) sets right margin.  
    printing width in Compressed and, 117  
Master Select, 73-78  
  Quick reference chart for, 76, 318  
Mathematical symbols, 81-82  
Matrix. *See* Dot matrix  
Memory. *See* RAM; ROM  
Microscopic spacing. *See* Line spacing  
Modes  
  mixing, 56-59, 65-66, 317-319  
  priorities, 55-56, 58-59, 66, 318-319  
  summary table of, 67, 317  
    *See also* specific modes by name  
Monospacing. *See* Proportional Mode

## N

NEC, 151

Nine-pin graphics. *See* Graphics Mode

Noise reduction. *See* Half-Speed Mode

## O

Off sets, 82-83

ON LINE light and button, 35

Overstrikes, 81-82

## P

Page, top of. *See* Top of form

Paper

bail, 15, 24, 26, 29

loading, 24-32, 304

length. *See* Forms

separator, 17-18

thickness adjustment, 32, 34

types of, 16, 24, 328

Paper-out sensor, 110, 304

ESCape "9" turns it on; ESCape "8" turns it off.

DIP switch control of, 297-298

Parallel interface. *See* Interface

Pattern design. *See* Graphics

PEEK. *See* POKEing codes

Perforation. *See* Skip-over-perforation; Top of form

Pica Mode, 52-53

Pin feed paper. *See* paper

Pin feeder and pin-feed lever, 26-28, 30, 32

Pins

firing, 135-141

numbering of, 135-137

Pitch, summary table of, 60

*See also* specific pitches by name

Platen, 28, 29, 30

Plotting. *See* Graphics, plotter

POKEing codes, 307-308

Preparation. *See* Set-up operations

PRINT command, iv, 39-41

Print head  
and dot graphics, 132-133  
and dot matrix printing, 50  
life of, 16, 324, 328  
replacement, 324-325  
Print modes. *See Modes*  
Print pitch summary table, 60  
*See also* specific pitches by name  
Print quality, 61-66  
Print speed. *See Half-Speed Mode*  
Print type chart, 78  
Print width. *See specific pitches by name; Width*  
Printer buffer, 44  
Printer driver for problem codes, 308-309  
Priorities. *See Modes.*  
Proportional Mode, 64-65  
  ESCape “p1” turns it on; ESCape “p0” turns it off.  
  attribute byte with, 203-204, 206  
Protective lids. *See lids*

## Q

Quadruple-Density. *See Graphics Mode*  
Quiet printing. *See Half-Speed Mode*  
QX-10, 38, 40, 314-315

## R

RAM (Random Access Memory), 2  
  DIP switch control of, 23, 200  
  *See also* Printer buffer; User-defined characters  
READ statement. *See DATA statement*  
REMARKs in program lines, v-vi  
Reset Code, 45  
Resetting. *See Reset Code*  
RESTORE statement, 155-156  
Reverse line feed. *See Line feed*  
Ribbon  
  installation and replacement, 23-25  
  life, 16, 65, 328  
Right margin. *See Margins*  
Roll paper. *See Paper*  
ROM (Read Only Memory), 2  
Rows. *See Columns*

## S

Schematic, 331  
Script Mode, 71-72  
  ESCape "S0" turns Superscript Mode on. ESCape "S1" turns Subscript Mode on. ESCape "T" turns either Script Mode off.  
Self test for printer. *See Test*  
Semicolons, iv, 45  
Sensor. *See Paper-out sensor*  
Separator, paper. *See paper*  
Serial board. *See Interface*  
Set-up operations for printer, 13-36  
Seven-bit systems, 309-31  
  graphics with, 311  
  limitations of, 132, 137, 309-310  
  test for computer's type, 309  
  user-defined characters with, 202, 205, 207, 209  
Single-sheet printing, 109-110  
Skip-over-perforation, 107-109  
  ESCape "N" or DIP switch 2-4 turns it on. ESCape "O" turns it off.  
Space. *See Blank space*.  
Spacing. *See Line spacing; Proportional spacing*  
Special characters, 85  
Specifications. *See Technical specifications*  
Spread-sheet printing, 321  
Statement program, 231-238  
STOP. *See END*  
Subscript. *See Script Mode*  
Superscript. *See Script Mode*  
Switches. *See DIP switches*

## T

Tabs  
  effect of pitch on, 122  
  margin settings with. *See Margins*  
  horizontal, 119-122  
    CHR\$(9) or CHR\$(137) activates.  
    ESCape "D"CHR\$(n1)CHR\$(n2) ... CHR\$(n<sub>i</sub>)CHR\$(0)  
      sets horizontal tabs.  
  vertical, 122-128  
    CHR\$(11) activates. ESCape "B"CHR\$(n1)CHR\$(n2) ...  
    CHR\$(n<sub>i</sub>)CHR\$(0) sets vertical tabs.  
    ESCape "b"CHR\$(N)CHR\$(n<sub>i</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>j</sub>) ... CHR\$(n<sub>i</sub>)CHR\$(1)  
      sets the vertical channel to N. ESCape "/"CHR\$(n) selects  
      channel n.  
      channels, 126-128  
Technical specifications, 327-331

Temperature, 329  
Test  
    automatic, 35-36  
    for seven-bit system, 309  
Top of form, 31-33, 103-104  
    CHR\$(12) sends the paper to top of form. ESCape "C" resets it to current paper position. ESCape "@" resets form length to default and sets top of form to current line.  
    with skip-over-perforation, 109  
    *See also* Reset Code  
Tractor  
    built-in, 24-28  
    cover, 14, 19  
    removable, 14-15, 28-31  
Troubleshooting, 301-315  
TRS-80, 38, 40, 307-309, 313  
Type style chart, 317

## U

Up arrow. *See* Exponent character  
Underline Mode, 70-72  
    ESCAPE "-1" turns underline on; ESCAPE "-0" turns it off.  
Unidirectional Mode, 83-85  
    ESCAPE "U1" activates it; ESCAPE "U0" turns it off.  
    ESCAPE "<" turns it on for one line only.  
User-defined characters, 199-213  
    ESCAPE "&"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>3</sub>) defines characters.  
    ESCAPE ":"CHR\$(n<sub>1</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>2</sub>)CHR\$(n<sub>3</sub>) downloads ROM characters into RAM.  
    attribute byte, 203-205  
    compared to ROM characters, 199  
    control codes as characters, 208-211  
    DIP switch setting for, 200  
    double-high and double-wide, 215-223  
    downloading, 207  
    Reset code with, 207  
    troubleshooting, 303

## V

Vertical tabs. *See* Tabs, vertical

## W

Width

of characters, 256–270

statements, 313–314

Word processing, 36, 321–322

## Z

Zero, slashed, 23

## Control Codes by Function

---

### Print Width Commands

CHR\$(27)"M"	Turns Elite Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"P"	Turns Elite Mode OFF.
CHR\$(15) [^O]	Turns Compressed Mode ON.
CHR\$(18) [^R]	Turns Compressed Mode OFF.
CHR\$(14) [^N]	Turns One-Line Expanded Mode ON.
CHR\$(20) [^T]	Turns One-Line Expanded Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27)"W1"	Turns Continuous Expanded Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"W0"	Turns Expanded Mode OFF.

### Print Quality Commands

CHR\$(27)"E"	Turns Emphasized Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"F"	Turns Emphasized Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27)"G"	Turns Double-Strike Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"H"	Turns Double-Strike Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27)"S0"	Turns Superscript Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"S1"	Turns Subscript Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"T"	Turns either Script Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27)"p1"	Turns Proportional Mode ON. *
CHR\$(27)"p0"	Turns Proportional Mode OFF. *
CHR\$(27)"-1"	Turns Underline Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"-0"	Turns Underline Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27)"4"	Turns italic character set ON.
CHR\$(27)"5"	Turns italic character set OFF.

### Selecting Print Modes

CHR\$(27)"!" CHR\$(n)	Master Print Mode Select (Master Select): n = 0 to 255.
CHR\$(27)"@"	Reset Code.

### Special Printer Features

CHR\$(7) [^G]	Sounds beeper.
CHR\$(8) [^H]	Backspaces.
CHR\$(17)	Enables the printer to receive data (default).
CHR\$(19)	Disables the printer from receiving data.
CHR\$(24)	Cancels the text in the print buffer.
CHR\$(127)	Deletes the most recent text character in the print buffer.
CHR\$(27)">"	Sets the high-order bit ON.
CHR\$(27)"="	Sets the high-order bit OFF.
CHR\$(27)"#"	Accepts the 8th bit "as is" from the computer.
CHR\$(27)"R" CHR\$(n)	Selects the international character set n, where n = 0 - 8.
CHR\$(27)"i1"	Turns Immediate Mode ON. *
CHR\$(27)"i0"	Turns Immediate Mode OFF. *
CHR\$(27)"s1"	Turns Half-Speed Mode ON.*
CHR\$(27)"s0"	Returns to normal speed.*

### Paper Feed Commands

CHR\$(10) [^J]	Produces a line feed.
CHR\$(27)"0"	Sets line spacing to 1/8 inch.
CHR\$(27)"1"	Sets line spacing to 7/72 inch.
CHR\$(27)"2"	Sets line spacing to 1/6 inch (default).
CHR\$(27)"A"CHR\$(n)	Sets line spacing to n/72 inch.
CHR\$(27)"3"CHR\$(n)	Sets line spacing to n/216 inch.
CHR\$(27)"J"CHR\$(n)	Produces an immediate one-time line feed of n/216 inch without a carriage return.
CHR\$(27)"j"CHR\$(n)	Produces an immediate one-time reverse feed of n/216 inch without a carriage return.*

---

### **Forms Control Commands**

CHR\$(12) ["L"]	Produces a form feed.
CHR\$(13)	Produces a carriage return.
CHR\$(27)"8"	Turns the paper-out sensor OFF.
CHR\$(27)"9"	Turns the paper-out sensor ON.
CHR\$(27)"C"CHR\$(n)	Sets the form length in lines: n = 0 - 127.
CHR\$(27)"C"CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n)	Sets the form length in inches: n = 0 - 22.
CHR\$(27)"N"CHR\$(n)	Produces a variable skip-over-perforation. n = 0 - form length or 127.
CHR\$(27)"0"	Turns skip-over-perforation OFF.

### **Formatting Commands**

CHR\$(27)"D"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> ) ... CHR\$(n <sub>k</sub> )CHR\$(0)	Sets the horizontal tab stops at n <sub>1</sub> , n <sub>2</sub> , ..., n <sub>k</sub> , where k < = 32, 0 < n <sub>k</sub> < margin length.
CHR\$(9) or CHR\$(137)	Activates a horizontal tab.
CHR\$(27)"B"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )...CHR\$(n <sub>k</sub> )CHBS\$(0)	Sets the vertical tab stops at n <sub>1</sub> - n <sub>k</sub> , where k < = 16; n <sub>k</sub> = 1 to form length.
CHR\$(27)"b"CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )...CHR\$(n <sub>k</sub> )CHR\$(0)	Stores vertical tab stops in channel n, where n = 0 - 7. Channel 0 is the same as CHR\$(27)"B".*
CHR\$(27)"/"CHR\$(n)	Selects channel n.
CHR\$(11)	Activates a vertical tab.
CHR\$(27)"Q"CHR\$(n)	Sets the right margin at n, where n ranges from 2 - 80 in Pica, 3 - 96 in Elite, and 4 - 137 in Compressed.
CHR\$(27)"l"CHR\$(n)	Sets the left margin at n, where n ranges from 0 - 78 in Pica, 0 - 93 in Elite, and 0 - 133 in Compressed.*
CHR\$(27)"U1"	Turns Continuous Unidirectional Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"U0"	Turns Continuous Unidirectional Mode OFF.
CHR\$(27)"<"	Turns One-Line Unidirectional Mode ON.

### **Graphics Modes**

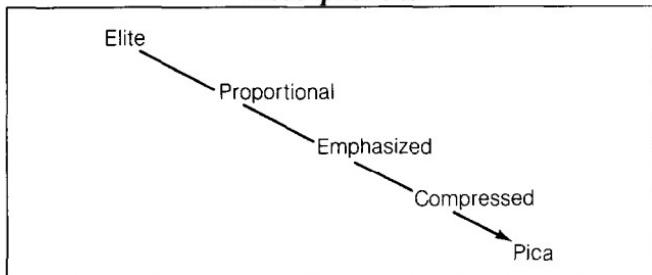
CHR\$(2^X)	Fires pin X when sent as graphics data, where X = 0 - 7.
CHR\$(27)"K"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Turns Single-Density Graphics Mode ON; width = n <sub>1</sub> + 256*n <sub>2</sub>
CHR\$(27)"L"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Turns Double-Density Graphics Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)"Y"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Turns High-Speed Double-Density Graphics ON.
CHR\$(27)"Z"CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Turns Quadruple-Density Graphics Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)**CHR\$(n)CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> );	Selects Graphics Density n, where: 0 = 480 dots per line                  4 = 640 dpl 1 = 960 dpl (same as CHR\$(27)"L") 5 = 576 dpl (1-to-1 ratio) 2 = 960 dpl (same as CHR\$(27)"Y") 6 = 720 dpl 3 = 1920 dpl (same as CHR\$(27)"Z")
CHR\$(27)^"CHR\$(0)CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Turns Single-Density Nine-Pin Graphics Mode ON.
CHR\$(27)^"CHR\$(1)CHR\$(n <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(n <sub>2</sub> );	Turns Double-Density Nine-Pin Graphics Mode ON

CHR\$(27)%"CHR\$(n.)CHR\$(n.)	Selects a character set: n <sub>1</sub> selects ROM (0) or RAM (1); n <sub>2</sub> is 0.
CHR\$(27)“&”CHR\$(n.)CHR\$(c <sub>1</sub> )CHR\$(c <sub>2</sub> )CHR\$(A)CHR\$(d <sub>1</sub> ) ... CHR\$(d <sub>n</sub> )...	Defines characters c <sub>1</sub> to c <sub>n</sub> in RAM area: n is 0. Each character requires an attribute byte (A), followed by 11 data numbers (d <sub>1</sub> to d <sub>n</sub> ).
CHR\$(27)“：“CHR\$(n.)CHR\$(n.)CHR\$(n.)	Copies ROM characters to the user RAM area. All numbers must be 0.
CHR\$(27)“I1”	Enables printing of the symbols that are stored in locations 0 - 31 and that are not used as control codes.
CHR\$(27)“I0”	Disables printing of codes 0 - 31 as characters.
CHR\$(27)“6”	Enables printing of characters stored in locations 128 - 159.
CHR\$(27)“7”	Causes codes 128 - 159 to print as control codes.

\*If your computer cannot generate lower-case letters, use the equivalent decimal values.

Note: For software that allows you to insert printer codes during the set-up or operation of the program, you will usually use the ESCape key instead of CHR\$(27) and omit the quotation marks. If the code does not include CHR\$(27), you will find an alternate version in brackets. This alternate version uses the CONTROL key (indicated by a ^) with a letter. For example, to produce Elite, press ESCape then M; to produce Compressed, press CONTROL and O at the same time.

### ***Mode priorities***



Note: Each mode takes precedence over the modes beneath it

### ***Master Select Quick Reference Chart***

PITCH	WEIGHT			
	Single Strike	Emphasized	Double Strike	Emphasized
Pica	@	H	P	X
Elite	A	N/A	Q	N/A
Compressed	D	N/A	T	N/A
Expanded Pica	b	*	O	8
Expanded Elite	!	N/A	1	N/A
Expanded Compressed	\$	N/A	4	N/A

## ASCII Codes

Dec	Hex	Character or Function	Dec	Hex	Character or Function	Dec	Hex	Character or Function
0	00	none	58	3A	:	116	74	t
1	01	none	59	3B	;	117	75	u
2	02	none	60	3C	<	118	76	v
3	03	none	61	3D	=	119	77	w
4	04	none	62	3E	>	120	78	x
5	05	none	63	3F	?	121	79	y
6	06	none	64	40	@	122	7A	z
7	07	BEL	65	41	A	123	7B	{
8	08	BS	66	42	B	124	7C	:
9	09	HT	67	43	C	125	7D	}
10	0A	LF	68	44	D	126	7E	~
11	0B	VT	69	45	E	127	7F	DEL
12	0C	FF	70	46	F	128	80	none
13	0D	CR	71	47	G	129	81	none
14	0E	SO	72	48	H	130	82	none
15	0F	SI	73	49	I	131	83	none
16	10	none	74	4A	J	132	84	none
17	11	DC1	75	4B	K	133	85	none
18	12	DC2	76	4C	L	134	86	none
19	13	DC3	77	4D	M	135	87	BEL
20	14	DC4	78	4E	N	136	88	BS
21	15	none	79	4F	O	137	89	HT
22	16	none	80	50	P	138	8A	LF
23	17	none	81	51	Q	139	8B	VT
24	18	CAN	82	52	R	140	8C	FF
25	19	none	83	53	S	141	8D	CR
26	1A	none	84	54	T	142	8E	s o
27	1B	ESC	85	55	U	143	8F	SI
28	1C	none	86	56	V	144	90	none
29	1D	none	87	57	W	145	91	DC1
30	1E	none	88	58	X	146	92	DC2
31	1F	none	89	59	Y	147	93	DC3
32	20	(space)	90	5A	Z	148	94	DC4
33	21	!	91	5B	[	149	95	none
34	22	"	92	5C	\	150	96	none
35	23	#	93	5D	]	151	97	none
36	24	\$	94	5E	\	152	98	CAN
37	25	%	95	5F	—	153	99	none
38	26	&	96	60	'	154	9A	none
39	27	.	97	61	a	155	9B	ESC
40	28	(	98	62	b	156	9C	none
41	29	)	99	63	c	157	9D	none
42	2A	*	100	64	d	158	9E	none
43	2B	+	101	65	e	159	9F	none
44	2C	,	102	66	f	160	A0	(space)
45	2D	-	103	67	g	161	A1	!
46	2E	.	104	68	h	162	A2	"
47	2F	/	105	69	i	163	A3	#
48	30	0	106	6A	j	164	A4	\$
49	31	1	107	6B	k	165	A5	%
50	32	2	108	6C	l	166	A6	&
51	33	3	109	6D	m	167	A7	'
52	34	4	110	6E	n	168	A8	(
53	35	5	111	6F	o	169	A9	)
54	36	6	112	70	p	170	AA	*
55	37	7	113	71	q	171	AB	+
56	38	8	114	72	r	172	AC	,
57	39	9	115	73	s	173	AD	—

Dec	Hex	Character or Function	Dec	Hex	Character or Function	Dec	Hex	Character or Function
174	AE	,	202	CA	J	230	E6	f
175	AF	/	203	CB	K	231	E7	g
176	B0	0	204	CC	L	232	E8	h
177	B1	1	205	CD	M	233	E9	i
178	B2	2	206	CE	N	234	EA	j
179	B3	3	207	CF	O	235	EB	k
180	B4	4	208	D0	P	236	EC	l
181	B5	5	209	D1	Q	237	ED	m
182	B6	6	210	D2	R	238	EE	n
183	B7	7	211	D3	S	239	EF	o
184	B8	8	212	D4	T	240	F0	p
185	B9	9	213	D5	U	241	F1	q
186	BA	:	214	D6	V	242	F2	r
187	BB	;	215	D7	W	243	F3	s
188	BC	<	216	D8	X	244	F4	t
189	BD	=	217	D9	Y	245	F5	u
190	BE	>	218	DA	Z	246	F6	v
191	BF	?	219	DB	[	247	F7	w
192	CO	@	220	DC	\	248	F8	x
193	C1	A	221	DD	]`	249	F9	y
194	C2	B	222	DE	^	250	FA	z
195	C3	C	223	DF	-	251	FB	{
196	C4	D	224	E0	.	252	FC	/
197	C5	E	225	E1	a	253	FD	}
198	C6	F	226	E2	b	254	FE	~
199	C7	G	227	E3	c	255	FF	DEL
200	C8	H	228	E4	d			
201	C9	I	229	E5	e			

## The DIP Switches

Switch 1

No.	ON	Function	OFF
1-8	ON	International character	OFF
1-7	ON	International character	OFF
1-6	ON	International character	OFF
1-5	Emphasized	Print weight	Single-strike
1-4	2K buffer	RAM memory	User-defined characters
1-3	Inactive	Paper-out sensor	Active
1-2	0 (slashed)	Zero character	0
1-1	Compressed	Print pitch	Pica

Switch 2

No.	ON	Function	OFF
2-4	CR + LF	Line feed	CR only
2-3	O N	Skip-over-perforation feature	OFF
2-2	Sounds	Beep	Mute
2-1	Active	Printer select	Inactive

**Note:** The shaded boxes show the factory settings.